HANDBOOK of FLUID, ELECTROLYTE, and ACID-BASE IMBALANCES

Third Edition

Joyce LeFever Kee
Betty J. Paulanka
Carolee Polek

Handbook of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances

Third Edition

Joyce LeFever Kee, MS, RN
Associate Professor Emerita
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware

Betty J. Paulanka, EdD, RN
Dean and Professor
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware

Carolee Polek, RN, PhD
Associate Professor of Nursing
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware

DELMAR
CENGAGE Learning™

Australia • Canada • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States

DELMAR
CENGAGE Learning™

Handbook of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances:
Third Edition
Joyce LeFever Kee, Betty J. Paulanka, Carolee Polek

Vice President, Career and Professional Editorial: Dave Garza

Director of Learning Solutions: Matthew Kane

Executive Editor: Steven Helba

Managing Editor: Marah Bellegarde

Senior Product Manager: Juliet Steiner

Editorial Assistant: Meaghan O'Brien

Vice President, Career and Professional Marketing: Jennifer McAvey

Marketing Director: Wendy Mapstone

Marketing Manager: Michele McTighe

Marketing Coordinator: Scott Chrysler

Production Director: Carolyn Miller

Production Manager: Andrew Crouth

Content Project Manager: Andrea Majot

Senior Art Director: Jack Pendleton

Production House: Pre-PressPMG

© 2000, 2004, 2010 Delmar, Cengage Learning

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at **Professional & Career Group Customer Support, 1-800-648-7450**

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at **cengage.com/permissions**.
Further permissions questions can be e-mailed to **permissionrequest@cengage.com.**

Library of Congress Control Number: 2008934272
ISBN-13: 978-1-4354-5368-5
ISBN-10: 1-4354-5368-9

Delmar
5 Maxwell Drive
Clifton Park, NY 12065-2919
USA

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

For your lifelong learning solutions, visit **delmar.cengage.com**

Visit our corporate website at **cengage.com**.

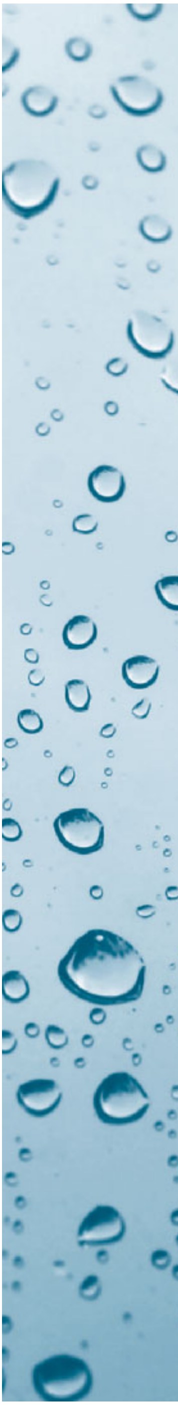
Notice to the Reader
Publisher does not warrant or guarantee any of the products described herein or perform any independent analysis in connection with any of the product information contained herein. Publisher does not assume, and expressly disclaims, any obligation to obtain and include information other than that provided to it by the manufacturer.

The reader is expressly warned to consider and adopt all safety precautions that might be indicated by the activities described herein and to avoid all potential hazards. By following the instructions contained herein, the reader willingly assumes all risks in connection with such instructions.

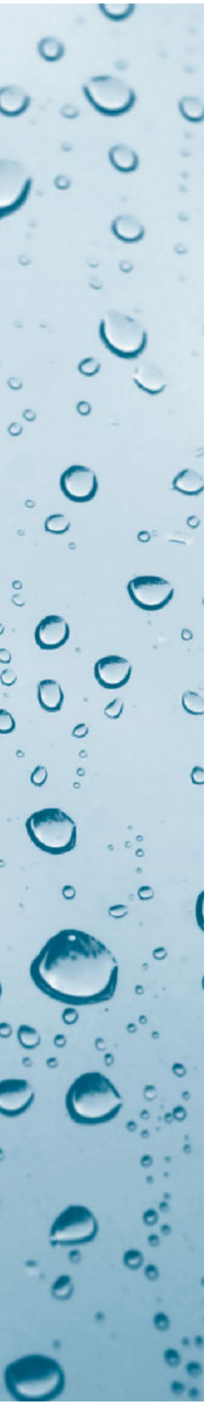
The publisher makes no representations or warranties of any kind, including but not limited to, the warranties of fitness for particular purpose or merchantability, nor are any such representations implied with respect to the material set forth herein, and the publisher takes no responsibility with respect to such material. The publisher shall not be liable for any special, consequential, or exemplary damages resulting, in whole or part, from the readers' use of, or reliance upon, this material.

Printed in the United States of America
1 2 3 4 5 XX 11 10 09

Dedication



To
Joyce Kee for her consistent
support to faculty development in
the School of Nursing in the
College of Health Sciences
at the University of Delaware.



Contents

UNIT I FLUIDS AND THEIR INFLUENCE ON THE BODY / 1

Chapter 1: Extracellular Fluid Volume Deficit (ECFVD) / 11

Chapter 2: Extracellular Fluid Volume Excess (ECFVE) / 22

Chapter 3: Extracellular Fluid Volume Shift (ECFVS) / 35

Chapter 4: Intracellular Fluid Volume Excess (ICFVE) / 40

UNIT II ELECTROLYTES AND THEIR INFLUENCE ON THE BODY / 49

Chapter 5: Potassium Imbalances / 54

Chapter 6: Sodium and Chloride Imbalances / 74

Chapter 7: Calcium Imbalances / 89

Chapter 8: Magnesium Imbalances / 105

Chapter 9: Phosphorus Imbalances / 116

UNIT III ACID-BASE BALANCE AND IMBALANCES / 127

Chapter 10: Determination of Acid-Base Imbalances / 132

Chapter 11: Metabolic Acidosis and Metabolic Alkalosis / 137

Chapter 12: Respiratory Acidosis and Respiratory Alkalosis / 145

UNIT IV INTRAVENOUS THERAPY / 153

Chapter 13: Intravenous Solutions and Their Administration / 160

Chapter 14: Total Parenteral Nutrition (TPN) / 178

UNIT V FLUID, ELECTROLYTE, AND ACID-BASE IMBALANCES IN CLINICAL SITUATIONS / 189

Chapter 15: Fluid Problems in Infants and Children / 190

Chapter 16: Older Adults with Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalances / 215

Chapter 17: Acute Disorders: Trauma and Shock / 236

Chapter 18: Burns and Burn Shock / 263

Chapter 19: Gastrointestinal (GI) Surgical Interventions / 275

Chapter 20: Neurotrauma: Increased Intracranial Pressure / 285

Chapter 21: Clinical Oncology / 292

Chapter 22: Chronic Diseases with Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalances: Heart Failure, Diabetic Ketoacidosis, and Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease / 314

Appendix A: Common Laboratory Tests and Values for Adults and Children / 354

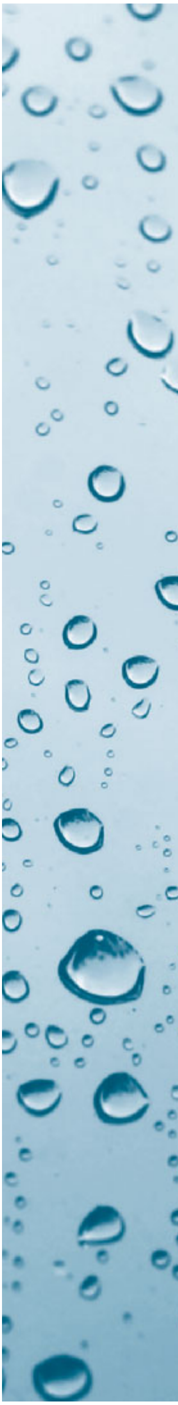
Appendix B: Foods Rich in Potassium, Sodium, Calcium, Magnesium, Chloride, and Phosphorus / 375

Appendix C: The Joint Commission's (TJC) List of Accepted Abbreviations / 379

References/Bibliography / 383

Glossary / 393

Index / 404



Preface

The *Handbook of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances*, Third Edition is developed from a parent text, *Fluids and Electrolytes with Clinical Applications: A Programmed Approach*, 8th Edition by Joyce LeFever Kee, Betty J. Paulanka, and Carolee Polek. It is designed to be used in the clinical setting, both in conjunction with the parent text and as a stand-alone product. With a clear comprehensive approach, this quick reference pocket guide of basic principles of fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balances, imbalances, and related disorders is a must-have for all who work in the field! The convenient handbook size enables readers to keep it handy for quick access to over 200 diagrams and tables containing valuable information. A developmental approach is used to provide examples across the life span that illustrate common health problems associated with imbalances. The chapter on increased intracranial pressure has been completely rewritten with a stronger focus on neurotrauma and common conditions that cause increased intracranial pressure. A glossary has been added for quick reference. The reference/bibliography list has been completely updated and expanded. Also, the appendix on common lab studies has been reduced to focus on lab studies with particular reference to fluid imbalances and electrolyte disorders associated with the clinical manifestations of these disorders. A new appendix with the Joint Commission's (TJC) list of accepted abbreviations has been added for the reader's convenience. Nursing assessments, nursing diagnoses, interventions, and rationales are in a tabular format for quick retrieval and ease of comprehension. All the important information readers need is right at their fingertips!

ORGANIZATION

Handbook of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances comprises 22 chapters organized into five units:

Unit I lays the foundation for influence of fluids on the body. It covers fluid imbalances related to extracellular fluid volume deficit, excess, and fluid shift, and intracellular fluid volume excess.

Unit II builds upon this material and discusses six electrolyte imbalances—potassium, sodium, chloride, calcium, magnesium, and phosphorus.

Unit III provides a quick guide to determine the types of acid-base imbalances.

Unit IV covers intravenous therapy. The chapters on intravenous fluid therapy and total parenteral nutrition (TPN) include: calculation, monitoring IV fluids, and complications that may occur. With this strong foundation, the learner can then move on to the more complex issues found in the next unit.

Unit V focuses on Clinical Situations and outlines the causes of fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances in a brief reference style format. Chapters related to acute disorders (trauma and shock), burns and burn shock, gastrointestinal surgical interventions, increased intracranial pressure, and chronic diseases such as heart failure, diabetic ketoacidosis, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease are included. Also addressed are the fluid problems of infants, children, and older adults.

Glossary contains important definitions.

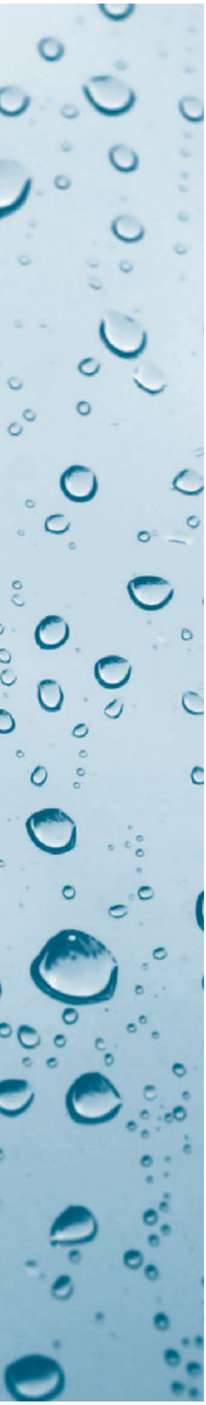
Appendix contains three appendices. These act as invaluable reference tools for the user. Included are common laboratory tests and values for adults and children; a chart listing foods rich in potassium, sodium, calcium, magnesium, chloride, and phosphorus; and a list of the Joint Commission's (TJC) accepted abbreviations.

SYMBOLS

Throughout the handbook the following symbols are used: ↑ (increased), ↓ (decreased), > (greater than), < (less than). A dagger (†) in tables indicates the most common signs and symptoms.

The content in this book is geared for nurses (students, licensed practitioners), laboratory personnel, technicians, and all health care professionals wanting to learn more about fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances that influence the health status of their patients.

Joyce L. Kee, RN, MS, Professor Emerita
Betty J. Paulanka, RN, EdD, Dean and Professor
Carolee Polek, RN, PhD,
Associate Professor of Nursing



Acknowledgments

We wish to extend our deepest appreciation to the School of Nursing faculty: Ingrid Aboff, Shelia Cushing, Judy Herrman, Kathy Schell, Gail Wade, Erlinda Wheeler; a University of Delaware nursing graduate, Linda Laskowski-Jones of Christiana Care Health Systems for their contributions and assistance.

We especially wish to thank Barbara Vogt, staff assistant, for her valuable assistance and service and for her coordination of correspondence.

We also offer our thanks to our editors Steven Helba and Juliet Steiner at Delmar, Cengage Learning for their helpful suggestions and assistance.

Joyce LeFever Kee, RN, MS
Betty J. Paulanka, RN, EdD
Carolee Polek, RN, PhD

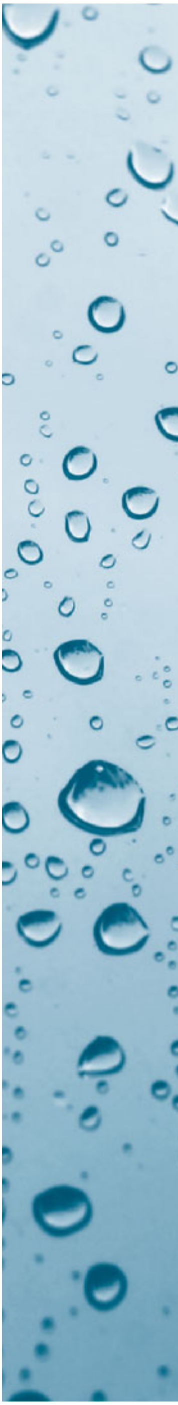
Contributors and Consultants

Ingrid Aboff, RN, PhD
Assistant Professor, School of Nursing
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware

Shelia Cushing, RN, MS
Assistant Professor, School of Nursing
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware 19716

Judith Herrman, RN, PhD
Associate Professor, School of Nursing
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware 19716

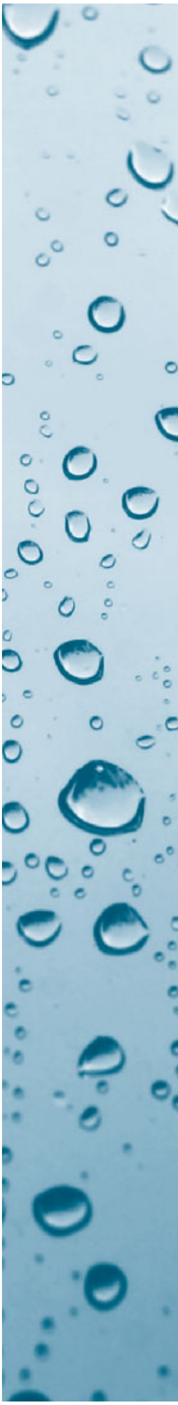
Linda Laskowski-Jones, APRN, BC, CCRN CEN
Vice President Trauma,
Emergency Medicine and Aero Medical Services,
Christiana Care Health Systems
Wilmington, Delaware



Kathleen Schell, RN, DNSc
Associate Professor, School of Nursing
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware

Gail H. Wade, RN, DNSc
Associate Professor, School of Nursing
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware

Erlinda Wheeler, RN, DNSc
Associate Professor, School of Nursing
College of Health Sciences
University of Delaware
Newark, Delaware



Reviewers

Deb Aucoin-Ratcliff, RN, DNP
American River College
Sacramento, California

Vicki Bingham, PhD, RN
Chair of Academic Programs and Assistant
Professor of Nursing
School of Nursing
Delta State University
Cleveland, Mississippi

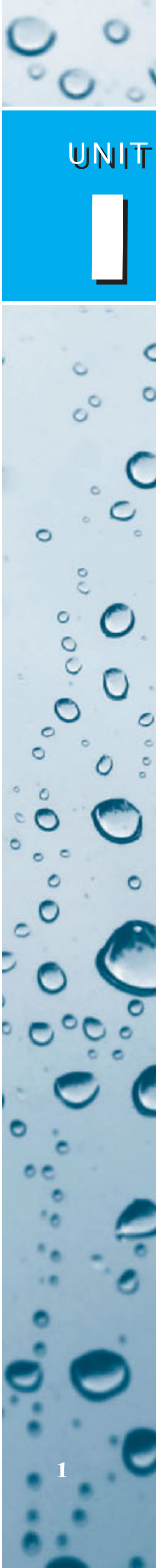
Doreen DeAngelis, MSN, RN
Nursing Instructor
Penn State Fayette, The Eberly Campus
Uniontown, Pennsylvania

Deborah J. Marshall, MSN, RN
Associate Professor, Nursing
Palm Beach Community College
Lake Worth, Florida

Deborah A. Raines, Ph.D., RN
Professor
Christine E. Lynn College of Nursing
Florida Atlantic University
Boca Raton, Florida

Barbara Scheirer RN, MSN
Assistant Professor
School of Nursing
Grambling State University
Grambling, Louisiana

Diann S. Slade, MSN, RN
Instructor
College of Pharmacy, Nursing, and
Allied Health Sciences
Howard University
Washington, D.C.



UNIT I

FLUIDS AND THEIR INFLUENCE ON THE BODY

INTRODUCTION

The human body is a complex machine that contains hundreds of bones and the most sophisticated interaction of systems of any structure on earth. Yet, the substance that is basic to the very existence of the body is the simplest substance known, WATER. In fact, it makes up almost two-thirds of an adult's body weight.

Body water represents about 60% of the total body weight in the average adult, 45–55% of an older adult, 70–80% of a newborn infant, and 97% of the early human embryo. Figure U1-1 demonstrates the percentage of body water concentration across the life span. Many persons think the extra water in infants acts as a protective mechanism. Since infants have larger body surface in relation to their weight, extra water acts as a cushion against injury. Body fat is essentially free of water. An obese person has less body water than a thin person. The leaner the individual, the greater the proportion of water in total body weight.

BODY COMPARTMENTS

Body water is distributed among three body compartments: intracellular (within the cells), intravascular (within the blood vessels), and interstitial (within the tissue spaces). Because fluids in the blood vessels and tissue spaces are outside the cells, they are referred to as extracellular fluid. Table U1-1 gives the proportion of intracellular and extracellular fluid in the body.

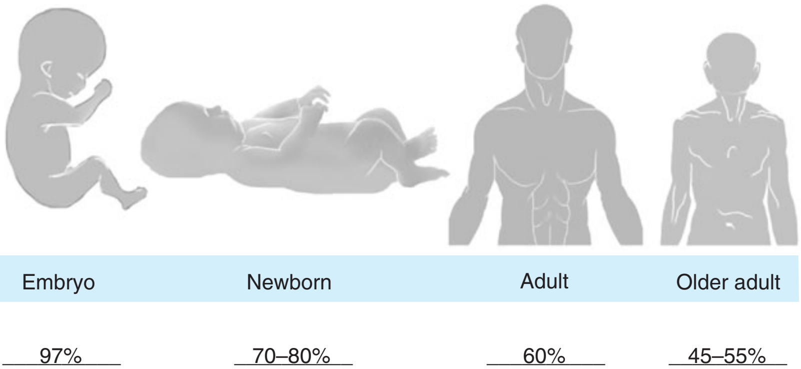


FIGURE U1-1 Percentages of body fluid per body weight.

Table U1-1 Percentage of Body Fluids in Body Fluid Compartments

Intracellular fluid (ICF) compartment $\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)$	40%
Extracellular fluid (ECF) compartment $\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)$	20%
Interstitial fluid	15%
Intravascular fluid	5%
Total	60%

FUNCTIONS OF BODY WATER

Without water, the body is unable to maintain life. Five functions of water that the body needs to maintain a healthy state are stated in Table U1-2.

Table U1-2 Functions of Body Water

- Transportation of nutrients, electrolytes, and oxygen to the cells
- Excretion of waste products
- Regulation of body temperature
- Lubrication of joints and membranes
- Medium for food digestion

Table U1-3 Daily Body Fluid Intake and Losses

Fluid Intake		Fluid Losses	
Liquid	1000–1200 mL	Urine	1000–1500 mL
Food	800–1000 mL	Feces	100 mL
Oxidation	200–300 mL	Lungs	400–500 mL
		Skin	300–500 mL
Total	2000–2500 mL		1800–2600 mL

When body water is insufficient and the kidneys are functioning normally, urine volume diminishes and the individual becomes thirsty. Therefore, the person drinks more water to correct the fluid deficit. When there is an excessive amount of water intake, the urine output increases proportionately.

Sources of fluid intake include liquids, foods, and products of the oxidation of food process. The average intake and output of fluid per day is 1800–2600 mL. Body fluids are lost daily through the urine, feces, lungs, and skin. Body water loss through the skin, which is not measurable, is called *insensible perspiration.* Appropriately 300–500 mL of fluid is lost daily through processes such as sweat gland activity. Table U1-3 lists the daily body fluid intake and losses. Definitions related to fluid functions and movement are presented in the accompanying box.

Definitions Related to Fluid Function and Movement

Membrane. A layer of tissue covering a surface or organ or separating spaces.

Permeability. The capability of a substance, molecule, or ion to diffuse through a membrane.

Semipermeable membrane. An artificial membrane such as a cellophane membrane.

Selectively permeable membrane. Permeability of the human membranes.

Solvent. A liquid with a substance in solution.

Solute. A substance dissolved in a solution.

Osmosis. The passage of a solvent through a membrane from a solution of lesser solute concentration to one of greater solute concentration.

Note: Osmosis may be expressed in terms of water concentration instead of solute concentration. Water molecules pass from an area of higher water concentration (fewer solutes) to an area of lower water concentration (more solutes).

Diffusion. The movement of molecules such as gas from an area of higher concentration to an area of lesser concentration. Large molecules move less rapidly than small molecules.

Osmol. A unit of osmotic pressure. The osmotic effects are expressed in terms of osmolality. A **milliosmol (mOsm)** is 1/1000th of an osmol and determines the osmotic activity.

Osmolality. Osmotic pull exerted by all particles per unit of water, expressed as osmols or milliosmols per kilogram of water concentrate and body fluids.

Osmolarity. Osmotic pull exerted by all particles per unit of solution, expressed as osmols or milliosmols per liter of solution.

Ion. A particle carrying a positive or negative charge.

Plasma. Blood minus the blood cells (composed mainly of water).

Serum. Plasma minus fibrogen (obtained after coagulation of blood).

Tonicity. The effect of fluid on cellular volume concentration of IV solutions.

FLUID PRESSURES (STARLING'S LAW)

Extracellular fluid (ECF) shifts between the intravascular space (blood vessels) and the interstitial space (tissues) to maintain a fluid balance within the ECF compartment. There are four measurable pressures that determine the flow of fluid between the intravascular and interstitial spaces. These are the colloid osmotic (oncotic) pressures and the hydrostatic pressures that occur in both the vessels and the tissue spaces. The colloid osmotic pressure and the hydrostatic pressure of the blood and tissues influence the movement of fluid through the capillary membrane. Fluid exchange occurs only across the walls of capillaries and not across the walls of arterioles or venules. Therefore, fluid moves into the interstitial space at the arteriolar end of the capillary and out of the interstitial space into the capillary at the venular end of the capillary.

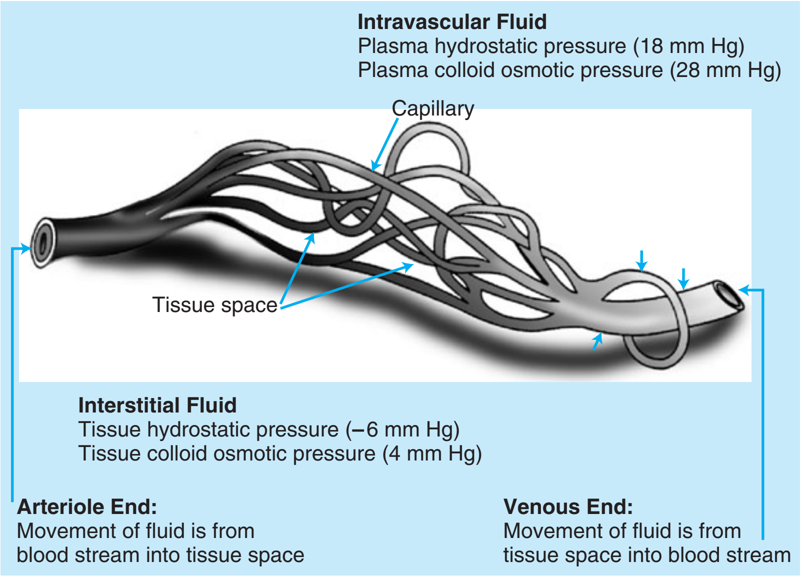

Intravascular Fluid
Plasma hydrostatic pressure (18 mm Hg)
Plasma colloid osmotic pressure (28 mm Hg)
Capillary
Tissue space
Interstitial Fluid
Tissue hydrostatic pressure (–6 mm Hg)
Tissue colloid osmotic pressure (4 mm Hg)
Arteriole End:
Movement of fluid is from blood stream into tissue space
Venous End:
Movement of fluid is from tissue space into blood stream

FIGURE U1-2 Pressures in the intravascular and interstitial fluid.

Fluid flows only when there is a difference in pressure at the two ends of the system. The difference in pressure between two points is known as the pressure gradient. If the pressure at one end is 32 mm Hg and at the other end is 26 mm Hg, the pressure gradient is 6 mm Hg. The plasma in the capillaries has hydrostatic pressure and colloid osmotic pressure. The tissue fluids have hydrostatic pressure and colloid osmotic pressure. The difference in pressure between the plasma colloid osmotic pressure and the tissue colloid osmotic pressure is known as the colloid osmotic pressure gradient; likewise, the difference in pressure between the plasma hydrostatic pressure and the tissue hydrostatic pressure is known as the hydrostatic pressure gradient. Figure U1-2 describes the fluid flow based upon the pressures in the intravascular and interstitial spaces.

Because the plasma hydrostatic pressure (18 mm Hg) in the arteriolar end of the capillary is higher than the tissue hydrostatic pressure (–6 mm Hg) in the tissue spaces, fluid moves out of the capillary and into the tissue spaces. The plasma colloid osmotic pressure (28 mm Hg) in the venular end of the capillary is higher than the tissue colloid osmotic pressure (4 mm Hg) in the tissue spaces, causing fluids to move from the tissue spaces into the capillary. Without the colloid osmotic forces, fluid is lost from circulation and remains in the tissues, causing swelling or edema.

REGULATORS OF FLUID BALANCE

Thirst, electrolytes, protein and albumin, hormones, enzymes, lymphatics, skin, and kidneys are major regulators that maintain body fluid balance. Thirst alerts the person that there is a fluid loss; thus, thirst stimulates the person to increase his or her oral intake. The thirst mechanism in the medulla may not respond effectively to a fluid deficit in the older adult or the very young child; therefore, these groups of individuals are prone to lose fluid and become easily dehydrated. Table U1-4 lists the various regulators of fluid balance and indications of how the body compensates for fluid changes.

If a person is febrile or there is an increase in humidity, diaphoresis may occur. This causes a fluid loss. The amount of fluid loss from the skin in this situation may be greater than 500 mL for the day. Deep and rapid breathing or hyperventilation can also increase fluid loss through the lungs in an amount greater than 500 mL.

Table U1-4 Regulators of Fluid Balance

Regulators	Actions
Thirst	An indicator of fluid need.
Electrolytes and Non-electrolytes	
Sodium	Sodium promotes water retention. With a water deficit, less sodium is excreted via kidneys; thus, more water is retained.
Protein, albumin	Protein and albumin promote body fluid retention. These non-diffusible substances increase the colloid osmotic (oncotic) pressure in favor of fluid retention.

(continues)

Table U1-4 Regulators of Fluid Balance—*continued*

Hormones and Enzymes	
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	ADH is produced by the hypothalamus and stored in the posterior pituitary gland (neurohypophysis). ADH is secreted when there is an ECF volume deficit or an increased osmolality (increased solutes). ADH promotes water reabsorption from the distal tubules of the kidneys.
Aldosterone	Aldosterone is secreted from the adrenal cortex. It promotes sodium, chloride, and water reabsorption from the renal tubules.
Renin	Decreased renal blood flow increases the release of renin, an enzyme, from the juxtaglomerular cells of the kidneys. Renin promotes peripheral vasoconstriction and the release of aldosterone (sodium and water retention).
Body Tissues and Organs	
Lymphatics	Plasma protein that shifts to the tissue spaces cannot be reabsorbed into the blood vessels. Thus, the lymphatic system promotes the return of water and protein from the interstitial spaces to the vascular spaces.
Skin	Skin excretes approximately 300–500 mL of water daily through normal perspiration.
Lungs	Lungs excrete approximately 400–500 mL of water daily through normal breathing.
Kidneys	The kidneys excrete 1000–1500 mL of body water daily. The amount of water excretion may vary according to the balance between fluid intake and fluid loss.

OSMOLALITY

Osmolality (serum) is determined by the number of dissolved particles, mainly sodium, urea, and glucose, per kilogram of water. Sodium is the largest contributor of particles to osmolality. The normal serum osmolality range is 280–295 mOsm/kg (milliosmols per kilogram); serum osmolality values in this range are considered iso-osmolar since the serum concentration is similar to plasma. If the serum osmolality is less than (<) 280 mOsm/kg, the serum concentration of fluid is hypo-osmolar, and if the serum osmolality is greater than (>) 295 mOsm/kg, the serum concentration is hyperosmolar. The serum osmolality is "roughly" estimated by doubling the serum sodium level. For example, if the serum sodium is 142 mEq/L, the serum osmolality is 284 mOsm/kg. Doubling the serum sodium level provides a "rough estimate" of the serum osmolality.

The terms osmolality and tonicity have been used interchangeably; though similar, they are different. **Osmolality** is the concentration of body fluids and **tonicity** is the concentration of IV solutions. Increased osmolality (hyperosmolality) can result from permeable solutes such as sodium and permeant solutes such as urea (blood urea nitrogen). Hyperosmolality results from an increase of impermeant solutes such as sodium, but *not* of permeant solutes such as urea (BUN). Hyperosmolality of body fluid occurs with an increased serum sodium and BUN levels; however, it may also cause isotonicity since the BUN does not affect tonicity. Serum osmolality is a better indicator of the concentration of solutes in body fluids than tonicity measures. Tonicity is primarily used for the concentration of intavenous solutions.

TONICITY OF INTRAVENOUS (IV) SOLUTION

The tonicity of an IV solution can be hypo-osmolar or hypotonic, iso-osmolar or isotonic, hyperosmolar or hypertonic. The tonicity of an IV solution is determined by the serum osmolality average, which is 290 mOsm/kg (280–295 mOsm/kg). The normal range for the tonicity of a solution is $+50$ mOsm or -50 mOsm of 290 mOsm, or 240–340 mOsm. Tonicity may be used to describe the concentration of IV solution because of the effect of permeable solutes like sodium and chloride in the solution on the cellular volume. The concentration of IV solutions is referred to as hypotonic, isotonic, or hypertonic.

A liter of 5% dextrose in water (D_5W) is 250 mOsm, and a liter of 0.9% sodium chloride or normal saline is 310 mOsm; both solutions have somewhat the same tonicity as plasma. These solutions are isotonic. However, in D_5W, the dextrose is metabolized quickly, causing the solution to become hypotonic. The tonicity of a liter of 5% dextrose in water with 0.9% sodium chloride is 560 mOsm. This solution is hypertonic.

Many disease entities have some degree of fluid imbalance such as fluid loss, fluid excess, and/or fluid volume shift. The four major fluid imbalances: extracellular fluid volume deficit (ECFVD), extracellular fluid volume excess (ECFVE), extracellular fluid volume shift (ECFVS), and intracellular fluid volume excess (ICFVE) are discussed in Chapters 1, 2, 3, and 4.

CLINICAL PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH FLUID IMBALANCES

Table U1-5 illustrates the most common clinical problems associated with fluid imbalances.

Table U1-5

Clinical Problems	ECFVD	ECFVE	ECFV Shift	ICFVE
Gastrointestinal				
Vomiting and diarrhea	+			
GI fistula	+			
GI suctioning	+			
Increased salt intake	+			
Intestinal obstruction	+		+	
Perforated ulcer	+		+	
Excessive hypotonic fluids, oral and intravenous				+
Renal				
Renal failure		+		
Renal disease		+		
Cardiac				
Heart failure		+		

(continues)

Table U1-5 ***continued***

Clinical Problems	ECFVD	ECFVE	ECFV Shift	ICFVE
Miscellaneous				
Brain tumor/injury				+
Fever	+			
Profuse diaphoresis	+			
SIADH (syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone)		Initially +		+
Burns	+	+	+	
Diabetic ketoacidosis	+			
Ascites		+	+	
Venous obstruction		+		
Sprain			+	
Massive trauma	+		+	
Drugs				
Cortisone group of drugs		+		

CHAPTER

1

Extracellular Fluid Volume Deficit (ECFVD)

INTRODUCTION

Extracellular fluid volume deficit (ECFVD) indicates a loss of body fluid from the interstitial (tissue) and/or intravascular (vascular–blood vessel) spaces. When there is a *severe* extracellular fluid loss and the serum osmolality is increased (more solutes than water), the fluid in the intracellular (cells) is greatly decreased. Hyperosmolality pulls water out of the cells to maintain homeostasis (equilibrium) of the body fluid and cellular dehydration results. If serum osmolality remains normal (loss of water and the loss of solutes is equal), intracellular fluid loss is unlikely to occur.

Dehydration means lack of water. Dehydration may occur due to extracellular fluid loss or a decreased fluid intake. An elevated serum osmolality occurs frequently with dehydration. The serum osmolality can be closely estimated.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

A loss of the electrolyte sodium is usually accompanied by a loss of extracellular fluid. The extracellular fluid is usually decreased or moves from the ECF to the ICF (intracellular fluid) compartment. When fluid and sodium are lost in equal amounts, the type of fluid deficit that usually occurs is **iso-osmolar** (iso-osmolar fluid volume deficit). The serum osmolality remains in normal range between 280 and 295 mOsm/kg, as shown in the accompanying box. If the amount of water loss is in excess of the amount of sodium loss, the serum sodium level is increased. This type of fluid deficit is called a **hyperosmolar** fluid volume deficit. With the retention of sodium or loss of water, serum osmolality increases (>295 mOsm/kg). Hyperosmolar extracellular fluid causes intracellular dehydration because the increase in serum osmolality causes water to be drawn from the cells. With an iso-osmolar fluid volume loss, the loss of water and solute is equal. An iso-osmolar fluid volume loss is not classified as dehydration, although dehydration can occur with this type of fluid loss. Table 1-1 differentiates between iso-osmolar fluid volume deficit and hyperosmolar fluid volume deficit.

Normal serum osmolality: 280–295 mOsm/kg

Hypo-osmolality:	<280 mOsm/kg
Iso-osmolality:	280–295 mOsm/kg
Hyperosmolality:	>295 mOsm/kg

Compensatory mechanisms such as increased heart rate and blood pressure attempt to maintain the fluid volume necessary for vital organs to receive adequate perfusion. When more than one-third of the body fluid is lost, vascular collapse occurs and shock results.

Table 1-1 **Differentiation between Iso-osmolar and Hyperosmolar Fluid Volume Deficit**

Situation	Iso-osmolar Fluid Volume Deficit	Hyperosmolar Fluid Volume Deficit
There is a proportional loss of both body fluids and solutes	X	
The loss of body fluid is greater than the loss of solutes		X
A serum osmolality of 282 mOsm/kg occurs with ECFVD	X	
A serum osmolality of 320 mOsm/kg occurs with ECFVD		X

ETIOLOGY

The causes of hyperosmolar and iso-osmolar fluid volume deficits differ. Vomiting and diarrhea may cause both types of fluid volume deficits; however, in most cases, the severity of vomiting and diarrhea indicates which type of ECFVD occurs. Table 1-2 discusses the types, causes, and rationale for ECFVDs. Table 1-3 summarizes the pathophysiology and etiology related to extracellular fluid volume deficit.

Table 1-2 Causes of Extracellular Fluid Volume Deficits

Types and Causes	Rationale
Hyperosmolar Fluid Volume Deficit	
Inadequate fluid intake	A decrease in water intake results in an increase in the numbers of solutes in body fluid. The body fluid becomes hyperosmolar.
Increased solute intake (salt, sugar, protein)	An increase in solute intake increases the solute concentration in body fluid; the body fluids can become hyperosmolar with a normal or decreased fluid intake.
Severe vomiting and diarrhea	Cause a loss of body water greater than the loss of solutes such as electrolytes, resulting in hyperosmolar body fluid.
Diabetes ketoacidosis	An increase in glucose and ketone bodies can result in body fluids becoming more hyperosmolar, thus causing diuresis. The resulting fluid loss is greater than the solute loss (sugar and ketones).
Sweating	Water loss is usually greater than sodium loss.
Iso-osmolar Fluid Volume Deficit	
Vomiting and diarrhea	Usually result in fluid losses that are in proportion to electrolyte (sodium, potassium, chloride, bicarbonate) losses.
Gastrointestinal (GI) fistula or draining abscess and GI suctioning	The GI tract is rich in electrolytes. With a loss of GI secretions, fluid and electrolytes are lost in somewhat equal proportions.

(continues)

Table 1-2 Causes of Extracellular Fluid Volume Deficits—*continued*

Types and Causes	Rationale
Iso-osmolar Fluid Volume Deficit	
Fever, environmental temperature, and profuse diaphoresis	Result in fluid and sodium losses via the skin. With profuse sweating, the sodium is usually lost in proportions equal to water losses. Depending upon the severity of the sweating and fever, symptoms of mild, moderate, or marked fluid loss may be observed.
Hemorrhage	Excess blood loss is fluid and solute loss from the vascular fluid. If hemorrhage occurs rapidly, fluid shifts to compensate for blood losses can be inadequate.
Burns	Burns cause body fluid with solutes to shift from the vascular fluid to the burned site and surrounding interstitial space (tissues). This may result in inadequate circulating fluid volume.
Ascites	Fluid and solutes (protein, electrolytes, etc.) shift to the peritoneal space, causing ascites (third-space fluid). A decrease in circulating fluid volume may result.
Intestinal obstruction	Fluid accumulates at the intestinal obstruction site (third-space fluid), thus decreasing the vascular fluid volume.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The clinical manifestations (signs and symptoms) of ECFVDs are listed in Table 1-4. The table describes the degrees of ECF loss, percentage of body weight loss, symptoms, and body water deficit by liter for a man weighing 150 pounds.

Thirst is a symptom that occurs with mild, marked, and severe fluid loss. Lack of water intake is the main contributing cause of mild dehydration. In the elderly, the thirst mechanism in the medulla does not alert the older person that there is a water deficit. Common symptoms of marked

Table 1-3 Summary of Pathophysiology and Etiology Related to Extracellular Fluid Volume Deficit (ECFVD)

Pathophysiology	Etiology
↓ ECF + ↓ Na = *Iso-osmolar FVD*	*Iso-osmolar FVD*
Proportional equal loss of fluid and sodium	Vomiting and diarrhea Fever, profuse diaphoresis GI losses (suctioning, fistula, draining abscess)
↓ ECF + ↑ Na = *Hyperosmolar FVD*	Excess blood loss
Fluid loss is greater than sodium loss	Burns
	Ascites
	Intestinal obstruction
Compensatory Mechanisms to ECFVD	*Hyperosmolar FVD*
↑ Blood Pressure	Vomiting and diarrhea (SEVERE)
↑ Pulse	Inadequate fluid intake ↑ Solute intake (sodium, sugar, protein) Diabetic ketoacidosis
One-third of ECFV loss = vascular collapse	

ECF loss include decreased skin turgor, dry mucous membranes, increased pulse rate, weight loss, and decreased urine output. With marked and severe body fluid loss, the hematocrit, hemoglobin, and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) are generally increased.

During early dehydration, the serum osmolality may not show signs of significant change. As dehydration continues, fluid is lost in greater quantities from the extracellular space than from the intracellular space. This results in an ECF deficit. When dehydration is severe, the serum osmolality increases, causing water to leave the cells. This results in cellular dehydration. A severe ECF deficit can lead to an ICF deficit.

The health professional can make a quick assessment of dehydration caused by hypovolemia by checking the peripheral veins in the hand. First hold the hand above the heart level for a short time and then lower the hand below the heart level. With a normal blood volume and circulating blood flow, the peripheral veins in the hand held below the heart level should be engorged within 5–10 seconds. If the peripheral veins do not engorge in 10 seconds, this may be indicative of dehydration

Table 1-4 Degrees of Dehydration

Degrees of Dehydration	Percentage of Body Weight Loss (%)	Symptoms	Body Water Deficit by Liter
Mild dehydration	2	1. Thirst	1–2
Marked dehydration	5	1. Marked thirst 2. Dry mucous membranes 3. Dryness and wrinkling of skin—poor skin turgor 4. Hand veins: slow filling with hand lowered 5. Temperature—low-grade elevation, e.g., 99°F (37.2°C) 6. Tachycardia (pulse greater than 100) as blood volume drops 7. Respiration >28 8. Systolic BP 10–15 mm Hg ↓ in standing position 9. Urine volume <30 mL/hr 10. Specific gravity >1.025 11. Body weight loss 12. Hct ↑, Hgb ↑, BUN ↑ 13. Acid-base equilibrium toward greater acidity	3–5
Severe dehydration	8	1. Same symptoms as marked dehydration, plus: 2. Flushed skin 3. Systolic BP <60 mm Hg 4. Behavioral changes, e.g., restlessness, irritability, disorientation, and delirium	5–10
Fatal dehydration	20–30 total body water loss can prove fatal	1. Anuria 2. Coma leading to death	

Abbreviations: BP, blood pressure; Hg, mercury; Hct, hematocrit; Hgb, hemoglobin; BUN, blood urea nitrogen or low blood volume. Body weight is another important tool for assessing fluid imbalance. Two and two-tenths (2.2) pounds of body weight loss or gain is equivalent to 1 liter of water loss or gain. Of course, in order to make an accurate assessment, the health professional needs to know the baseline body weight prior to the fluid loss.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

In replacing body water loss, the total fluid deficit is estimated according to the percentage of body weight lost. The health care provider computes the fluid replacement for his or her patient. To determine the total fluid loss, multiply the percentage of body weight loss by kilograms of body weight. If the patient's weight loss is 10 pounds and his original weight was 154 pounds or 70 kg, the parent has a 6% body weight loss, which totals 4.2 liters of total fluid loss. Table 1-5 gives a formula for estimating total fluid loss.

Table 1-5 Estimation of Total Fluid Loss

Formula:

a. Pounds to kilograms:
  Previous weight in pounds ÷ 2.2 = kg (2.2 pounds = 1 kilogram)
b. Percent of body weight lost:
  Weight loss ÷ Previous weight (subtract present weight from previous weight to obtain weight loss)
c. Total fluid deficit/loss:
  Percentage of body weight loss × Kilograms of body weight = *Total fluid loss*

Example:

The patient's weight loss is 10 pounds and his original weight was 154 pounds. What is the patient's total body fluid loss? How many liters (milliliters) are needed to replace the patient's fluid loss? Use the formula for determining body fluid loss.

a. 154 lb ÷ 2.2 = 70 kg
b. 10 lb of weight loss ÷ 154 lb = 0.06 or 6% body weight loss
c. 0.06 × 70 kg = 4.2 liters (4200 mL) of total fluid loss

One-third of the body water deficit is from ECF (extracellular fluid) and two-thirds of the body water deficit is from ICF (intracellular fluid). The daily fluid loss that needs replacement is 2.5 liters or 2500 mL. During the first day the patient should receive:

$\frac{1}{3} \times 4.2$ L = 1.4 L or 1400 mL (ECF replacement)

$\frac{2}{3} \times 4.2$ L = 2.8 L or 2800 mL (ICF replacement)

2.5 L or 2500 mL to replace the current day's losses

Note: The amount for fluid replacement can vary according to the patient's physical health and age. Patient's with heart failure cannot receive large fluid replacements.

Table 1-6 lists suggested solution and potassium replacement for an ECF deficit. The amount of fluid replacement might change according to the patient's health status. According to Table 1-6, as potassium enters the cells, fluid flows into the cells with the potassium replacement. Cellular fluid increases and the cells become hydrated. When potassium is being administered intravenously, the patient's urinary output must be closely monitored. The urine output should be at least 250 mL per 8 hours; since 80–90% of potassium is excreted by the kidneys, poor urine output results in a potassium excess.

Table 1-6 Suggested Solution Replacement for ECF Deficit

1. Lactated Ringer's, 1500 mL, to replace ECF losses (varies according to the serum potassium and calcium levels).
2. Normal saline solution (0.9% NaCl solution), 500 mL.
3. Five percent dextrose in water (D_5W), 4700 mL, to replace the water deficit and increase urine output.
4. Potassium chloride, 40–80 mEq, may be divided into 3 liters to replace potassium loss. The serum potassium level must be closely monitored.
5. Bicarbonate as needed if an acidotic state exists.
6. Blood administered when volume loss is due to blood loss.

The health care provider must also consider the electrolyte balance with different types of fluid replacement. If dextrose in water is administered without any other electrolyte content such as sodium, the dextrose is metabolized quickly, leaving only water and a resulting hypo-osmolar or hypotonic condition. An electrolyte solution such as lactated Ringer's and/or saline solution (0.9% or 0.45%) should be included as part of the replacement formula.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: ECFVD

1. Thirst is an early symptom of ECFVD or dehydration. Encourage fluid intake.
2. The serum osmolality is one method to detect dehydration. A serum osmolality of >300 mOsm/kg indicates dehydration.
3. Decreased skin turgor, dry mucous membranes, an increased pulse rate, and a systolic blood pressure (while standing) <10–15 mm Hg of the regular blood pressure are some signs and symptoms of dehydration.
4. Urine output less than 30 mL/hr or 720 mL/day should be reported. A decrease in urine output can indicate insufficient fluid intake, hypovolemia, or renal dysfunction.
5. A quick assessment of hypovolemia or dehydration can be accomplished by checking the peripheral veins in the hand. First hold the hand above the heart level for 10 seconds and then lower the hand below the heart level. The peripheral veins in the hand below the heart level become engorged within 5–10 seconds with a normal blood volume. If the peripheral veins are not engorged, hypovolemia or dehydration is present.
6. Lactated Ringer's and 5% dextrose in $\frac{1}{3}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ normal saline are solutions that are helpful for treating ECFVD.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a patient history identifying factors that may cause an extracellular fluid volume deficit (ECFVD).

- Assess for signs and symptoms associated with body fluid loss or dehydration. These may include poor skin turgor, dry mucous membranes, slow filling of hand veins, a decrease in urine output, and tachycardia.
- Check vital signs. Heart compensates for fluid loss by increasing the heart rate. Check blood pressure while the patient is sitting and again if the patient is able to stand without difficulty (a fall of 10–15 mm Hg in systolic pressure can indicate marked ECFVD). A narrow pulse pressure of less than 20 mm Hg can indicate severe hypovolemia.
- Check the urine output for volume and concentration. A decrease in urine output may be due to a lack of fluid intake or excess body fluid loss.
- Assess weight gain/loss to assist in accurate fluid replacement.
- Check laboratory results of BUN and hematocrit. Elevated levels might indicate fluid loss.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to inadequate fluid intake, vomiting, diarrhea, hemorrhage, or third-space fluid loss (burns or ascites)
- *Risk for Impaired Skin Integrity,* related to a fluid deficit in body tissues
- *Ineffective Tissue Perfusion, renal,* related to decreased renal blood flow and poor urine output secondary to ECFVD, hypovolemia, or dehydration.

Interventions

- Monitor vital signs at least every 4 hours. Check the blood pressure in lying, sitting, and standing positions.
- Routinely check body weight. *Remember*: 2.2 pounds equals 1 kilogram, which is equivalent to 1 liter (1000 mL) of fluid loss.
- Monitor skin turgor, mucous membranes, lips, and tongue for dryness or improvement.

- Promote adequate fluid replacements, oral and intravenous.
- Monitor urine output. Report if urine output is below 240 mL per 8 hours.
- Provide oral hygiene several times a day.
- Monitor laboratory results such as elevated BUN and hematocrit.
- Provide comfort.
- Listen to patient's concerns. Answer questions or refer the questions to appropriate health professionals.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of extracellular fluid volume deficit (ECFVD) has been controlled or eliminated.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of body fluid loss, skin turgor improved, moist mucous membranes, vital signs within normal range, and body weight increased.
- Evaluate the effects of clinical management for ECFVD; fluid deficit is lessened.
- Urine output is within normal range: 600–1400 mL/24 hours.
- Evaluate the laboratory test results; serum osmolality and electrolytes are within normal range.

CHAPTER 2

Extracellular Fluid Volume Excess (ECFVE)

INTRODUCTION

Extracellular fluid volume excess (ECFVE) is increased fluid in either the interstitial (tissues) and/or intravascular (vascular or vessel) spaces. Usually it relates to the excess fluid in tissues of the extremities (peripheral edema) or lung tissues (pulmonary edema). Terms for ECFVE are hypervolemia, overhydration, and edema. Hypervolemia and *overhydration* contribute to fluid excess in tissue spaces. Fluid overload is another term for overhydration and hypervolemia.

Usually edema is the abnormal retention of fluid in the interstitial spaces in the ECF compartment, but it can occur in serous cavities such as the peritoneal cavity. In edema, sodium retention is the frequent cause of the increased extracellular fluid volume. Figure 2-1 demonstrates the changes in body fluid compartments as edema occurs.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

When sodium and water are retained in the same proportion, the fluid volume excess is referred to as **iso-osmolar** fluid volume excess. Usually the serum sodium level is within the normal range. If only free water is retained, the fluid volume excess is referred to as **hypo-osmolar** fluid volume excess. The serum sodium level is decreased. When there is fluid volume excess, the fluid pressure is greater than the oncotic pressure; therefore, more fluid is pushed

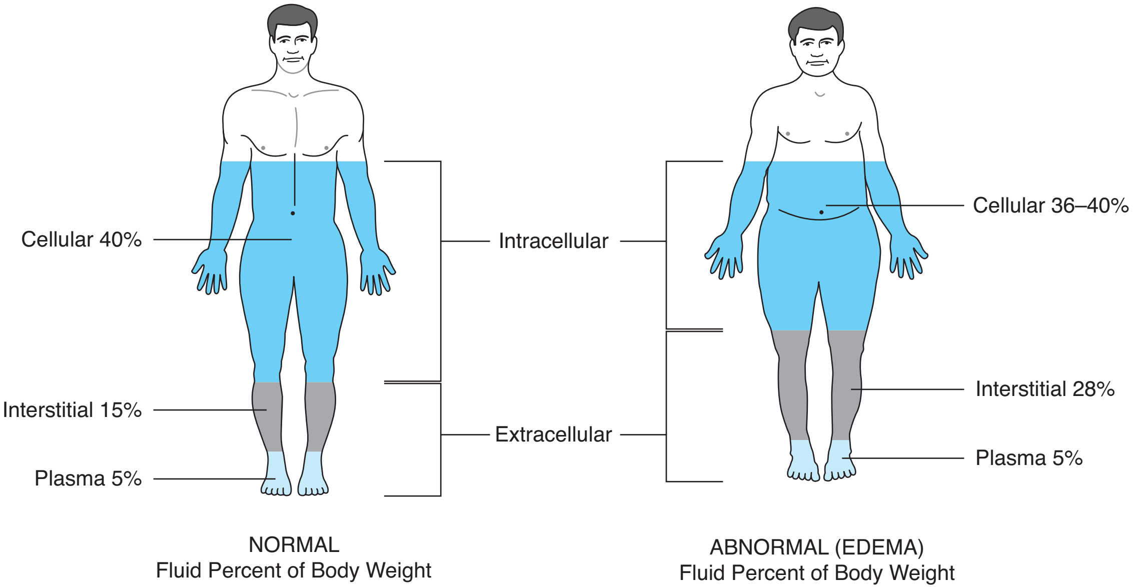

Cellular 40%
Interstitial 15%
Plasma 5%
Intracellular
Extracellular
Cellular 36–40%
Interstitial 28%
Plasma 5%
NORMAL
Fluid Percent of Body Weight
ABNORMAL (EDEMA)
Fluid Percent of Body Weight

FIGURE 2-1 Body fluid compartments and edema. These figures demonstrate the makeup of normal body fluid versus abnormal body fluid, such as with edema. As you recall from Chapter 1, 60% of the adult body weight is water; 40% of that is intracellular or cellular water, and 20% is extracellular water. Of the extracellular fluid, 15% is interstitial fluid and 5% is intravascular fluid or plasma. Note that with edema there is an increase of fluid in the interstitial space, which is between tissues and cells. The intracellular fluid may be decreased in extreme cases.

Table 2-1 Differentiation Between Iso-osmolar and Hypo-osmolar Fluid Volume Excess

Situation	Iso-osmolar Fluid Volume Excess	Hypo-osmolar Fluid Volume Excess
There is a proportional gain of both body fluids and solutes (sodium)	X	
The gain of body fluid is greater than the gain of sodium		X
A serum osmolality of 284 mOsm/kg occurs with ECFVE	X	
A serum osmolality of 273 mOsm/kg occurs with ECFVE		X

into the tissue spaces. Table 2-1 differentiates between iso-osmolar and hypo-osmolar fluid volume excess.

If the kidneys cannot excrete the excess intravascular fluid, fluid is frequently pushed into the tissue spaces and into the lung tissue spaces. Peripheral and/or pulmonary edema results. Fluid overload in the periphery will settle in the most dependent region: for example, feet and ankles when standing and sacrum when lying supine. When excess fluid crosses the alveolar-capillary membrane of the lungs, pulmonary edema results.

ETIOLOGY

Edema is commonly associated with excess extracellular body fluid or excess fluid. Physiologic factors leading to edema may be caused by various clinical conditions, such as heart failure (HF), renal disease, cirrhosis of the liver, steroid excess, and allergic reaction. Table 2-2 lists the physiologic factors for edema, the rationale, and the clinical conditions associated with each physiologic factor.

Table 2-2 Physiologic Factors Leading to Edema

Physiologic Factors	Rationale	Clinical Conditions
Plasma hydrostatic pressure in the capillaries	↑ Increased Blood dammed in the venous system can cause "back" pressure in capillaries, thus raising capillary pressure. Increased capillary pressure will force more fluid into tissue areas, thus producing edema.	1. Heart failure with increased venous pressure. 2. Kidney disease resulting in sodium and water retention. 3. Venous obstruction leading to varicose veins. 4. Pressure on veins because of swelling, constricting bandages, casts, tumor, pregnancy.
Plasma colloid osmotic pressure	↓ Decreased Decreased plasma colloid osmotic pressure results from diminished plasma protein concentration. Decreased protein content may cause water to flow from plasma into tissue spaces, thus causing edema.	1. Malnutrition due to lack of protein in diet. 2. Chronic diarrhea resulting in loss of protein. 3. Burns leading to loss of fluid containing protein through denuded skin. 4. Kidney disease, particularly nephrosis. 5. Cirrhosis of liver resulting in decreased production of plasma protein. 6. Loss of plasma proteins through urine.

(continues)

Table 2-2 Physiologic Factors Leading to Edema—*continued*

Physiologic Factors	Rationale	Clinical Conditions
Capillary permeability	↑ Increased Increased permeability of capillary membrane will allow plasma proteins to leak out of capillaries into interstitial space more rapidly than lymphatics can return them to circulation. Increased capillary permeability is predisposing factor to edema.	1. Bacterial inflammation causes increased porosity. 2. Allergic reactions. 3. Burns causing damage to capillaries. 4. Acute kidney disease, e.g., nephritis.
Sodium retention	↑ Increased Kidneys regulate level of sodium ions in extracellular fluid. Kidney function will depend on adequate blood flow. Inadequate blood flow, presence of excess aldosterone or glucocorticosteroids, and diseased kidneys are predisposing factors to edema since they cause sodium, chloride, and retention.	1. Heart failure causing inadequate circulation of blood. 2. Renal disease causing inadequate circulation of blood through kidneys. 3. Increased production of adrenal cortical hormones—aldosterone, cortisone, and hydro-cortisone—will cause retention of sodium. 4. Cirrhosis of liver. Diseased liver cannot destroy excess production of aldosterone. 5. Trauma resulting from fractures, burns, and surgery.

(continues)

Table 2-2 Physiologic Factors Leading to Edema—*continued*

Physiologic Factors	Rationale	Clinical Conditions
Lymphatic drainage	↓ Decreased Blockage of lymphatics will prevent return of proteins to circulation. Obstructed lymph flow is said to be high in protein content. With inadequate return of proteins to circulation, plasma colloid osmotic pressure will be decreased, thus causing edema.	1. Lymphatic obstruction, e.g., cancer of lymphatic system. 2. Surgical removal of lymph nodes. 3. Elephantiasis, which is parasitic invasion of lymph channels, resulting in fibrous tissue growing in nodes, obstructing lymph flow. 4. Obesity because of inadequate supporting structures for lymphatics in lower extremities. Muscles are considered the supporting structures.

As blood is "backed up" in the venous system, capillary pressure is increased, forcing more fluid into the tissue spaces. A decrease in plasma/serum protein results in a decrease in plasma colloid osmotic (oncotic) pressure. This causes water to move from the vessels into the tissue spaces. An increase in the capillary membrane permeability permits plasma proteins to escape from the capillaries; thus, more water moves into the interstitial spaces. The kidneys regulate the gain/loss of sodium, chloride, and water via the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. With inadequate blood flow to the kidney or renal dysfunction or the presence of excess aldosterone, sodium retention occurs. Sodium retention results in water retention.

Patients with limited cardiac or renal reserve frequently develop pulmonary edema. When the heart is not able to function adequately and the kidneys cannot excrete a sufficient amount of urine, the fluid backs up into the pulmonary circulatory system; fluid moves from the vessels into the lung tissues. Administering an excessive amount of intravenous fluids to a person in pulmonary edema will further worsen the edema in the lungs. Intravenous infusions should be restricted in patients with pulmonary edema.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

There are numerous clinical manifestations (signs and symptoms) of ECFVE that relate to pulmonary edema and peripheral edema. When the fluid volume excess (hypervolemia or overhydration) causes a backup of fluid that seeps into the lung tissue, pulmonary edema results. An early symptom of pulmonary edema is a constant, irritating, non-productive cough. Table 2-3 lists the clinical signs and symptoms of ECFVE related to pulmonary and peripheral edema. Laboratory test results influenced by ECFVE are included. The rationale for each sign or symptom is given.

Table 2-3 Clinical Manifestations of ECFVE—Hypervolemia, Overhydration, Edema

Signs and Symptoms	Rationale
Pulmonary Edema	
Constant, irritating, non-productive cough	An irritating cough is frequently the first clinical symptom of hypervolemia. It is caused by fluid "backed up" into the lungs (fluid is in the alveoli).
Dyspnea (difficulty in breathing)	Breathing is labored and difficult due to fluid congestion in lungs.
Neck vein engorgement	Jugular vein remains engorged when the patient is in semi-Fowler's or sitting position.
Sublingual vein engorgement	Engorged veins under the tongue may indicate hypervolemia.

(continues)

Table 2-3 Clinical Manifestations of ECFVE—Hypervolemia, Overhydration, Edema—*continued*

Signs and Symptoms	**Rationale**
Hand vein engorgement	Peripheral veins in the hand remain engorged with hand elevated above heart level for 10 seconds.
Moist crackles in lung	Lungs are congested with fluid. Moist crackles in lung can be heard with the stethoscope.
Bounding pulse	A full, bounding pulse may be present with hypervolemia. The pulse rate may increase.
Cyanosis	Can be a late symptom of pulmonary edema as a result of impaired gas exchange caused by fluid in the alveolar space.
Peripheral Edema	
Pitting edema in extremities	Peripheral edema present in the morning may result from inadequate heart, liver, or kidney function. A positive test of pitting edema is a finger indentation on the edematous area.
Tight, smooth, shiny skin over edematous area	Excess fluid in the peripheral tissues may cause the skin to be tight, smooth, and shiny.
Pallor, cool skin at edematous area	Excess fluid causes a decrease in circulation. The skin becomes pale, shiny, and cool.
Puffy eyelids (periorbital edema)	Swollen eyelids occur with generalized edema.
Weight gain	A gain of 2.2 pounds is equivalent to a gain of 1 liter of body water.
Laboratory Tests	
Decreased serum osmolality	Excess fluid dilutes solute concentration; thus, serum osmolality is below 280 mOsm/kg.

(continues)

Table 2-3 Clinical Manifestations of ECFVE—Hypervolemia, Overhydration, Edema—*continued*

Signs and Symptoms	Rationale
Decreased serum protein and albumin, BUN, Hgb, Hct	Serum protein, albumin, BUN, and Hgb and Hct levels can be decreased due to excess fluid volume (hemodilution).
Increased CVP (central venous pressure)	An increase in CVP measurement of more than 12–15 cm H_2O is indicative of hypervolemia, evidenced as an increase in the fluid pressure.

A quick assessment for hypervolemia, or overhydration, can be done by checking the peripheral veins in the hand. Instruct the patient to hold a hand above the heart level. If the peripheral veins of the hand remain engorged after 10 seconds, this can be an indication of hypervolemia. When the jugular vein remains engorged after a person is in semi-Fowler's position, the cause is most likely hypervolemia. Lungs should be checked for the presence of moist crackles. Cyanosis is a late symptom of pulmonary edema.

Gravity has an effect on the distribution of fluid in the edematous person. In a lying position, there is more equal distribution of edema, whereas in an upright position the edema is more prevalent in the lower extremities. This is called *dependent edema.* Dependent edema should not be present after the patient has been in a prone or supine position for the night. If edema is present in the morning, it is most likely due to cardiac, renal, or liver disease and can be called *non-dependent edema.* Edema that does not respond to diuretics is called *refractory edema.*

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Normally, water alone does not cause or increase edema. Salt and water intake increases fluid retention and can cause edema. The three D's—diuretics, digoxin, and diet (low sodium)—are frequently prescribed for the clinical management of patient's with ECFVE and with heart failure (HF).

Table 2-4 Basic Management for ECFVE or Edema

Correction Measures	Rationale
Diuretics: thiazides, high ceiling (loop)	Potassium-wasting diuretics are potent and promote the loss of sodium, water, and unfortunately, potassium. Diuretics cause a decrease in fluid volume excess via kidneys.
Digoxin	This cardiac glycoside causes the heart to beat more forcefully; thus, it improves heart function and circulation. Increased circulation promotes water loss through the kidneys.
Diet	A diet low in sodium decreases sodium and water retention.
Increased protein intake for a malnourished person	Protein increases the oncotic pressure in the vessels, thus pulling water out of the tissues.

Table 2-4 presents the basic management with rationale for correcting edema.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: ECFVE

1. ECFVE, overhydration or hypervolemia, usually relates to excess fluid in tissues of the extremities (peripheral edema) or lungs (pulmonary edema).
2. Body water retention (edema) usually results from sodium retention. If only free water is retained, the excess is referred to as hypo-osmolar (hypotonic) fluid volume excess.
3. A constant, irritating, non-productive cough is frequently the first clinical symptom of hypervolemia. It is caused by excess fluid “backed up” into the lungs.
4. For quick assessment of ECFVE, check for hand vein engorgement. If the peripheral veins in the hand remain engorged when the hand is elevated above the heart level for 10 seconds, ECFVE or hypervolemia is present.

5. Moist crackles in the lung usually indicate that the lungs are congested with fluid.
6. Peripheral edema present in the morning may result from inadequate heart, liver, or kidney function. Peripheral edema in the evening may be due to fluid stasis—dependent edema. Peripheral edema should be assessed in the morning before the patient gets out of bed.
7. A weight gain of 2.2 pounds is equivalent to the retention of 1 liter of body water.
8. Excess fluid dilutes solute concentration in the vascular space. A serum osmolality of <280 mOsm/kg indicates an ECFVE.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a patient history to identify typical health problems that may contribute to the development of ECFVE, such as heart failure (HF), kidney or liver disease, infection, and malnutrition.
- Obtain a dietary history that emphasizes sodium, protein, and water intake.
- Assess vital signs and urinary output. Report a bounding pulse.
- Check patient's weight. Present weight is a baseline for comparison with daily weight.
- Assess for signs and symptoms of hypervolemia: constant, irritating, non-productive cough, dyspnea, neck and hand vein engorgement, chest crackles.
- Check laboratory test results; a decreased hematocrit and hemoglobin level that had previously been normal may indicate ECFVE. Serum sodium levels may or may not be elevated because of hemodilution.
- Assess urine output; decreased urinary output may be a sign of body fluid retention and/or renal dysfunction.
- Auscultate the lungs for diminished breath sound and crackles, which could be due to pulmonary edema.

- Assess extremities for peripheral edema. Assessment for pitting edema in the lower extremities should be performed in the morning before the patient arises.
- Make a quick assessment for hypervolemia by checking the peripheral veins in the hand, first lowering the hand and then raising the hand above the heart level.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Excess Fluid Volume, Edema,* related to body fluid overload secondary to heart, renal, or liver dysfunction
- *Ineffective Breathing Pattern,* related to increased capillary permeability causing fluid overload in the lung tissue (pulmonary edema)
- *Risk for Ineffective Tissue Perfusion: Decreased,* related to hypervolemia as manifested by peripheral edema

Interventions

- Monitor vital signs with particular attention to respiratory status. Report abnormal findings, i.e., crackles, diminished breath sound.
- Monitor weight daily before breakfast. A weight gain of 2.2 pounds (1 kg) is equivalent to 1 liter of water. Usually edema does not occur unless there are 2 or more liters of excess body fluids.
- Monitor diet. Instruct the patient to avoid excess use of salt on foods. Sodium retains water.
- Observe for the presence or decline of edema on a daily basis. Check for pitting edema in the morning.
- Check laboratory test results that are pertinent to electrolyte status and fluid balance.
- Monitor urine output. Urine output should be at least 240 mL per 8 hours.
- Administer diuretics as ordered. Assess fluid and electrolyte balance.
- Listen to patient’s concerns. Answer questions or refer questions to appropriate health professionals.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of extracellular fluid volume excess (ECFVE) has been controlled or eliminated.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of excess fluid volume hypervolemia; dyspnea, neck vein engorgement, moist crackles in the lung, and peripheral edema are absent.
- Evaluate the effects of clinical management for ECFVE; pulmonary edema and/or peripheral edema are absent or decreased because of clinical management.
- Urine output is increased to baseline measurement; vital signs are within normal range.
- Maintain a patent airway and the breath sounds are improved.
- Determine that the serum electrolytes are within normal range.

CHAPTER 3

Extracellular Fluid Volume Shift (ECFVS)

INTRODUCTION

In the extracellular fluid compartment, ECF is constantly shifting between the intravascular and interstitial spaces for the purpose of maintaining fluid balance. When fluid volume with electrolytes and protein shifts from the intravascular to the interstitial spaces and remains there, this fluid is referred to as **third-space fluid** or third spacing. This fluid is non-functional and is considered to be physiologically useless. Later, third-space fluid shifts back from the interstitial space to the intravascular space.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

ECFVS occurs when there is an alteration in capillary permeability. Increased permeability allows proteins to leak into the interstitial space from the intravascular space. Concentration of plasma proteins reduces osmotic pressure thus failing to draw fluid from the interstitial space back into the intravascular space. The initial fluid shift from the intravascular compartment will cause a fluid volume deficit (FVD). After a period of time, the fluid shifts back into the intravascular space causing a fluid volume excess (FVE).

ETIOLOGY

Clinical causes of ECFV shift can be as simple as a blister or sprain or as serious as massive injuries, burns, ascites, abdominal surgery, a perforated peptic ulcer, intestinal obstruction, or severe infections. Burns, massive injuries, and abdominal surgery are the most common causes of third-space fluid.

Fluid shift occurs in two phases. The first phase is when fluid shifts from the intravascular to the interstitial (vessel/plasma to tissue) space. For example, with burns, fluid loss occurs at the burned area and surrounding tissues. Fluid from the vascular space "pours" into the burned site and remains there for 3–5 days. When massive amounts of fluid shift to the tissues and remain there, fluid in the vascular space decreases and hypovolemia occurs. In the second phase of fluid shift, fluid then shifts from the injured tissue space back to the vascular space (vessels); hypervolemia may result.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

In a fluid shift due to tissue injury, it takes approximately 24–48 hours for the fluid to leave the blood vessels and accumulate in the injured tissue spaces. Edema may or may not be visible. When fluid (massive amounts) shifts out of the vessels, changes in vital signs occur that are similar to symptoms of shock. Vital sign measures are similar to those of a fluid volume deficit (marked dehydration). These measures include increased pulse rate, increased respiration, and decreased systolic blood pressure (depending on the severity of fluid loss to the injured site). Other shock-like symptoms include cold extremities, pallor, confusion, and disorientation. In severe cases the hemoglobin and hematocrit can be increased.

After 3–5 days following severe tissue injury, fluid shifts from the injured site to the vascular space or blood vessels. If the kidneys cannot excrete the excess fluid from the vascular space, ECFVE or hypervolemia results. Symptoms related to intravascular overload include constant, irritating, nonproductive cough, dyspnea, moist chest crackles, full bounding pulse, and hand and neck vein engorgement. Table 3-1 lists the two phases of fluid shifts, signs and symptoms, and fluid correction ratio.

Table 3-1 ECFV Shift: Signs, Symptoms, and Corrections

Phase of Fluid Shift	Signs and Symptoms	Fluid Correction Ratio
Phase 1	*Shock-like Symptoms—Severe ECFVD* ↑Pulse, ↑respiration, ↓BP Cold, clammy skin, pallor, confusion, disorientation	*IV Intake to Urine Output* 3:1 Three times more IV intake to urine output
Phase 2	*Overhydration-like Symptoms* Constant, irritating, non-productive cough, dyspnea, bounding pulse, vein engorgement, moist chest crackles	*IV Intake to Urine Output* 1:3 One to three ratio: IV intake to urine output

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

An assessment must be completed in order to determine the cause of the third-space fluid. If the cause is due to a minor injury such as a sprain or blisters, the amount of fluid shift is usually minor. Ice packs applied periodically to the sprained area can decrease the amount of fluid shift during the first 24 hours. Fluid replacement may not be necessary. However, when there is severe tissue destruction, the fluid shift may be so severe that hypovolemia results from the massive amount of fluid shifting from the vascular space into the injured tissue areas. During the first phase of fluid shift to the injured tissue site, intravenous (IV) infusion in the amount of two to three times the urine output may be necessary to maintain the circulating fluid volume. The ratio is three times the intake to one time the output.

During the second phase of fluid shift, less IV fluid is needed. This fluid reduction is because a large quantity of fluid shifts back into the vascular space, and too much IV fluid may cause a fluid overload. In the second phase of fluid shift with normal renal function, the urine output increases. Excreting excess fluid prevents fluid overload. The amount of IV fluid administered should decrease by a ratio of 1:3 (one time the intake to three times the urine output) (see Table 3-1).

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a patient history identifying factors that may cause a fluid volume shift: massive injury, burns, ascites, abdominal surgery, intestinal obstruction.
- Assess vital signs: pulse rate, respiration, and blood pressure. When intravascular volume decreases, the heart compensates for the fluid loss by increasing the heart rate.
- Assess urine output for volume and concentration. Decrease in urine output may be due to lack of fluid intake or excess body fluid loss.
- Monitor weight gain/loss to assist in accurate fluid replacement.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Excess fluid volume:* edema related to body fluid overload
- *Deficient fluid volume:* third-space fluid loss

Interventions

- Monitor vital signs every 4 hours depending on the severity of the fluid shift. Compare to the patient's baseline.
- Monitor urinary output. Report if urine output is less than 30 ml/8 hr. Absence of urine output for 5–12 hours may indicate renal insufficiency due to decreased renal blood perfusion.
- Assess fluid intake and output hourly. Guard against overhydration.
- Weigh daily or as indicated. Remember that loss of 2.2 pounds (1 kg) is equivalent to 1 liter (1000 ml of fluid loss).

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of the extracellular fluid volume shift (ECFVS) has been controlled or eliminated.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of fluid volume excess or fluid volume deficit: vital signs within normal range and body weight returns to normal range.
- Urine output is within normal range (600–1200 ml/24 hr).

CHAPTER

4

Intracellular Fluid Volume Excess (ICFVE)

INTRODUCTION

Intracellular fluid volume excess (ICFVE), also referred to as water **intoxication**, results from an excess of water or a decrease in the solute concentration in the intravascular system. Fluid in the blood vessels is hypo-osmolar. As a result of this excess water, the serum osmolality is decreased.

Hypo-osmolar fluid (decreased solute concentration in the circulating vascular fluid) moves by the process of osmosis from areas of lesser concentration of solutes to areas of greater concentration of solutes. Since intracellular fluid (cells) is iso-osmolar, the hypo-osmolar fluid from the vascular space moves into the cells.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

In ICFVE, the cerebral cells are usually the first cells involved in the fluid shift from the vascular to the cellular space. As fluid shifts into the cells, the cells swell, causing cellular edema. An excess secretion of the antidiuretic hormone (ADH) causes water to be reabsorbed from the renal tubules. This results in an increase in diluted fluid volume (hypo-osmolar vascular fluid), which causes additional fluid to move from the vascular space into the cells, causing cerebral edema.

Edema may result from an excess of sodium, whereas water intoxication results from an excess of water. With edema

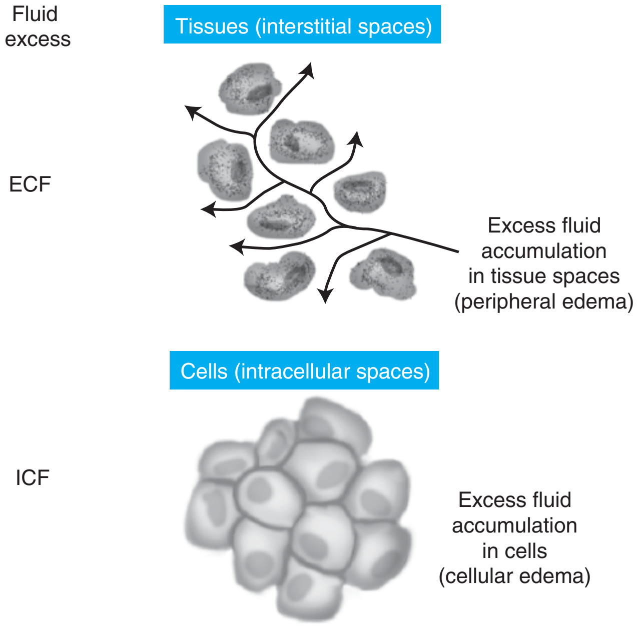

Fluid excess
Tissues (interstitial spaces)
ECF
Excess fluid accumulation in tissue spaces (peripheral edema)
Cells (intracellular spaces)
ICF
Excess fluid accumulation in cells (cellular edema)

FIGURE 4-1 Fluid excess in ECF and ICF compartments.

there is excessive fluid in the extracellular fluid compartment, and with water intoxication (ICFVE) there is excess fluid in the intracellular fluid compartment. Edema is the accumulation of fluid in the interstitial spaces, and water intoxication is the excess of hypo-osmolar fluid in the vessels moving into the cells. Figure 4-1 shows the differences between the two fluid imbalances, ECFVE and ICFVE.

ETIOLOGY

Intracellular fluid volume excess is not as common as ECFVD and ECFVE, but if untreated, it can cause serious health problems. Common causes of water intoxication are the intake of water-free solutes and the administration of hypotonic intravenous fluids such as 0.45% sodium chloride (1/2 normal saline solution) and 5% dextrose in water (D_5W). Dextrose 5% in water is an isotonic IV solution; however, the dextrose is metabolized quickly, leaving water or a hypotonic solution.

There are four major conditions that may cause ICFVE:

1. Excessive nonsolute (plain) water intake
2. Solute deficit (electrolyte and protein)
3. Increased secretion of the antidiuretic hormone (ADH)
4. Kidney dysfunction (inability to excrete excess water)

Table 4-1 lists four major conditions and laboratory tests for ICFVE, their causes, and rationale.

It is difficult for a person to drink himself or herself into intracellular fluid volume excess or water intoxication unless the renal mechanisms for elimination fail or psychogenic polydipsia occurs. If excessive water has been given and the kidneys are not functioning properly, water retention and water intoxication are likely to occur.

The most common occurrence of ICFVE is seen in postoperative patients when oral and intravenous fluids have been forced without compensatory amounts of salt. In these situations, the amount of water taken in exceeds that which the kidneys excrete. A postoperative patient receiving several liters of 5% dextrose in water, ice chips, and sips of water by mouth can develop water intoxication (ICFVE). The dextrose in D_5W is metabolized rapidly and the solution in the vascular space becomes hypotonic. After major surgery, there is frequently an overproduction of the antidiuretic hormone (ADH), known as the syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretions (SIADH). This is partly due to tissue trauma, anesthesia, pain, and narcotics. Because of SIADH, water excretion decreases, causing the urine volume to drop and the vascular fluid volume to increase. The vascular fluid is mainly hypo-osmolar; this diluted vascular fluid moves to the cells that have a higher solute concentration, thus water intoxication results.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

An early sign/symptom of ICFVE is headaches. As the hypo-osmolar body fluids continue to pass into cerebral cells, the swollen cerebral cells cause behavioral changes such as apprehension, irritability, confusion, and disorientation. The intracranial pressure is increased. With progressive intracellular fluid volume excess, the blood pressure increases, pulse rate decreases, and respirations increase. The clinical signs, symptoms, and rationale of ICFVE are explained in Table 4-2.

Table 4-1 Causes of Intracellular Fluid Volume Excess: Water Intoxication

Conditions	Causes	Rationale
Excessive water intake	Excessive plain water intake	Water intake with few or no solutes dilutes the vascular fluid.
	Continuous use of IV hypotonic solutions (0.45% saline, D_5W)	Overuse of hypotonic solutions can cause hypo-osmolar vascular fluid. Dextrose is metabolized rapidly, leaving water.
	Psychogenic polydipsia	Compulsive drinking of plain water can result in water intoxication.
Solute deficit	Diet low in electrolytes and protein	Decrease in electrolytes and protein may cause hypo-osmolar vascular fluids.
	Irrigation of nasogastric tube with water (not saline)	GI tract is rich in electrolytes. Plain water can wash out the electrolytes.
	Plain water enema	Plain water can wash out the electrolytes.
Excess ADH secretion	Stress, surgery, drugs (narcotics, anesthesia), pain, and tumors (brain, lung)	Overproduction of ADH is known as syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH), which causes mass amounts of water reabsorption by the kidneys and results in hypo-osmolar fluids.
	Brain injury or tumor	Cerebral cell injury may increase ADH production, causing excessive water reabsorption.
Kidney dysfunction	Renal impairment	Kidney dysfunction can decrease water excretion.
Abnormal laboratory tests	Decreased serum sodium level and decreased serum osmolality	Because of hemodilution, the solutes in the vascular fluid are decreased in proportion to water.

Table 4-2 Clinical Signs and Symptoms of Intracellular Fluid Volume Excess—Water Intoxication

Type of Symptoms	Signs and Symptoms	Rationale
Early	Headache Nausea and vomiting Excessive perspiration Acute weight gain	Cerebral cells absorb hypo-osmolar fluid more quickly than other cells.
Progressive		
Central nervous system (CNS)	Behavioral changes: progressive apprehension, irritability, disorientation, confusion Drowsiness, incoordination Blurred vision Elevated intracranial pressure (ICP)	Hypo-osmolar body fluids usually pass into cerebral cells first. Swollen cerebral cells can cause behavioral changes and elevate ICP.
Vital signs (VS)	Blood pressure ↑ Bradycardia (slow pulse rate) Respiration ↑	VS are the opposite of shock. VS are similar to those in increased ICP.
Later (CNS)	Neuroexcitability (muscle twitching) Projectile vomiting Papilledema Delirium Convulsions, then coma	Severe CNS changes occur when water intoxication is not corrected.
Skin	Warm, moist, and flushed	

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

The overall outcomes for clinical management of ICFVE are to reduce excess water intake and to promote water excretion. In less severe cases, water restriction may be sufficient or an extracellular replacement solution such as lactated Ringer's or normal saline solution can increase the osmolality of the extracellular fluid. A concentrated saline solution (3%) may be

Table 4-3 Clinical Management for Patients Experiencing ICFVE

Stage of ICFVE	Corrective Measures
Early stage	Restrict plain water intake and ice chips. Administer a balanced electrolyte solution such as lactated Ringer's solution, normal saline solution, 5% dextrose in 0.45% normal saline solution. Avoid using only 5% dextrose in water.
Moderate stage without severe behavioral changes	Same as the early stage. Five percent dextrose in 0.9% NaCl may be needed.
Moderate to severe stage with behavioral changes and elevated intracranial pressure (ICP)	Restrict plain water intake and ice chips. Discontinue 5% dextrose in water for replacement therapy. Administer concentrated saline (3%) solution and monitor for fluid overload. Administer osmotic diuretic such as mannitol.

given in severe cases of water intoxication in order to raise the extracellular electrolyte concentration in order to draw the water out of the intracellular space and increase urine output.

However, administration of additional salt to a person who already has too much water can expand the blood volume and the interstitial fluid resulting in edema. An osmotic diuretic induces diuresis and promotes the loss of retained fluid, especially from the cells. Table 4-3 lists the methods in promoting water excretion for correcting ICFVE.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: ICFVE

1. ICFVE is also known as water intoxication—excess water in the cells. It usually results from an excess of hypo-osmolar vascular fluid. Water intoxication is not the same as edema. Edema usually results from sodium retention, whereas water intoxication results from excess water.

2. In ICFVE, cerebral cells are usually the first cells involved in the fluid shift from the vascular to the cellular (cell) space. Large amounts of fluid shifting into the cerebral cells can result in cerebral edema.
3. Continuous administration of intravenous solutions that are hypotonic or the continuous use of 5% dextrose in water can result in ICFVE. In the latter case, dextrose is metabolized rapidly in the body; thus water remains. At least 1 or 2 liters of the dextrose solution should contain a percentage of a saline solution or be administered in combination with solutes such as lactated Ringer's.
4. Headache, nausea, and vomiting are early signs and symptoms of ICFVE. As ICFVE progresses, behavioral changes such as irritability, disorientation, and confusion may occur. Drowsiness and blurred vision may result.
5. Changes in vital signs are similar to those of cerebral edema: increased blood pressure, decreased pulse rate, and increased respirations.
6. A concentrated saline solution (3% NaCl) can be administered for severe ICFVE. It is given if the serum sodium is less than 115 mEq/L. Also, it draws the water out of the swollen cells.
7. Water restriction is suggested for mild ICFVE.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a history to identify the possible cause(s) of ICFVE such as continuous use of D_5W without solutes (saline), excessive intake of oral fluid without solutes, or major surgical procedure that might cause SIADH.
- Assess vital signs (VS) by obtaining a baseline of VS that can be compared with past and future VS. Note the VS typical for cerebral edema, i.e., increased blood pressure, decreased pulse rate, and increased respirations.
- Assess for behavioral changes, such as apprehension, irritability, confusion, and/or disorientation. Headache is an early symptom of ICFVE.

- Assess for weight changes. With ICFVE, there is usually an acute weight gain; however, with peripheral edema, the weight gain occurs more slowly.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Excess Fluid Volume, Water Intoxication,* related to excessive ingestion and infusion of hypotonic fluids and solutions, and major surgical procedure causing SIADH
- *Risk for Injury,* related to confusion from cerebral edema secondary to ICFVE

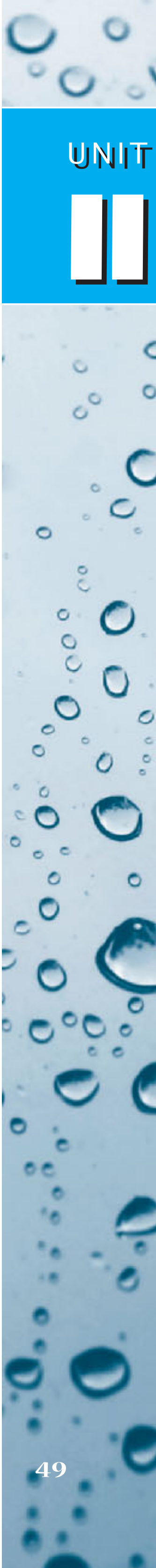
Interventions

- Monitor fluid replacement. Report if the patient is receiving ONLY 5% dextrose in water continuously without any solutes such as sodium chloride.
- Offer fluids that contain solutes to the postoperative patient. Giving only plain water and ice chips increases the hypo-osmolar state.
- Monitor urine output. This is especially important postoperatively.
- Monitor vital signs and observe for behavioral changes.
- Protect the patient from injury during periods of confusion and disorientation.
- Listen to patient's and family's concerns. Refer unknown answers to appropriate health professionals.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of intracellular fluid volume excess (ICFVE) has been corrected or controlled.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of ICFVE or water intoxication; vital signs return to normal ranges, headaches have been lessened or absent.
- Evaluate the effects of clinical management of ICFVE; hypotonic solutions discontinued, solutes offered with fluids.
- Responds clearly without confusion.

This page intentionally left blank



UNIT II

ELECTROLYTES AND THEIR INFLUENCE ON THE BODY

INTRODUCTION

Chemical compounds develop a tiny electrical charge when dissolved in water. The compounds break into separate particles known as ions; this process is referred to as ionization, and the compounds are known as electrolytes. Some electrolytes develop a positive charge (cations) when placed in water; others develop a negative charge (anions).

In this unit, six electrolytes [potassium, sodium, chloride, calcium, magnesium, and phosphorus (phosphate)] are discussed in relation to basic information associated with each electrolyte in terms of pathophysiology, etiology, clinical manifestations, and clinical management issues. Health assessment and intervention guidelines follow the presentation of each electrolyte.

ELECTROLYTES: CATION AND ANION

Electrolytes are compounds that when placed in solution, conduct an electric current and emit dissociated particles of electrolytes (ions) that carry either a positive charge (cation) or a negative charge (anion). Table U2-1 gives the principal cations and anions in human body fluids. Note the symbols for each electrolyte (e.g., K, Na) and their charge ($^+$ and $^-$).

The term *milliequivalents* is used to express the number of ionic charges of each electrolyte. Serum electrolyte values are expressed in milliequivalents and milligrams. The milliequivalents of electrolytes are the chemical activity of the ion rather than their weight. Table U2-2 gives the weights and equivalences

Table U2-1 Cations and Anions

Cations		Anions	
Na^+	(Sodium)	Cl^-	(Chloride)
K^+	(Potassium)	HCO_3^-	(Bicarbonate)
Ca^{2+}	(Calcium)	HPO_4^{2-}	(Phosphate)
Mg^{2+}	(Magnesium)		

TABLE U2-1 Principle Cations and Anions in the Human Body

Table U2-2 Electrolyte Equivalents

Ion	Weight (mg)	Equivalence (mEq)
Na^+	23	1
K^+	39	1
Cl^-	35	1
Ca^{++}	40	2
Mg^{++}	24	2

TABLE U2-2 Weight and Equivalence of the Four Cations and One Anion

of four cations and an anion. Note how the weights of the named ions differ but the equivalences remain the same according to their ionic charge.

The electrolyte composition of fluid differs within the two main classes of body fluid (intracellular, fluid and the extracellular fluid); refer to Unit I. Table U2-3 gives the ion concentrations of the intravascular fluid (referred to as plasma), interstitial fluid, and intracellular fluid. Note that sodium (Na) is more plentiful in the extracellular fluid (plasma and interstitial fluid) and potassium (K) is more plentiful in the intracellular fluid. Figure U2-1 shows the various cations and anions in extracellular and intracellular fluids.

Table U2-3 Electrolyte Composition of Body Fluid (mEq/L)

	Extracellular		
Ions	**Intravascular or Plasma**	**Interstitial**	**Intracellular**
Na^+	142	145	1
K^+	5	4	141-150
Ca^{++}	5	3	2
Mg^{++}	2	1	27
Cl^-	104	116	1
HCO_3^-	27	30	10
HPO_4^{--}	2	2	100

TABLE U2-3 Electrolyte Concentrations in Body Fluids

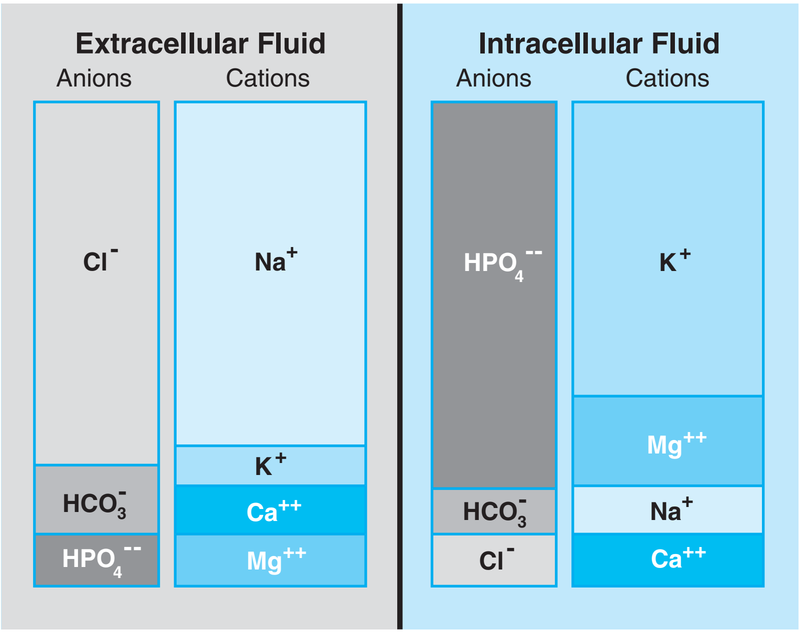

Extracellular Fluid
Anions
Cations
Cl⁻
HCO₃⁻
HPO₄⁻⁻
Na⁺
K⁺
Ca⁺⁺
Mg⁺⁺
Intracellular Fluid
Anions
Cations
HPO₄⁻⁻
HCO₃⁻
Cl⁻
K⁺
Mg⁺⁺
Na⁺
Ca⁺⁺

FIGURE U2-1 Anions and cations in body fluid.

CLINICAL PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH ELECTROLYTE IMBALANCES

Table U2-4 is a summary of five electrolytes that either increase or decrease their serum levels, arranged according to clinical problems or drug interventions.

Table U2-4 **Unit II Clinical Problems Associated with Electrolyte Imbalances and Their Influence on the Body**

Clinical Problems	Potassium	Sodium	Calcium	Magnesium	Phosphorus
Gastrointestinal					
Vomiting and diarrhea	K↓	Na↓	Ca↓	Mg↓	P↓
Malnutrition	K↓	Na↓	Ca↓	Mg↓	P↓
Anorexia nervosa	K↓	Na↓	Ca↓	Mg↓	P↓
Intestinal fistula	K↓	Na↓		Mg↓	P↓
GI surgery	K↓	Na↓		Mg↓	P↓
Chronic alcoholism	K↓	Na↓	Ca↓	Mg↓	P↓
Lack of vitamin D			Ca↓		
Hyperphosphatemia			Ca↓		
Transfusion of citrated blood			Ca↓		
Cardiac					
Myocardial infarction	K↓	Na↓ Hypervolemia		Mg↓	
Heart failure (HF)	K↓/N	Na↑		Mg↓/N	
Endocrine					
Cushing's syndrome	K↓	Na↑		Mg↓	
Addison's disease	K↑	Na↓		Mg↓	
Diabetic ketoacidosis	K↑ Diuresis K↓	Na↑/↓	Ca↓ (ionized)	Mg↑ Diuresis Mg↓	P↓/N
Parathyroidism					
Hypo:			Ca↓		P↑
Hyper:			Ca↑		P↓
Renal					
Acute renal failure	Oliguria K↑ Diuresis K↓	Na↑		Mg↑	P↑

(continues)

Table U2-4 Unit II Clinical Problems Associated with Electrolyte Imbalances and Their Influence on the Body—*continued*

Clinical Problems	Potassium	Sodium	Calcium	Magnesium	Phosphorus
Chronic renal failure	K↑	Na↑	Ca↑/↓	Mg↑	P↑
Miscellaneous					
Cancer	K↓/↑	Na↓	Ca↑	Mg↓	P↓
Bone destruction			Ca↑		
Burns	K↓/↑	Na↓	Ca↓	Mg↓	P↓
Acute pancreatitis			Ca↓		
SIADH (syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone)		Na↓			
Metabolic acidosis	K↑		Ca↓		
Metabolic alkalosis	K↓				
Drugs					
Diuretics					
Potassium wasting	K↓	Na↓	Ca↑/↓	Mg↓	
Potassium sparing	K↑/N	Na↓		Mg↓	
ACE inhibitors	K↑	Na↓/N			

CHAPTER 5

Potassium Imbalances

INTRODUCTION

Potassium (K), a cation, is the most abundant cation in the body cells. Ninety-seven percent of the body's potassium is found in the intracellular fluid (ICF) and 2–3% is found in the extracellular fluid (ECF), which comprises the intravascular (in vessels) and interstitial fluids (between tissues). Potassium is also plentiful in the gastrointestinal tract. The potassium level in the cells is approximately 150 mEq, and the potassium level in the ECF is 3.5–5.3 mEq. Because potassium levels cannot be measured within the cells, the potassium level is monitored by obtaining intravascular fluid or blood plasma specimens.

The normal plasma/serum potassium range is narrow; therefore, a serum potassium level outside the normal range may be life threatening. A serum potassium level less than 2.5 mEq/L or greater than 7.0 mEq/L can cause cardiac arrest. Thus, serum potassium values need to be closely monitored.

Basic information related to potassium balance is summarized in Table 5-1. Deviations from the normal result in a potassium imbalance.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The assimilative processes involved in the formation of new tissue are referred to as **anabolism,** and the reactions concerned with tissue breakdown are referred to as **catabolism.**

Table 5-1 Basic Information Related to Potassium Balance

Categories	Potassium Data
Distribution	Ninety-seven percent of potassium is located within the cells (intracellular fluid). Two to 3% of potassium is located within the extracellular fluid. Potassium is most plentiful in the GI tract.
Functions	Potassium (1) promotes the transmission and conduction of nerve impulses and the contraction of skeletal, cardiac, and smooth muscles; (2) assists in the regulation of intracellular osmolality; (3) promotes enzyme action for cellular metabolism; and (4) assists in maintenance of acid-base balance. A potassium deficit is associated with alkalosis and a potassium excess is related to acidosis.
Normal serum value	3.5–5.3 mEq/L. A potassium deficit (hypokalemia) is less than 3.5 mEq/L and a potassium excess (hyperkalemia) is greater than 5.3 mEq/L.
Normal potassium excretion (urine)	Twenty to 120 mEq of potassium per day is excreted by the kidneys.
Food sources	Foods rich in potassium include vegetables, fruits, dry fruits, nuts, and meat. Foods rich in sodium promote a potassium loss.
Dietary requirements	Normal daily potassium intake is 40–60 mEq. Potassium is poorly stored in the body, so a daily potassium intake is essential.
Excretion	Eighty to 90% of the body's potassium is excreted through the kidneys. Ten to 20% is excreted in the feces.

When cellular activity is anabolic (building up), potassium enters the cells. When cellular activity is catabolic (breaking down), potassium leaves the cells. When tissues are destroyed as a result of trauma, starvation, or wasting diseases, large quantities of potassium leave the cells. If the kidneys are functioning, potassium is excreted and hypokalemia results. The pathophysiology related to potassium loss and retention is summarized in Table 5-2.

During exercise, when muscles contract, the cells lose potassium and absorb a nearly equal quantity of sodium from the extracellular fluid. After exercise, when the muscles are recovering from fatigue, potassium re-enters the cells and most of the sodium returns to the extracellular fluid. The cations potassium and sodium have an opposing effect on each other in the extracellular fluid. When one is retained, the other is excreted.

Table 5-2 Pathophysiology Related to Potassium Loss and Retention

Potassium Imbalance	Pathophysiology
Potassium loss	*Cellular Potassium Loss* Tissue injury: trauma, malnutrition Muscle contraction: continuous or strenuous exercise GI losses: vomiting, diarrhea *Hormonal Influence* Aldosterone promotes sodium retention and potassium excretion. Insulin promotes potassium leaving the ECF and moving into cells. *Renal Potassium Loss* Normal kidney function excretes excess potassium from the ECF.
Potassium retention	*Renal Dysfunction* Decreased renal function causes a buildup of potassium in the ECF, resulting in hyperkalemia.

Hormonal influences affect serum potassium levels. Physiologic changes or psychologic stress can cause a release of an excessive amount of potassium that is lost through the kidneys. This potassium loss depletes the cells' supply. Stress also stimulates the adrenal gland to overproduce **aldosterone,** an adrenal cortical hormone. This hormone influences the kidneys to excrete potassium and to retain sodium, chloride, and water.

Insulin production or administration promotes glucose and potassium uptake by the cells and thus decreases the serum potassium level. Insulin administration may be used to temporarily correct a mild hyperkalemic state by forcing the potassium back into the cells. It is believed that glucagon increases the serum potassium level by releasing potassium from the liver and muscle cells.

When renal function is normal, the excess potassium is slowly excreted by the kidneys. However, if potassium intake is decreased without oral or intravenous supplements, potassium excretion by the kidneys can lead to potassium depletion or hypokalemia. If the kidneys are injured or diseased and the urine output is markedly decreased, potassium concentration increases in the extracellular fluid and hyperkalemia results.

The sodium/potassium pump in the cell membrane maintains the concentration between the sodium and potassium. As potassium goes into the cells, sodium leaves the cells. Also important is magnesium, which is needed for the functioning of the sodium/potassium pump.

ETIOLOGY

Daily potassium intake is necessary because potassium is poorly conserved within the body. Inadequate dietary intake may result in a potassium dietary. The elderly and the young tend to lose potassium faster than healthy adults; thus the potassium level must be monitored closely.

Causes of hypokalemia include dietary changes, gastrointestinal losses, renal losses, hormonal influence, and cellular damage. Summary data of these losses are presented in Table 5-3. Causes of hyperkalemia include excessive potassium intake, decreased renal function, altered cellular function, hormonal deficiency, and pseudohyperkalemia. Summary data are presented in Table 5-4.

Table 5-3 Causes of Hypokalemia (Serum Potassium Deficit)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes	
Malnutrition, starvation, alcoholism, unbalanced reducing diets, anorexia nervosa, crash diets	Potassium is poorly conserved in the body. For a potassium deficit to occur, a prolonged, inadequate potassium intake must occur.
Gastrointestinal Losses	
Vomiting, diarrhea, gastric/intestinal suctioning, intestinal fistula, laxative abuse, bulimia, enemas	Potassium is plentiful in the GI tract. With the loss of GI secretions, large amounts of potassium ions are lost.
Renal Losses	
Diuretics, diuretic phase of acute renal failure, hemodialysis and peritoneal dialysis	The kidneys excrete 80–90% of the potassium lost. Diuretics are the major cause of hypokalemia, especially potassium-wasting diuretics [thiazides, loop (high-ceiling), osmotic].
Hormonal Influence	
Steroids, Cushing's syndrome, stress, excessive intake of licorice, insulin	Steroids, especially cortisone and aldosterone, promote potassium excretion and sodium retention. Stress increases the production of steroids in the body. In Cushing's syndrome, there is an excess production of adrenocortical hormones (cortisol and aldosterone). Licorice contains glyceric acid, which has an aldosterone-like effect. Insulin moves glucose and potassium into cells.
Cellular Damage	
Trauma, tissue injury, surgery, burns	Cellular and tissue damage cause potassium to be released in the intravascular fluid. More potassium is needed to repair injured tissue.
Acid-Base Imbalance	
	Metabolic alkalosis promotes the movement of potassium into cells.
Drugs Promoting Hypokalemia	
Epinephrine, decongestants, bronchodilators, and beta$_2$-adrenergic agonists	These drugs promote potassium excretion.

Table 5-4 Causes of Hyperkalemia (Serum Potassium Excess)

Etiology	Rationale
Excessive Potassium Intake	
Oral potassium supplements and salt substitutes	A potassium consumption rate greater than the potassium excretion rate increases the serum potassium level.
IV potassium infusions	Adequate urinary output must be determined when giving a potassium supplement.
Decreased Renal Function	
Acute renal failure Chronic renal failure	Because potassium is generally excreted in the urine, anuria and oliguria cause a potassium buildup in the plasma.
Acid-Base Imbalance	
Metabolic Acidosis	In acidosis, the hydrogen ion moves into the cells and potassium moves out of the cells, increasing the serum potassium level.
Old Blood	
Old Blood transfusion that is 1–3 weeks old	As stored blood for transfusion ages, hemolysis (breakdown of red blood cells) occurs; potassium from the cells is released into the ECF.
Hormonal Deficiency	
Addison's disease	Reduced secretion of the adrenocortical hormones causes a retention of potassium and a loss of sodium.
Pseudohyperkalemia	
Hemolysis	With hemolysis, ruptured red blood cells release potassium into the ECF.
Tourniquet application Phlebotomy, clenching of the fist	A tourniquet that has been applied too tightly or rapidly drawing blood with a small needle lumen (<21 gauge) can cause a falsely elevated potassium level in the blood specimen.
Drugs	
Potassium-sparing diuretics	Potassium-sparing diuretics can cause an aldosterone deficiency, promoting potassium retention.

(continues)

Table 5-4 Causes of Hyperkalemia (Serum Potassium Excess)—*continued*

Etiology	Rationale
ACE inhibitors, beta blockers	These drugs affect potassium balance.
Altered Cellular Function	
Severe traumatic injury	Cellular injury increases potassium loss due to cell breakdown. Potassium excretion may be greater than cellular K reabsorption. Potassium can accumulate in the plasma.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Clinical manifestations of hypokalemia and hyperkalemia can be determined by the serum potassium level, electrocardiography (ECG/EKG) tracings, and specific signs and symptoms related to gastrointestinal, cardiac, renal, and neurologic abnormalities. The serum potassium level and the ECG play a critical role in determining the severity of the potassium imbalance. Mild hypokalemia may go undetected until the serum potassium level is less than 3.2 mEq/L. Signs and symptoms of hyperkalemia may not be noted until the serum potassium level exceeds 5.6 mEq/L.

A potassium deficit slows muscular contraction; thus skeletal muscle contraction and GI smooth muscle activity are slowed. Hypokalemia decreases GI motility, which when severe may result in a paralytic ileus.

Mild to moderate hyperkalemia causes muscle irritability, while severe hyperkalemia causes muscle weakness. When a serum potassium level reaches 6.0 mEq/L, paresthesia (numbness, tingling) and an increased heart rate may be apparent. Table 5-5 lists specific signs and symptoms indicative of hypokalemia and hyperkalemia.

Potassium is abundant in cardiac muscle, and a deficit may result in cardiac dysrhythmias. Patients with cardiac ischemia, heart failure, and left ventricular hypertrophy who have a mild to moderate potassium loss are likely to develop cardiac dysrhythmias. Common ECG changes associated with hypokalemia include premature ventricular contractions (PVCs), a flat or inverted T wave, and a depressed ST segment. Figure 5-1 displays the ECG results related to hypokalemia, and Figure 5-2 includes the ECG changes resulting from hyperkalemia. A serum potassium level >6.0 mEq/L causes the myocardium to become flaccid and dilate; an atrial or ventricular dysrhythmia is likely to occur. ECG changes usually do not occur until the serum potassium level approaches 7.0 mEq/L. ECG findings for hyperkalemia include narrow peaked T waves, a widened QRS complex, a depressed ST segment, and a widened P-R interval. These heart changes result in a decreased cardiac output.

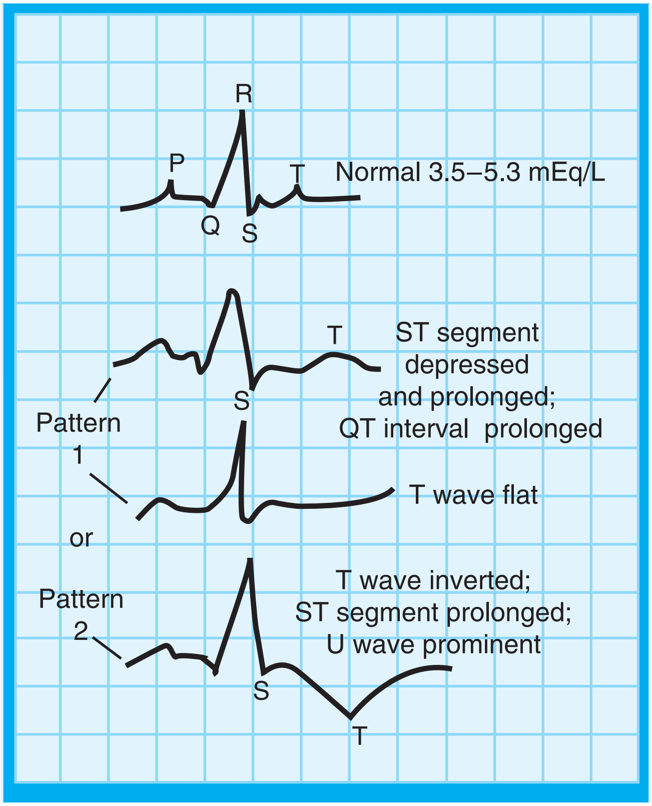

R
P
T
Normal 3.5–5.3 mEq/L
Q
S
T
ST segment depressed and prolonged;
QT interval prolonged
S
Pattern 1
T wave flat
or
Pattern 2
T wave inverted;
ST segment prolonged;
U wave prominent
S
T

FIGURE 5-1 Electrocardiographic changes in serum potassium deficit.

Table 5-5 Clinical Manifestations of Potassium Imbalances

Body Involvement	Hypokalemia	Hyperkalemia
Gastrointestinal Abnormalities	[*]Anorexia Nausea [*]Vomiting Diarrhea [†]Abdominal distention [†]Decreased peristalsis or silent ileus	[*]Nausea [*]Diarrhea [†]Abdominal cramps
Cardiac Abnormalities	[†]Dysrhythmias [†]Vertigo Cardiac arrest when severe	Tachycardia, later [†]bradycardia, and finally cardiac arrest (severe)
ECG/EKG	[†]Flat or inverted T wave Depressed ST segment	[†]Peaked, narrow T wave Shortened QT interval Prolonged PR interval followed by disappearance of P wave Prolonged QRS interval if level continues to rise
Renal Abnormalities	Polyuria	[†]Oliguria or anuria
Neuromuscular Abnormalities	[†]Malaise Drowsiness [†]Muscular weakness Confusion Mental depression Diminished deep tendon reflexes Respiratory paralysis	Weakness, numbness, or tingling sensation Muscle cramps
Laboratory Values		
Serum potassium	<3.5 mEq/L	>5.3 mEq/L

[*] Commonly seen symptoms of hypo-hyperkalemia

[†] Most commonly seen symptoms of hypo-hyperkalemia

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Successful clinical management of a potassium imbalance requires immediate intervention if the potassium is less than 3.0 mEq/L or more than 5.8 mEq/L. Oral potassium replacement therapy is frequently ordered for a mild potassium deficit (3.3–3.4 mEq/L) or for preventive purposes. Potassium is irritating to the GI tract and should be ingested with at least 6–8 ounces of fluid. Intravenous (IV) potassium chloride (KCl) is suggested for a moderate to severe potassium deficit (<3.2 mEq/L). Intravenous KCl should NEVER be administered as a bolus or IV push. Cardiac arrest can result. Intravenous KCl must be well diluted in an IV solution. Table 5-6 lists selected potassium replacement drugs. Serum levels of magnesium, chloride, and

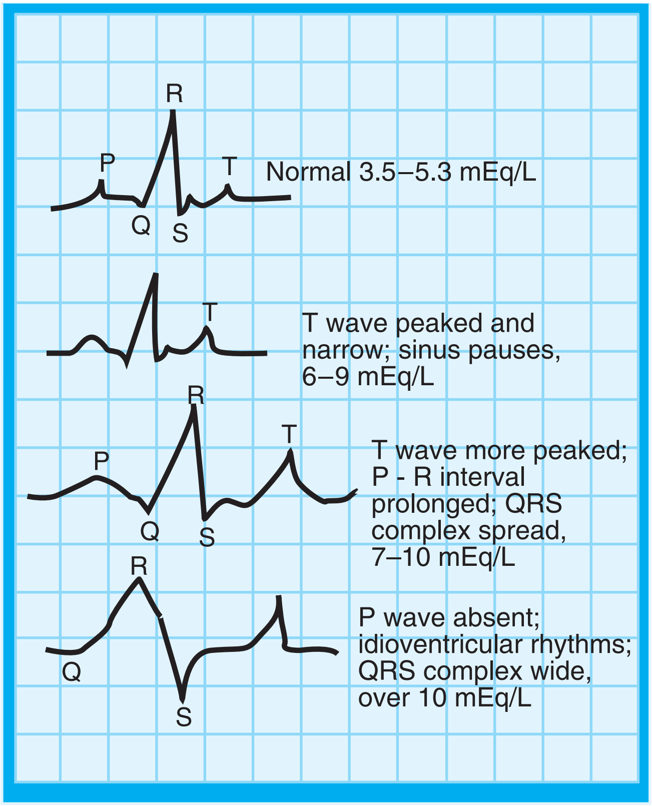

R
P
T
Q
S
Normal 3.5–5.3 mEq/L
T
T wave peaked and narrow; sinus pauses, 6–9 mEq/L
R
P
T
Q
S
T wave more peaked; P - R interval prolonged; QRS complex spread, 7–10 mEq/L
R
Q
S
P wave absent; idioventricular rhythms; QRS complex wide, over 10 mEq/L

FIGURE 5-2 Electrocardiographic changes in serum potassium concentration.

Table 5-6 Oral Potassium Supplements

Preparation	Drug
Liquid	Potassium chloride 10% = 20 mEq/15 mL; 20% = 40 mEq/15 mL Kay Ciel (potassium chloride) Kaochlor 10% (potassium chloride) Kaon Cl 20 (potassium chloride) Potassium Triplex (potassium acetate, bicarbonate, citrate)
Tablet/capsule	Potassium chloride (enteric-coated tablet) Kaon—plain (potassium gluconate) Kaon Cl (potassium chloride) Slow K (potassium chloride—8 mEq) Kaochlor (potassium chloride) K-Lyte—plain (potassium bicarbonate-effervescent tablet) K-Lyte/Cl (potassium chloride)

protein should be checked when correcting hypokalemia. Low values of Mg, Cl, and protein can inhibit potassium utilization by the body.

Temporary interventions to correct hyperkalemia include the use of sodium bicarbonate and insulin and glucose infusion. These agents initially move potassium back into the cells; however, if the drugs are repeated for the purpose of decreasing the potassium level, they may not be effective. Calcium gluconate infusions may be prescribed to decrease the antagonistic effect of potassium excess on the myocardium when the cardiac disturbance is due to hyperkalemia.

With severe hyperkalemia (>6.8 mEq/L), polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate), a cation exchange resin, may be given orally or rectally. A potassium ion is exchanged for a sodium ion in the intestinal tract, and the potassium ion is excreted in the stool. Because Kayexalate is constipating, sorbitol may be given with Kayexalate to prevent constipation and induce diarrhea. A retention enema is the mode for administering rectal Kayexalate and sorbitol. Table 5-7 lists interventions to reduce potassium levels.

Table 5-7 Correction of Potassium Excess (Hyperkalemia)

Treatment Methods	Rationale
Potassium restriction	Restriction of potassium intake will slowly lower the serum level. For mild hyperkalemia (slightly elevated K levels), i.e., 5.4–5.6 mEq/L, potassium restriction is normally effective.
IV sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$)	By elevating the pH level, potassium moves back into the cells, thus lowering the serum level. This is a temporary treatment.
10% Calcium gluconate	Calcium decreases the irritability of the myocardium resulting from hyperkalemia. It is a temporary treatment and does not promote K loss. *Caution:* Administering calcium to a patient on digoxin can cause digitalis toxicity.
Insulin and glucose (10–50%)	The combination of insulin and glucose moves potassium back into the cells. It is a temporary treatment, effective for approximately 6 hours, and is not always as effective when repeated.
Kayexalate (sodium polystyrene) and sorbitol 70%	Kayexalate is used as a cation exchange for severe hyperkalemia and can be administered orally or rectally. Approximate dosages are as follows: *Orally:* Kayexalate—10–20 g, 3 to 4 times daily Sorbitol 70%—20 mL with each dose *Rectally:* Kayexalate—30–50 g Sorbitol 70%—50 mL; mix with 100–150 mL water (Retention enema—20–30 minutes)

Drugs and Their Effect on Potassium Balance

Potassium-wasting diuretics are a major cause of hypokalemia. Diuretics are divided into two categories: potassium-wasting

Table 5-8 Potassium-Wasting and Potassium-Sparing Diuretics

Potassium-Wasting Diuretics

- Thiazides
  - Chlorothiazide/Diuril
  - Hydrochlorothiazide/HydroDIURIL
- Loop diuretics
  - Furosemide/Lasix
  - Ethacrynic acid/Edecrin
- Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors
  - Acetazolamide/Diamox
- Osmotic diuretic
  - Mannitol

Potassium-Sparing Diuretics

- Aldosterone antagonist
  - Spironolactone/Aldactone
  - Triamterene/Dyrenium
  - Amiloride/Midamor

Combination: K-Wasting and K-Sparing Diuretics

- Aldactazide
- Spironazide
- Dyazide
- Moduretic

and potassium-sparing drugs. Potassium-wasting diuretics excrete potassium and other electrolytes such as sodium and chloride in the urine. Potassium-sparing diuretics retain potassium but excrete sodium and chloride in the urine. Table 5-8 lists the trade and generic names of potassium-wasting and potassium-sparing diuretics and a combination of potassium-wasting and potassium-sparing diuretics.

Laxatives, corticosteroids, antibiotics, and potassium-wasting diuretics are the major drug groups that can cause hypokalemia. The drug groups attributed to hyperkalemia include oral and intravenous potassium salts, central nervous system (CNS) agents, potassium-sparing diuretics, ACE inhibitors, and beta blockers. Table 5-9 lists the drugs that affect potassium balance.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: POTASSIUM

1. Oral potassium should be taken with food and/or 8 ounces of fluid. Potassium is irritating to the gastric mucosa and can cause a gastric ulcer.
2. Mild hypokalemia, 3.4 mEq/L, can be avoided by eating foods rich in potassium, i.e., fresh fruits, dry fruits, fruit juices, vegetables, meats, nuts.
3. Intravenous potassium should be well diluted in IV solution. NEVER administer IV potassium as a bolus (IV push). It can cause cardiac arrest.

Table 5-9 Drugs Affecting Potassium Balance

Potassium Imbalance	Substances	Rationale
Hypokalemia (serum potassium deficit)	Laxatives Enemas (hyperosmolar)	Laxative abuse can cause potassium depletion.
	Corticosteroids	
	Cortisone	Ion exchange agent.
	Prednisone	Steroids promote potassium loss and sodium retention.
	Kayexalate	Exchange potassium ion for a sodium ion.
	Licorice	Licorice action is similar to aldosterone, promoting K loss and Na retention.
	Levodopa/L-dopa Lithium	Increases potassium loss via urine.
	Antibiotic I Amphotericin B Polymyxin B Tetracycline (outdated) Gentamicin Neomycin Amikacin Tobramycin Cisplatin	Toxic effect on renal tubules, thus decreasing potassium reabsorption.
	Antibiotic II Penicillin Ampicillin Carbenicillin Ticarcillin Nafcillin Piperacillin Azlocillin	Potassium excretion is enhanced by the presence of non-reabsorbable anions.
	Alpha-adrenergic blockers Insulin and glucose	These agents promote movement of potassium into cells, thus lowering the serum potassium level.

(continues)

Table 5-9 Drugs Affecting Potassium Balance—*continued*

Potassium Imbalance	Substances	Rationale
	Beta$_2$ agonists Terbutaline Albuterol Estrogen	Beta$_2$ agonists promote potassium loss.
	Potassium-wasting diuretics	See Table 5–8.
Hyperkalemia (serum potassium excess)	Potassium chloride (oral or IV) Potassium salt substitutes K penicillin KPO_4 enema	Excess ingestion or infusion of these agents can cause a potassium excess.
	Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors Captopril (Capoten) Quinapril HCl (Accupril) Ramipril (Altace) and others	Increase the state of hypoaldosteronism (decrease sodium and increase potassium) and impair renal potassium excretion.
	Angiotensin II receptor antagonists Losartan potassium (Cozaar)	Decrease adrenal synthesis of aldosterone; potassium is retained and sodium excreted.
	Beta-adrenergic blockers Propranolol (Inderal) Nadolol (Corgard) and others	Decrease cellular uptake of potassium and decrease Na-K-ATPase function.
	Digoxin	Therapeutic dose is not affected; however, with overdose, potassium excess may occur.
	Heparin (>10,000 units/d)	Inhibits adrenal aldosterone production.

(continues)

Table 5-9 Drugs Affecting Potassium Balance—*continued*

Potassium Imbalance	Substances	Rationale
	Low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH)	Decreases potassium homeostasis; renal excretion of potassium is reduced.
	Immunosuppressive drugs Cyclosporine Tacrolimus Cyclophosphamide	Reduce potassium excretion by induction of hypoaldosteronism; loss of potassium from cells.
	Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) Ibuprofens and others Indomethacin	Impair potassium homeostasis and block cellular potassium uptake.
	Succinylcholine: intravenous	Allows for leakage of potassium out of cells.
	CNS agents Barbiturates Sedatives Narcotics Heroin Amphetamines	These CNS agents are muscle usually characterized by necrosis and cellular shift of potassium from cells to serum.
	Potassium-sparing diuretics	See Table 5-8.

4. The normal dose for IV potassium is 20–40 mEq in a liter of IV fluids to run for 8 hours.
5. Infiltration of IV potassium solutions causes sloughing of the subcutaneous tissues. IV potassium is irritating to blood vessels, and with prolonged use, phlebitis might occur.
6. Potassium should NOT be administered if the urine output is below 400 mL/day. Eighty to 90% of potassium is excreted in the urine.

7. Potassium imbalance may be associated with acid-base imbalance. With metabolic alkalosis, hypokalemia may occur as potassium re-enters the cells. With metabolic acidosis, hyperkalemia may occur when hydrogen ions move into the cells, causing potassium ions to move out of the cells, increasing the serum potassium levels.
8. Potassium deficit can enhance the action of digoxin; digitalis toxicity could result.
9. Potassium-wasting diuretics, i.e., thiazides [hydrochlorothiazide (hydrodIURIL)], and loop/high ceiling [furosemide (Lasix)] cause potassium loss via kidneys. Steroids promote potassium loss and sodium retention.
10. ACE inhibitors, beta blockers, NSAIDs, and potassium sparing diuretics increase the serum potassium level. The serum potassium levels should be monitored when taking these drug groups, especially in older adults and those with renal insufficiency.
11. Increasing the serum potassium level to >4.0 mEq/L can aid in lowering blood pressure and reduce the risk of stroke and cardiovascular diseases.
12. A high-sodium diet can cause an increase in urinary potassium loss.
13. Magnesium is a co-factor for potassium uptake. It is also impossible to correct a potassium deficit when there is a magnesium deficit. Both serum electrolytes need to be checked.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a health history for clinical health problems that may cause hypokalemia or hyperkalemia.
- Assess for signs and symptoms of hypokalemia and hyperkalemia. Refer to Table 5-5.
- Check the serum potassium level that can be used as a baseline for comparison of future serum potassium levels. Recognize that a serum potassium value below 2.5 mEq/L may cause cardiac arrest.

- Check ECG strips for changes that denote hypokalemia or hyperkalemia.
- Assess vital signs and urine output. Report abnormal findings.
- Assess for signs and symptoms of digitalis toxicity, i.e., nausea, vomiting, anorexia, bradycardia, and dysrhythmias when a patient is receiving a potassium-wasting diuretic and/or steroids with digoxin. Hypokalemia enhances the action of digoxin.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to insufficient intake of foods rich in potassium or potassium losses (gastric suctioning)
- *Risk for Injury, Vessels, Tissues, or Gastric Mucosa,* related to phlebitis from concentrated potassium solution, infiltration of potassium solution into subcutaneous tissues, or ingestion of concentrated oral potassium irritating and damaging to the gastric mucosa
- *Risk for Decreased Cardiac Output,* related to dysrhythmia secondary to hyperkalemia
- *Impaired Urinary Elimination,* related to renal dysfunction, cardiac insufficiency

Interventions

Hypokalemia

- Monitor vital signs and ECG findings.
- Monitor serum potassium values. Report serum potassium levels below 3.5 mEq/L.
- Dilute oral potassium supplements in at least 6–8 ounces of water or juice. Concentrated potassium is irritating to the gastric mucosa.
- Check infusion site for phlebitis or infiltration when KCl is administered intravenously. NEVER administer potassium intravenously as a bolus or IV push.

- Instruct patients to eat foods rich in potassium when hypokalemia is present or when the patient is taking potassium-wasting diuretics and steroids. Examples of foods rich in potassium include fresh fruits, fruit juices, dry fruits, vegetables, (especially green leafy vegetables), meats, nuts, cocoa, and cola.
- Recognize other drugs and substances that decrease serum potassium levels, i.e., glucose, insulin, laxatives, licorice, lithium carbonate, salicylates, and tetracycline.
- Monitor serum magnesium, chloride, and protein when hypokalemia is present. Attempts to correct the potassium deficit may not be effective when hypomagnesemia, hypochloremia, and hypoproteinemia are present.

Hyperkalemia

- Monitor vital signs and ECG strips. Report abnormal results. Presence of peaked T wave, wide QRS complex, and prolonged P-R interval is indicative of hyperkalemia.
- Monitor serum potassium levels. Report values greater than 5.3 mEq/L.
- Monitor daily urine output. Report urine output that is less than 250 mL per 8 hours.
- Regulate IV flow rate with solution containing potassium so that no more than 10 mEq of KCl is administered per hour.
- Administer fresh blood (blood transfusion) to patients with hyperkalemia. When blood is 2–3 weeks old, the serum potassium of that blood can be very high and thus increase the risk of severe hyperkalemia.
- Monitor medical treatments for hyperkalemia. Know which corrective treatments are used for mild, moderate, and severe hyperkalemia.
- Recognize that ACE inhibitors, beta blockers, and potassium-sparing diuretics increase serum potassium levels and should be monitored in older adults and those with renal insufficiency.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of potassium imbalance has been corrected.
- Evaluate the effect of the therapeutic regimen in correcting potassium imbalance; serum potassium levels within normal range.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of hypokalemia or hyperkalemia; ECG, vital signs, and muscular tone are normal in pattern, range, and tone.
- Diet includes foods rich in potassium while the patient is taking drugs that promote potassium loss.
- Urine output is adequate: >600 mL/day.
- Document compliance with the prescribed drug therapy and medical and dietary regimen.

CHAPTER 6

Sodium and Chloride Imbalances

INTRODUCTION

Sodium (Na) and chloride (Cl) are the principal cation and anion in the extracellular fluid (ECF). Sodium and chloride levels in the body are regulated by the kidneys and are influenced by the hormone aldosterone. Sodium is mainly responsible for water retention and the serum osmolality level. The chloride ion frequently appears in combination with the sodium ion.

The normal concentration of sodium in the extracellular fluid is 135–146 mEq/L. The normal serum chloride range is 95–108 mEq/L. A decreased serum sodium level is known as a sodium deficit or **hyponatremia,** and an elevated serum sodium level is known as a sodium excess or **hypernatremia.** A decreased serum chloride level is called a chloride deficit or **hypochloremia,** and an elevated serum chloride level is known as chloride excess or **hyperchloremia.** Table 6-1 includes the basic information related to sodium and chloride.

The two most important functions of sodium are water balance and neuromuscular activity. Table 6-2 explains the multiple functions of sodium, including the sodium pump action, which is also known as the sodium-potassium pump action. The functions of chloride are given in Table 6-3. The chloride ion is an important factor in acid-base balance and the acidity of gastric juice. Chloride, like sodium, changes the serum osmolality.

Table 6-1 Basic Information Related to Sodium and Chloride Balance

Categories	Sodium and Chloride Data
Distribution	Sodium concentration is in the extracellular fluid (ECF). Bones contain 800–1000 mEq of sodium, but only a portion of sodium is available for exchange in other parts of the body. Chloride concentration is greater in the ECF.
Functions	Sodium is important in neuromuscular activity and sodium-potassium pump action. Sodium and chloride are largely responsible for the osmolality of vascular fluids and in regulating acid-base balance. Chloride is partly responsible for the acidity in gastric juices.
Normal serum values	Sodium range is 135–146 mEq/L or 135–146 mmol/L; chloride range is 95–108 mEq/L or 95–108 mmol/L.
Normal urine value	Sodium: 40–220 mEq/L daily.
Dietary requirement	Sodium: 2–4 grams daily. Chloride: 3–9 grams daily.
Food sources	Sodium in high concentration: bacon, corned beef, ham, catsup, potato chips, pretzels with salt, pickles, olives, soda crackers, tomato juice, beef cube, dill, decaffeinated coffee. Chloride in high concentration: cheese, milk, crab, fish, dates.
Excretion	Sodium and chloride are primarily excreted via kidneys. Other avenues in excretion of Na and Cl are GI secretions and sweat.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Hyponatremia frequently occurs because of:

1. Sodium loss through the skin, GI tract, or kidneys
2. An increased amount of sodium shift into cells when there is a cellular potassium deficit
3. An excessive ADH release (SIADH) causing water retention and sodium dilution

Hypernatremia can occur because of:

1. Excess secretion of aldosterone or cortisol
2. Excess sodium intake

Table 6-2 Sodium and Its Functions

Body Involvement	Functions
Neuromuscular	Transmission and conduction of nerve impulses (sodium pump—see Cellular).
Body fluids	Largely responsible for the osmolality of vascular fluids. Doubling Na level gives the approximate serum osmolality. Regulation of body fluid (increased sodium levels cause water retention).
Cellular	Sodium pump action. Sodium shifts into cells as potassium shifts out of the cells, repeatedly, to maintain water balance and neuromuscular activity. When Na shifts into the cell, depolarization occurs (cell activity); and when Na shifts out of the cell, K shifts back into the cell, and repolarization occurs. Enzyme activity.
Acid-base levels	Assist with the regulation of acid-base balance. Sodium combines readily with chloride (Cl) or bicarbonate (HCO_3) to regulate the acid-base balance.

Table 6-3 Chloride and Its Functions

Body Involvement	Functions
Osmolality (tonicity) of ECF	Chloride, like sodium, changes the serum, osmolality. When serum osmolality is increased, > 295 mOsm/kg, there are more sodium and chloride ions in proportion to the water. A decreased serum osmolality, < 280 mOsm/kg, results in less sodium and chloride ions, and a lower serum osmolality.
Body water balance	When sodium is retained, chloride is frequently retained, causing an increase in water retention.
Acid-base balance	The kidneys excrete the anion chloride or bicarbonate, bicarbonate, and sodium reabsorbs either chloride or bicarbonate to maintain the acid-base balance.
Acidity of gastric juice	Chloride combines with the hydrogen ion in the stomach to form hydrochloric acid (HCl).

Table 6-4 Pathophysiology of Sodium and Chloride Imbalances

Sodium Imbalances	Explanation
Hyponatremia	
Central nervous system (CNS)	The CNS is most sensitive to a decrease in the sodium level. Excess water moves into the cerebral tissues, which can result in increased intracranial pressure.
Gastrointestinal tract	Loss of sodium and chloride from the GI tract can cause acid-base imbalances.
Kidneys	Renal dysfunction promotes sodium and water retention, resulting in a diluted sodium level.
Cellular activity	A sodium deficit decreases the sodium pump action; thus, there is a decrease in cellular activity.
Hypernatremia	
Overproduction of adrenal hormones	Excess secretions of aldosterone and cortisol promote an increase in the sodium level.
Cellular activity	A sodium excess increases the sodium pump action, which can increase cellular irritability. As the hypernatremic state intensifies, less sodium passes across the cell membrane; thus, less cellular activity occurs.

Table 6-4 describes the pathophysiology related to hyponatremia and hypernatremia.

ETIOLOGY

The general causes of hyponatremia and hypochloremia are gastrointestinal losses, altered cellular function, renal losses, electrolyte-free fluids, and hormonal influences. Metabolic alkalosis can occur with hypochloremia. Table 6-5 lists the various causes and gives the rationale concerning sodium and chloride losses.

Table 6-5 Causes of Hyponatremia and Hypochloremia (Serum Sodium and Chloride Deficit)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes	
Low-sodium diet Excessive plain water intake "Fad" diets/fasting Anorexia nervosa Prolonged use of IV D_5W	A low-sodium intake over several months can lead to hyponatremia. Drinking large quantities of plain water dilutes the ECF. Administration of continuous IV D_5W dilutes the ECF and can cause water intoxication. Gastric juice is composed of the acid hydrogen chloride (HCl).
Gastrointestinal Losses	
Vomiting, diarrhea GI suctioning Tap-water enemas GI surgery Bulimia	Sodium and chloride are in high concentration in the gastric and intestinal mucosas. Sodium and chloride losses occur with vomiting, diarrhea, GI suctioning, and GI surgery.
Loss of potassium	Loss of potassium is accompanied by loss of chloride.
Renal Losses	
Salt-wasting kidney disease Diuretics	In advanced renal disorders, the tubules do not respond to ADH; therefore, there is a loss of sodium, chloride, and water. The extensive use of diuretics or excessively potent diuretics can decrease the serum sodium and chloride levels.
Hormonal Influences	
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIADH)	ADH promotes water reabsorption from the distal renal tubules. Surgical pain, increased use of narcotics, and head trauma cause more water to be reabsorbed, thus diluting the ECF.
Decreased adrenocortical hormone: Addison's disease	Decreased adrenocortical hormone production related to decreased adrenal gland activity (Addison's disease) causes sodium loss and potassium retention.
Altered Cellular Function	
Hypervolemic state: heart failure, cirrhosis	In hypervolemic states due to heart failure, cirrhosis, and nephrosis, the ECF is

(continues)

Table 6-5 Causes of Hyponatremia and Hypochloremia (Serum Sodium and Chloride Deficit)—*continued*

Etiology	Rationale
	increased, thus diluting the serum sodium and chloride levels.
Burns	Great quantities of sodium and chloride are lost from burn wounds and from oozing burn surface areas.
Skin	Large amounts of sodium and chloride are lost from the skin due to increased environmental temperature, fever, and large skin wounds.
Acid-Base Imbalance	
Metabolic alkalosis	An increase in the concentration of bicarbonate ions is associated with a decrease in the concentration of chloride ions.

In hypernatremia and hyperchloremia, the general causes include dietary changes such as increased sodium intake with a decreased water intake, gastrointestinal disorders, decreased renal function, environmental changes, hormonal influence (excess adrenocortical hormone production), and altered cellular function. With hyperchloremia, metabolic acidosis can occur. Table 6-6 lists the causes and gives the rationale for sodium and chloride excesses.

A 24-hour urine sodium test is helpful in determining sodium retention or loss. The normal range for a 24-hour urine sodium is 40–220 mEq/L. If a patient's 24-hour urine sodium is 32 mEq/L, the serum sodium level is 133 mEq/L, and the patient has symptoms of heart failure, the likely cause is sodium retention.

When the patient experiences severe vomiting without water replacement, the patient is at risk for a sodium excess. Persistent vomiting and/or gastric suction can cause a loss of hydrogen and chloride ions; hypochloremic alkalosis can result.

The three types of hyponatremia are hypo-osmolar hyponatremia (most common), iso-osmolar hyponatremia, and hyperosmolar hyponatremia. The serum osmolality aids in identifying the type of hyponatremia. Refer to "osmolality" in Chapter 1.

Table 6-6 Causes of Hypernatremia and Hyperchloremia (Serum Sodium and Chloride Excess)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes	
Increased sodium intake Decreased water intake Administration of 3% saline solutions	Inadequate fluid intake and increased use of table salt, canned vegetables, and soups can increase the serum sodium and chloride levels. Administration of concentrated 3% saline solutions can cause hypernatremia and hyperchloremia.
GI Disorders	
Vomiting (severe) Diarrhea	With severe vomiting, water loss can be greater than sodium loss, causing a dangerously high serum sodium level. This is particularly true in babies who have diarrhea. Their loss of water can be greater than their loss of sodium.
Decreased renal function	Reduced glomerular filtration causes an excess of sodium in the body.
Environmental Changes	
Increased temperature and humidity Water loss	Increased environmental and body temperatures may cause profuse perspiration. Water loss can be greater than sodium and chloride losses.
Hormonal Influence	
Increased adrenocortical hormone production: oral or IV cortisone	Excess adrenocortical hormone can cause a sodium and chloride excess in the body whether it is due to cortisone ingestion or hyperfunction of the adrenal gland (Cushing's syndrome).
Altered Cellular Function	
Heart failure, renal diseases	Usually with heart failure and renal disease, the body's sodium and chloride are greatly increased. If water retention is greatly enhanced, pseudohyponatremia may result.

(continues)

Table 6-6 Causes of Hypernatremia and Hyperchloremia (Serum Sodium and Chloride Excess)—*continued*

Etiology	Rationale
Trauma: head injury	Chloride ions are frequently retained with the sodium.
Acid-base imbalance: metabolic acidosis	Increased chloride (Cl) ion concentration is associated with a decreased bicarbonate ion concentration.

The body fluid volume status with hyponatremia should also be considered in order to correct the underlying cause of hyponatremia. There are three types of body fluid volume imbalances associated with hyponatremia: hypovolemic (decrease volume), euvolemic (normal volume), and hypervolemic (increased volume). If the urine sodium spot testing is, < 30 mEq/L, hypovolemic and hypervolemic hyponatremia are likely; however, if the urine sodium spot testing is > 30 mEq/L, euvolemic hyponatremia is likely.

Table 6-7 lists some of the causes of the three types of body fluid volume imbalances with hyponatremia.

Table 6-7 Fluid Volume Imbalances with Hypo-osmolar Hyponatremia

Fluid Volume Imbalances	Associated Conditions
Hypovolemic Hyponatremia	Diuretics, hypoaldosteronism, vomiting, diarrhea, gastric suction, burns, peritonitis
Euvolemic Hyponatremia	Syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIADH), pain, postoperative state, cortisol deficiency, psychogenic polydipsia, decreased solute intake
Hypervolemic Hyponatremia	Heart failure, cirrhosis of the liver, nephrotic syndrome, acute and chronic renal failure

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The severity of clinical manifestations of hypo-hypernatremia varies with the onset and extent of sodium deficit or excess. Mild hypernatremia is normally asymptomatic, and early nonspecific symptoms such as nausea and vomiting may be overlooked. Table 6-8 gives the signs and symptoms associated with hypo-hypernatremia. Clinical manifestations of chloride imbalances are given in Table 6-9. Hypochloremic symptoms are similar to metabolic alkalosis, and hyperchloremic symptoms are similar to metabolic acidosis.

Table 6–8 Clinical Manifestations of Sodium Imbalances

Body Involvement	Hyponatremia	Hypernatremia
Gastrointestinal Abnormalities	*Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal cramps	*Nausea, vomiting, anorexia *Rough, dry tongue
Cardiac Abnormalities	Tachycardia, hypotension	*Tachycardia, possible hypertension
Central Nervous System (CNS)	*Headaches, apprehension, lethargy, confusion, depression, seizures	*Restlessness, agitation, stupor, elevated body temperature
Neuromuscular Abnormalities	*Muscular weakness	Muscular twitching, tremor, hyperreflexia
Integumentary Changes	Dry skin, pale, dry mucous membrane	*Flushed, dry skin, dry, sticky membrane
Laboratory Values		
Serum sodium	< 135 mEq/L	< 146 mEq/L
Urine sodium		< 40 mEq/L
Specific gravity	< 1.008	> 1.025
Serum osmolality	< 280 mOsm/kg	> 295 mOsm/kg

Note: *Most common clinical manifestations of hyponatremia and hypernatremia.

Table 6-9 Clinical Manifestations of Chloride Imbalances

Body Involvement	Hypochloremia	Hyperchloremia
Neuromuscular Abnormalities	Hyperexcitability of the nerves and muscles (tremors, twitching)	Weakness Lethargy Unconsciousness (later)
Respiratory Abnormalities	Slow and shallow breathing	Deep, rapid, vigorous breathing
Cardiac Abnormalities	↓ Blood pressure with severe Cl and ECF losses	
Laboratory Values		
Milliequivalent per liter	<95 mEq/L	>108 mEq/L

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

The majority of Americans consume 3–5 grams of sodium per day; some consume 8–15 grams daily. The daily sodium requirements are 2–4 grams. A teaspoon of salt has 2.3 grams of sodium. When sodium intake increases, the water intake also tends to increase. As a result of the sodium and water increase, extracellular fluid is increased.

When the serum sodium level is < 130 mEq/L (hyponatremia), a saline solution to restore sodium balance is usually administered. The suggested sodium replacement includes:

Sodium Replacement According to the Serum Sodium Level

Serum sodium: < 130 mEq/L = normal saline solution (0.9% NaCl)

Serum sodium: < 115 mEq/L = 3% saline solution

When giving 3% saline solution, the patient should be closely monitored for a fluid overload and pulmonary edema.

To correct hypernatremia, the cause should be known and corrected. If the patient is consuming an excess amount of salt, then salt restriction should be enforced. If the cause of hypernatremia is heart failure, medical treatment should be prescribed. Pseudohyponatremia may result from heart failure.

Drugs and Their Effect on Sodium Balance

The drug categories of certain antidepressant groups, certain anticancer drugs, oral antidiabetics, and certain CNS depressants (morphine, barbiturates) can cause hyponatremia. Corticosteroids, certain antibiotics, and ingestion and infusion of sodium are causes of hypernatremia. Table 6-10 lists the drugs that affect sodium balance. Refer to table as needed.

Table 6-10 Drugs Affecting Sodium Balance

Sodium Imbalance	Drugs	Rationale
Hyponatremia (serum sodium deficit)	Diuretics	Diuretics, either K-wasting or K-sparing, cause sodium excretion.
	Lithium	Lithium promotes urinary sodium loss.
	Antineoplastics/Anticancer Vincristine Cyclophosphamide Cisplatin Antipsychotics Amitryptyline (Elavil) Thioridazine (Mellaril) Thiothixene (Navane) Tranylcypromine (Parnate) Antidiabetics Chlorpropamide (Diabenase) Tolbutamide (Orinase)	Anticancer drugs, antipsychotics, and antidiabetics stimulate ADH release and cause hemodilution and decrease sodium level.

(continues)

Table 6-10 Drugs Affecting Sodium Balance—*continued*

Sodium Imbalance	Drugs	Rationale
	CNS depressants Morphine Barbiturates Ibuprofens (Motrin) Nicotine Clonidine (Catapres)	
Hypernatremia (serum sodium excess)	Corticosteroids Cortisone Prednisone	Steroids promote sodium retention and potassium excretion.
	Hypertonic saline Sodium salicylate Sodium phosphate Sodium bicarbonate Cough medicines	Administration of sodium salts in excess.
	Antibiotics Azlocillin Na Penicillin Na	Many of the antibiotics contain the sodium salt, which increases drug absorption.
	Mezlocillin Na Carbenicillin Ticarcillin disodium	Ion exchange.
	Cholestyramine Amphotericin B Demeclocycline Propoxyphene (Darvon)	These miscellaneous drugs promote urinary water loss without sodium.
	Lactulose	Water loss in excess of sodium via GI tract.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: SODIUM AND CHLORIDE

1. Hyponatremia is one of the leading causes of electrolyte disorders occurring to the hospitalized patient. This disorder can be due to numerous conditions, such as heart failure, cancer, surgery, drug administration.

2. Serum osmolality of body fluids (ECF) can be estimated by *doubling the serum sodium level.* For a more accurate serum osmolality level, use the formula

$$2 \times \text{serum Na} + \frac{\text{BUN}}{3} + \frac{\text{glucose}}{18} = \underset{\text{(mOsm/kg)}}{\text{serum osmolality}}$$

The normal serum osmolality range is 280–295 mOsm/kg.

3. Sodium causes water retention.
4. One teaspoon of salt is equivalent to 2.3 grams of sodium. Daily sodium requirement is 2–4 grams. Most Americans consume 3–5 grams of sodium per day, and some consume 8–15 grams daily.
5. Vomiting causes sodium and chloride losses, and diarrhea causes sodium, chloride, and bicarbonate losses.
6. A 3% saline solution should be given when there is a severe serum sodium deficit, e.g., < 115 mEq/L. When administering a 3% saline solution, check for signs and symptoms of pulmonary edema.
7. A new treatment for hyponatremia is AVP (arginine vasopressin) antagonist, for example, conivaptan. AVP promotes water reabsorption from the renal collecting tubules, whereas AVP antagonists promote water excretion.
8. A serum potassium deficit cannot be fully corrected until the chloride deficit is corrected.
9. Sodium and potassium have opposite effects on cellular activity. The sodium pump effect causes sodium to shift into the cells, resulting in depolarization. When sodium shifts out of the cells, potassium shifts into cells and repolarization occurs. The sodium pump action is continuously repeated.
10. Continuous use of a saline solution may cause a calcium loss.
11. Steroids promote sodium retention and, thus, water retention. Cough medicine, sulfonamides, and some antibiotics containing sodium can increase the serum sodium level.
12. If hypovolemic hyponatremia is present, normal saline solution is usually given. If hypervolemic hyponatremia occurs, salt and water restriction is ordered and loop diuretics may also be prescribed. If euvolemic hyponatremia occurs, water restriction is necessary.

13. Patients with heart failure (HF) or cirrhosis of the liver usually have hypervolemic hyponatremia.
14. Marathon runners and athletes can develop hyponatremia when running primarily because of a low serum sodium level and not the composition of fluid consumption. It is more common in women than men.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a history of high-risk factors for decreased and increased serum sodium and chloride levels. Examples of hyponatremia include GI losses, eating disorders such as anorexia nervosa and bulimia, continuous use of 5% dextrose in water, and potent diuretics. Examples of hypernatremia include increased salt intake, renal and cardiac diseases, and increased production of aldosterone.
- Assess for signs and symptoms of hyponatremia or hypernatremia.
- Obtain serum sodium and chloride levels that can be used as baseline values for future comparison.
- Check the serum osmolality level. A serum osmolality value of <280 mOsm/kg indicates hyponatremia and a serum osmolality of >295 mOsm/kg indicates hypernatremia.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Imbalanced Nutrition, more than body requirements,* related to excess intake of foods rich in sodium
- *Impaired Skin Integrity,* related to peripheral edema secondary to sodium and water excess

Interventions

Hyponatremia

- Monitor the serum sodium and chloride levels. Sodium replacement with chloride may be needed if the serum sodium deficit is due to GI losses. Hypervolemic conditions such as HF can indicate pseudohyponatremia.

- Keep an accurate intake and output record. Excess water intake can cause hyponatremia and hypochloremia related to hemodilution.
- Observe changes in vital signs, i.e., pulse rate. Shocklike symptoms can occur if hyponatremia is due to hypovolemia.
- Restrict water when hyponatremia is due to hypervolemia.
- Administer a 3% saline solution (for severe sodium deficit) cautiously. Check for signs of fluid overload and pulmonary edema.

Hypernatremia

- Instruct the patient with hypernatremia to avoid foods rich in salt, i.e., canned foods, lunch meats, ham, pickles, and salted potato chips and pretzels.
- Monitor the serum sodium level. Check for chest crackles and for edema in the lower extremities.
- Identify drugs the patient is taking that could have a sodium-retaining effect, such as cortisone preparations, cough medicines, and certain laxatives containing sodium.

Hypochloremia and Hyperchloremia

- Monitor arterial blood gases when an acid-base imbalance is suspected. With hypochloremia, metabolic alkalosis can result, and with hyperchloremia, metabolic acidosis can occur.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of sodium and chloride imbalances has been corrected or controlled.
- Evaluate the effect of the therapeutic regimen on the correction of sodium and chloride imbalances; serum sodium and chloride levels should be periodically checked.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of hyponatremia and hypernatremia.
- Check that fluid imbalances are not contributing to sodium and chloride imbalances; the patient is not dehydrated or overhydrated.
- Determine that the urine output has been adequate, >600 ml/day.

CHAPTER
7

Calcium Imbalances

INTRODUCTION

Calcium (Ca) is found in both the extracellular and intracellular fluids; however, it is somewhat more concentrated in the extracellular fluid. Approximately 55% of serum calcium is bound to protein and 45% is free ionized calcium (iCa). It is the free calcium that is physiologically active.

The serum calcium concentration range is 4.5–5.5 mEq/L, 9–11 mg/dl, or 2.23–2.57 mmol/L. A decrease in the serum calcium level is known as **hypocalcemia,** and an increase in serum calcium level is called **hypercalcemia.** Today's blood analyzers allow the ionized calcium (iCa) level to be measured. The normal serum ionized calcium range is 2.2–2.5 mEq/L, 4.25–5.25 mg/dl, or 1.15–1.30 mmol/L. Certain changes in the blood composition can either increase or decrease the serum iCa level. When an individual is acidotic, calcium is released from the serum protein and increases the serum iCa level. During alkalosis, calcium is bound to protein and there is less iCa.

Thirty percent of calcium is absorbed from food; however, vitamin D is needed for calcium absorption from the gastrointestinal tract. The anion phosphorus (P) inhibits calcium absorption. Thus, the actions of these two ions on the body have an opposite physiologic effect. Both calcium and phosphorus are stored in the bones and excreted by the kidneys. Table 7-1 includes the basic information regarding calcium balance.

Table 7-1 Basic Information Related to Calcium Balance

Categories	Calcium Data
Distribution	Ninety-nine percent of calcium is combined with phosphorous and concentrated in the teeth and bones; 1% is in the extracellular fluid (ECF) and intracellular fluid (ICF), with the greater concentration of the 1% in the ECF.
Functions	Includes neuromuscular activity, maintaining cardiac contraction and cellular permeability, promoting blood clotting and the formation of teeth and bone.
Normal serum values	Calcium (Ca): 4.5–5.5 mEq/L, 9–11 mg/dL Ionized calcium (iCa): 2.2–2.5 mEq/L, 4.25–5.25 mg/dl
Normal excretion (urine)	Two hundred milligrams per day.
Dietary requirement	Eight hundred milligrams daily.
Food sources	Milk, cheese, vegetables (baked beans, kale, greens, broccoli), meats, salmon.
Excretion	Urine: 200 mg/day; bile: 200 mg/day; others: pancreatic and intestinal (feces) secretions.

The parathyroid glands secrete the parathyroid hormone (PTH), which is responsible for the homeostatic regulation of the calcium ion in body fluids. The parathyroid glands are located on the posterior thyroid gland. When the serum calcium level is low, the parathyroid glands secrete more parathyroid hormone (PTH); PTH increases the calcium level by promoting calcium release from the bone as needed.

Calcitonin from the thyroid gland increases calcium return to the bone, decreasing the serum calcium level. Figure 7-1 diagrams the sequence and actions of PTH and calcitonin from the parathyroid and thyroid glands on the bone.

Calcium is needed for neuromuscular activity, contraction of the myocardium, normal cellular permeability, coagulation of blood, and bone and teeth formation. Table 7-2 explains the functions of calcium.

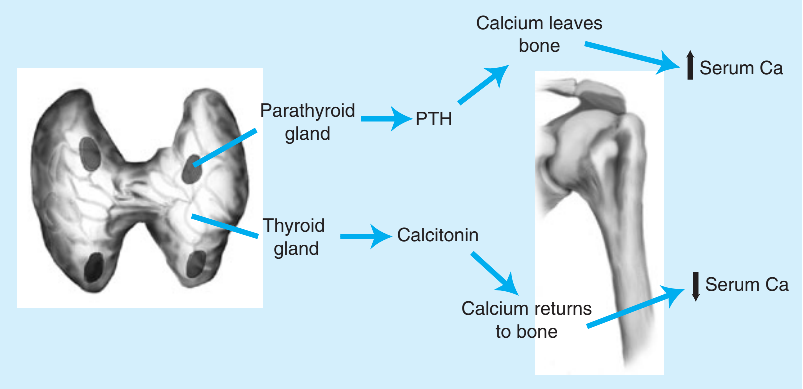


FIGURE 7-1 Functions of PTH and calcitonin.

Table 7-2 Calcium and Its Functions

Body Involvement	Functions
Neuromuscular	Normal nerve and muscle activity. Calcium causes transmission of nerve impulses and contraction of skeletal muscles.
Cardiac	Contraction of heart muscle (myocardium).
Cellular and Blood	Maintenance of normal cellular permeability. ↑ calcium decreases cellular permeability and ↓ calcium increases cellular permeability. Coagulation of blood. Calcium promotes blood clotting by converting prothrombin into thrombin.
Bones and Teeth	Formation of bone and teeth. Calcium and phosphorus make bones and teeth strong and durable.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

A serum calcium level less than 4.5 mEq/L, or 9 mg/dl, is known as hypocalcemia and a serum calcium level greater than 5.5 mEq/L, or 11 mg/dl, is known as hypercalcemia. Muscles (skeletal, smooth, and cardiac) and nerves (peripheral) are affected by hypocalcemia. Table 7-3 explains the pathophysiologic effects of calcium imbalances.

Table 7-3 Pathophysiology of Calcium Imbalances

Calcium Imbalance	Explanations
Hypocalcemia	
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Decreased PTH level inhibits calcium release from bones.
Neuromuscular	Excitability of the skeletal, smooth, and cardiac muscles.
Bone	A prolonged serum calcium deficit leads to osteoporosis.
Clotting time	A marked serum calcium deficit impairs the clotting time and clot formation. A decrease in blood coagulation results in bleeding.
Electrolyte: magnesium	A severe magnesium deficit results in a calcium deficit. PTH secretions are decreased when there is a magnesium deficit; thus, the serum calcium level is decreased.
Hypercalcemia	
Gastrointestinal	Hypercalcemia decreases GI peristalsis and GI motility. An increased calcium level enhances hydrochloric acid, gastrin, and pancreatic enzyme release.
Cardiac	A calcium excess decreases cardiac activity. Dysrhythmias, heart block, and ECG/EKG changes can occur.
Altered cellular changes	Hypercalcemia decreases cellular permeability.
Bones	A calcium excess frequently results in calcium loss from the bones. An elevated serum calcium level usually results from bone loss because of malignancy or prolonged immobilization.

ETIOLOGY

The causes of hypocalcemia include dietary changes, renal dysfunction, hormonal and electrolyte influences, and multiple citrated blood transfusions. Table 7-4 lists these causes and the rationale. Lack of calcium intake, inadequate vitamin D,

Table 7-4 Causes of Hypocalcemia (Serum Calcium Deficit)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes	
Lack of calcium intake, inadequate vitamin D, and/or lack of protein in diet	A calcium (Ca) deficit resulting from lack of Ca intake is rare. Vitamin D must be present for calcium absorption from GI tract. Inadequate protein intake inhibits the body's utilization of calcium.
Chronic diarrhea	Chronic diarrhea interferes with adequate calcium absorption.
Hypoalbuminemia (low albumin level)	The most common cause of low total serum calcium level.
Renal Dysfunction	
Renal failure	Renal failure causes phosphorus and calcium retention. Lack of PTH decreases renal calcium absorption.
Hormonal and Electrolyte Influence	
Decreased parathyroid hormone (PTH) Increased serum phosphorus (phosphate) Increased serum magnesium Severe decreased magnesium	With hypoparathyroidism, there is less PTH secreted. PTH deficiency results; thus there is less calcium released from the bone. Overuse of phosphate laxatives can decrease calcium retention. Magnesium imbalances inhibit PTH secretion.
Increased calcitonin	Increased calcitonin promotes calcium retention in the bone, thus decreasing serum calcium levels.
Calcium Binders or Chelators	
Citrated blood transfusions	Rapid administration of citrated blood binds with calcium, inhibiting ionized (free) Ca.
Alkalosis	Alkalosis increases calcium protein binding.
Increased serum albumin level	With an increase in serum albumin, more calcium is bound and less calcium is free and active.

hypoalbuminemia, and a decreased parathyroid hormone (PTH) are some major causes of hypocalcemia.

The total serum calcium level may be low because of hypoalbuminemia, and the ionized calcium level could be within normal range. With a low albumin or protein level there is more free ionized calcium available. Hypomagnesemia inhibits PTH secretion, and normal saline solution (NSS, 0.9% NaCl) promotes renal calcium excretion.

Calcitriol has a synergistic effect with PTH on bone absorption and it increases calcium absorption from the intestines. With calcitriol deficiency, there would be less calcium absorption.

The causes of hypercalcemia include dietary changes, renal impairment, cellular destruction, and hormonal and

Table 7-5 Causes of Hypercalcemia (Serum Calcium Excess)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes: Increased Calcium Salts (supplements)	Excessive use of calcium supplements, calcium salts, and antacids can increase the serum calcium level.
Renal Impairment, Diuretics: Thiazides	Kidney dysfunction and use of thiazide diuretics decrease the excretion of calcium.
Cellular Destruction Bone Fractures Immobility Malignancies	A malignant bone tumor, a fracture, and/or a prolonged immobilization can cause loss of calcium from the bone. Some malignancies cause an ectopic PTH production. Increased immobility promotes calcium loss from the bone.
Hormonal and Drug Influence increased PTH	Hyperparathyroidism increases the production of PTH, and increased PTH then promotes the release of calcium from the bone.
Decreased serum phosphorus:	A decreased phosphorus level can increase the serum calcium level to the extent that the kidneys are unable to excrete excess calcium.
Steroid therapy	Steroids such as cortisone mobilize calcium absorption from the bone.
Thiazide diuretics	Thiazides increase the action of PTH on kidneys, promoting calcium reabsorption.

drug influence. Hypercalcemia occurs in 10–20% of patients with malignancies. Hyperparathyroidism is a cause of hypercalcemia in 80–90% of ambulatory patients. It increases the production of PTH, which promotes the release of calcium from the bone. The thiazide diuretics promote calcium retention; however, the loop diuretics cause calcium loss. Table 7-5 lists these causes and the rationale.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Signs of hypocalcemia and hypercalcemia are ECG/EKG changes, the serum calcium level, and the serum ionized calcium level. A commonly seen clinical manifestation of hypocalcemia is tetany. Positive Chvostek's and Trousseau's signs indicate hypocalcemia. Figure 7-2 describes the technique for checking Chvostek's and Trousseau's signs. Table 7-6 lists the clinical manifestations for hypocalcemia and hypercalcemia. Refer to table as needed.

Figure 7-3 displays two ECG strips that reflect the ECG/EKG changes resulting from either hypocalcemia or hypercalcemia.

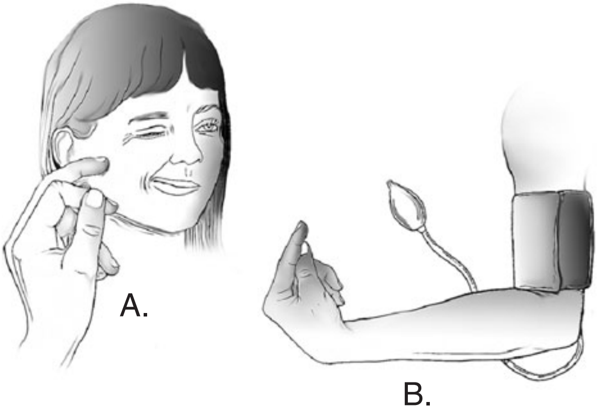


FIGURE 7-2 Testing for Chvostek's and Trousseau's Signs (A) Chvostek's sign: The face is tapped over the facial nerve (2 cm anterior to the earlobe). A positive test results when the facial muscle twitches. (B) Trousseau's sign: Inflate a blood pressure cuff (20–30 mm Hg) on the upper arm to constrict circulation. A positive Trousseau's is evidenced as the occurrence of a carpopedal spasm of the fingers and hand within 1–5 minutes.

Table 7-6 Clinical Manifestations of Calcium Imbalances

Body Involvement	Hypocalcemia	Hypercalcemia
CNS and Muscular Abnormalities	Anxiety, irritability Tetany Twitching around mouth Tingling and numbness of fingers Carpopedal spasm Spasmodic contractions Laryngeal spasm Convulsions Abdominal cramps Muscle cramps	Depression/apathy Muscles are flabby
Chvostek's Sign	Positive	
Trousseau's Sign	Positive	
Cardiac Abnormalities	Weak cardiac contractions	Signs of heart block Cardiac arrest in systole
ECG/EKG	Lengthened ST segment Prolonged QT interval	Decreased or diminished ST segment Shortened QT interval
Blood Abnormalities	Blood does not clot normally, reduction of prothrombin	
Skeletal Abnormalities	Fractures occur if deficit persists	Pathologic fractures Deep pain over bony areas Thinning of bones apparent
Renal Abnormalities		Flank pain Calcium stones formed in the kidney
Laboratory Values		
Serum Ca	<4.5 mEq/L	>5.5 mEq/L
Ionized serum Ca	<2.2 mEq/L	>2.5 mEq/L
Serum Ca	<9.0 mg/dl	>11.0 mg/dl
Ionized serum Ca	<4.25 mg/dl	>5.25 mg/dl

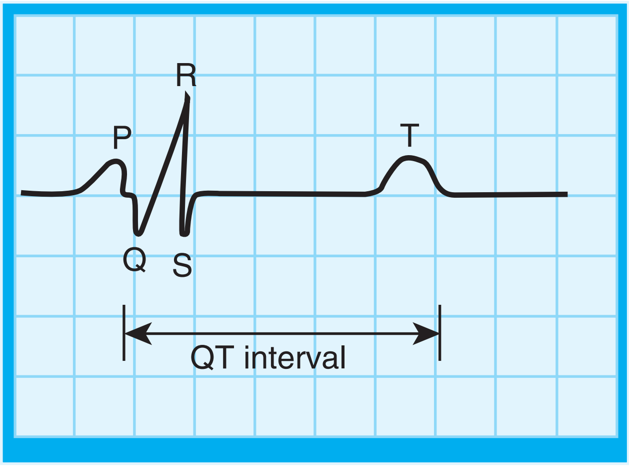


FIGURE 7-3A Lengthened ST segment. Prolonged QT interval.

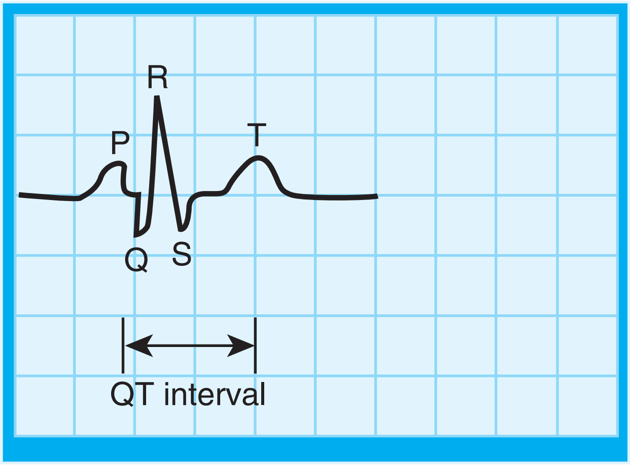


FIGURE 7-3B Decreased ST segment. Shortened QT interval.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Clinical management of hypocalcemia consists of oral supplements and intravenous calcium diluted in 5% dextrose in water (D_5W). Calcium should NOT be diluted in a normal saline solution (0.9% NaCl) because the sodium encourages calcium loss. Table 7-7 lists the oral and intravenous preparations of calcium salts and their dosages and drug form.

Calcium carbonate can cause GI upset because it produces carbon dioxide. For better calcium absorption, calcium supplements should contain vitamin D and oral calcium should be taken 30 minutes before meals.

Table 7-8 gives guidelines for the suggested clinical management for hypocalcemia.

To treat hypercalcemia, expanding the fluid volume is important to increase renal calcium excretion. The use of normal saline solution (NSS) to increase volume expansion decreases calcium reabsorption in the renal proximal tubules. Sodium in NSS promotes calcium loss. Also a loop diuretic such as furosemide (Lasix) is prescribed to prevent fluid overload.

Table 7-7 Calcium Preparations

Calcium Name	Drug Form	Drug Dose
Orals		
Calcium carbonate	650–1500-mg tablets	400 mg/g*
Calcium citrate	950-mg tablet	211 mg/g*
Calcium lactate	325–650-mg tablets	130 mg/g*
Calcium gluconate	500–1000-mg tablets	90 mg/g*
Intravenous		
Calcium chloride	10 ml size	272 mg/g*; 13.5 mEq
Calcium gluceptate	5 ml size	90 mg/g*; 4.5 mEq
Calcium gluconate	10 ml size	90 mg/g*; 4.5 mEq

*Elemental calcium is 1 gram (1g).

Table 7-8 Suggested Clinical Management for Hypocalcemia

Calcium Deficit	Suggested Clinical Management
Mild	Oral calcium salts with vitamin D, take twice a day. 10% IV calcium gluconate (10 ml) in D_5W solution. Administer slowly, 1–3 ml/min.
Moderate	10% IV calcium gluconate (10–20 ml) in D_5W solution. Administer slowly, 1–3 ml/min.
Severe	10% IV calcium gluconate (100 ml) in 1 liter of D_5W. Administer over 4 hours.

Table 7-9 Suggested Treatments for Correcting Hypercalcemia

Mild to Moderate Hypercalcemia (11–14 mg/dL)	Severe Hypercalcemia (>14 mg/dL)
Normal saline solution (NSS, 0.9% NaCl) Loop diuretics, e.g., furosemide (Lasix)	Normal saline solution (NSS, 0.9% NaCl) Loop diuretics, e.g., furosemide (Lasix) Calcitonin, 4 units/kg, SC Others: Corticosteroids Antitumor antibiotics, e.g., plicamycin (Mithracin, Mithramycin)

Table 7-9 lists suggested treatments for correcting mild to moderate and severe hypercalcemia. The goal for managing hypercalcemia is to correct the underlying cause of the serum calcium excess.

Malignancies are a common cause of hypercalcemia. A metastatic bone lesion can destroy the bone, which releases calcium into the circulation, thus elevating the serum calcium level. Some cancers promote the secretion of the parathyroid hormone (PTH) and may be referred to as tumor-secreting (ectopic) PTH production. The most common types of cancer that cause hypercalcemia are lung, breast, ovary, prostate, leukemia, and gastrointestinal cancers. The antitumor antibiotic plicamycin (Mithramycin) inhibits the action of PTH on osteoclasts in the bone and decreases the serum calcium level in the bone.

Drugs and Their Effect on Calcium Balance

Phosphate preparations, corticosteroids, loop diuretics, aspirin, anticonvulsants, magnesium sulfate, and Mithramycin are some of the groups of drugs that can lower the serum calcium level. Excess calcium salt ingestion and infusion and thiazide and chlorthalidone diuretics can increase the serum calcium level. Table 7-10 lists the drugs that affect calcium balance.

Table 7-10 Drugs Affecting Calcium Balance

Calcium Imbalance	Drugs	Rationale
Hypocalcemia (serum calcium deficit)	Magnesium sulfate Propylthiouracil/Propacil Colchicine Plicamycin/Mithracin Neomycin Excessive sodium citrate	These agents inhibit parathyroid hormone/PTH secretion and decrease the serum calcium level.
	Acetazolamide Aspirin Anticonvulsants Glutethimide/Doriden Estrogens Aminoglycosides Gentamicin Amikacin Tobramycin	These agents can alter the vitamin D metabolism that is needed for calcium absorption.
	Phosphate preparations: Oral, enema, and intravenous Sodium phosphate Potassium phosphate	Phosphates can increase the serum phosphorus level and decrease the serum calcium level.
	Corticosteroids Cortisone Prednisone	Steroids decrease calcium mobilization and inhibit the absorption of calcium.
	Loop diuretics Furosemide/Lasix	Loop diuretics reduce calcium absorption from the renal tubules.
Hypercalcemia (serum calcium excess)	Calcium salts Vitamin D	Excess ingestion of calcium and vitamin D and infusion of calcium can increase the serum Ca level.
	IV lipids	Lipids can increase the calcium level.
	Kayexalate, androgens Oiuretics Thiazides Chlorthalidone/Hygroton	These agents can induce hypercalcemia.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: CALCIUM

1. Administer an oral calcium supplement containing vitamin D. Vitamin D is necessary for intestinal absorption of calcium.
2. Oral calcium supplements with vitamin D should be given 30 minutes before meals to improve GI absorption.
3. Intravenous calcium salts should be diluted in 5% dextrose in water (D_5W). Do NOT dilute calcium salts in a saline solution; sodium promotes calcium loss.
4. The suggested IV flow rate for a calcium solution is 1–3 ml/min (average: 2 ml/min).
5. Infiltration of calcium solution, especially calcium chloride, can cause sloughing of the subcutaneous tissues.
6. An elevated serum calcium level can enhance the action of digoxin, causing digitalis toxicity.
7. Diuretics such as furosemide (Lasix) can decrease the serum calcium level, and thiazide diuretics tend to increase the serum calcium levels. Steroids decrease serum calcium levels.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a health history to identify potential causes of hypocalcemia or hypercalcemia; see Tables 7-4 and 7-5.
- Assess for signs and symptoms of hypocalcemia or hypercalcemia. Tetany symptoms (twitching around mouth, carpopedal spasms, laryngospasms) occur with a severe calcium deficit.
- Obtain a serum calcium level that can be used as a baseline for comparison of future serum calcium levels. A serum calcium level <4.5 mEq/L or <9 mg/dl or iCa <2.2 mEq/L indicates hypocalcemia. A serum calcium level >5.5 mEq/L or >11 mg/dl or iCa >2.5 mEq/L indicates hypercalcemia.
- Check ECG/EKG strips for changes that are indicative of a calcium imbalance.
- Determine the acid-base status when hypocalcemia is present. In an acidotic state, calcium is ionized and

can be utilized by the body even though there is a calcium deficit.

- Assess for positive Trousseau's or Chvostek's signs when hypocalcemia is suspected.
- Identify drugs that the patient is taking that contribute to a calcium imbalance.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to insufficient calcium intake, poor calcium absorption due to insufficient vitamin D and protein intake, or drugs (antacids, cortisone preparations) that interfere with calcium ionization
- *Risk for Injury, bleeding,* related to the interference with blood coagulation secondary to calcium loss
- *Risk for Injury,* related to pathologic fractures due to bone destruction from bone cancer, prolonged immobilization, and hypercalcemia
- *Impaired Urinary Elimination,* related to causes of hypercalcemia

Interventions

Hypocalcemia

- Monitor serum calcium levels, vital signs, and ECG strips for changes.
- Monitor intravenous solutions that contain calcium; infiltration can cause sloughing of the subcutaneous tissues.
- Administer oral calcium supplements at least 30 minutes prior to a meal to enhance intestinal absorption.
- Regulate IV 10% calcium gluconate or chloride in a liter of 5% dextrose in water to run 1–3 ml/min. Do not administer calcium salts in an IV normal saline solution. Sodium encourages calcium loss.
- Teach patients to eat foods rich in calcium, vitamin D, and protein, especially the older adult. Tell the patient that protein is needed to aid in calcium absorption.

- Explain to persons using antacids that constant use of antacids can decrease calcium in the body. Antacids decrease acidity, thus decreasing calcium ionization.
- Check for prolonged bleeding or reduced clot formation. A low serum calcium level inhibits the production of prothrombin, which is needed in clot formation.

Hypercalcemia

- Monitor serum calcium levels, vital signs, and ECG strips, noting any changes.
- Promote active and passive exercises for bedridden patients. Immobilization promotes calcium loss from the bone.
- Identify symptoms of digitalis toxicity (bradycardia, nausea, vomiting, visual disturbances). An elevated serum calcium level while receiving a digitalis preparation enhances the action of digoxin.
- Instruct the patient with hypercalcemia to maintain hydration. Increased hydration increases calcium dilution and prevents renal calculi formation.
- Instruct patients with hypercalcemia to avoid foods rich in calcium.
- Monitor urinary output and urine pH. Calcium precipitates in alkaline urine and renal calculi can result. Acid-ash foods and juices such as cranberry and prune juices should be encouraged to increase the acidity of the urine. Acid urine increases the solubility of calcium. Orange juice will not change the urine pH.
- Instruct patients to increase fluid intake to dilute the serum and urine levels of calcium and to prevent the formation of renal calculi.
- Administer prescribed loop diuretics (Lasix) to enhance calcium excretion. Thiazide diuretics inhibit calcium excretion and are not indicated in hypercalcemia.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Evaluate the cause of calcium imbalance and document corrective measures taken.

- Confirm that the effects of the prescribed therapeutic regimen for hypocalcemia or hypercalcemia; serum calcium and ionized calcium levels within normal range.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of hypocalcemia; absence of tetany symptoms, vital signs are within normal range.
- Include foods rich in calcium, such as dairy products; oral calcium supplements with vitamin D.
- Document compliance with the prescribed drug therapy and medical and dietary regimen.

CHAPTER

8

Magnesium Imbalances

INTRODUCTION

Magnesium (Mg), the second most plentiful intracellular cation, has similar functions, causes of imbalances, and clinical manifestations as potassium. The normal serum magnesium level is 1.5–2.5 mEq/L or 1.8–3.0 mg/dl. A serum magnesium deficit is known as **hypomagnesemia,** and a serum magnesium excess is called **hypermagnesemia.**

One-third of magnesium is protein bound and approximately two-thirds is ionized, free magnesium that can be utilized by the body. Magnesium is absorbed from the small intestine. Table 8-1 provides the basic information related to magnesium balance.

Magnesium plays an important role in neuromuscular, cardiac, and enzyme activities. Magnesium acts as a co-enzyme in the metabolism of carbohydrates and protein. Table 8-2 summarizes the various functions of magnesium.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Excess magnesium can cause a sedative effect on the neuromuscular system by inhibiting neuromuscular responses. A magnesium deficit increases neuromuscular excitability. Table 8-3 describes the pathophysiologic factors related to hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia.

Table 8-1 Basic Information Related to Magnesium Balance

Categories	Magnesium Data
Distribution	Fifty percent of magnesium (Mg) is in bones; 49% of Mg is in intracellular fluid (ICF), and 1% is in extracellular fluid (ECF).
Functions	Influences neuromuscular activity, aids other electrolytes with cardiac contractions, activates many enzymes, and influences the utilization of K, Ca, and protein.
Normal serum values	Mg: 1.5–2.5 mEq/L; 1.8–3.0 mg/dl; 0.65–1.1 mmol/L.
Normal excretion (urine)	Mg: 120–140 mg daily.
Dietary daily requirement	For adults: 300–350 mg; for infants: 150 mg.
Food sources	Green vegetables, whole grains, fish and seafood, and nuts.
Excretion	Sixty percent is excreted in feces and 40% via kidneys.

Table 8-2 Magnesium and Its Functions

Body Involvement	Functions
Neuromuscular	Transmits neuromuscular activity. Important mediator of neural transmission in the CNS.
Cardiac	Contracts the heart muscle (myocardium).
Cellular	Activates many enzymes for proper carbohydrate and protein metabolism. Responsible for the transportation of sodium and potassium across cell membranes. Influences utilization of potassium, calcium, and protein. Magnesium deficits are frequently accompanied by a potassium and/or calcium deficit.

Table 8-3 Pathophysiology of Magnesium Imbalances

Magnesium Imbalance	Explanation
Hypomagnesemia	
Neuromuscular	Magnesium (Mg) deficit increases neuromuscular excitability. Mg deficit increases the release of acetylcholine from the presynaptic membrane of nerve fibers.
Cardiac	Can cause tachycardia, hypertension, cardiac dysrhythmias, ventricular fibrillation.
Gastrointestinal	GI dysfunction can inhibit Mg absorption from the small intestine.
Hormonal	Magnesium inhibits the release of the parathyroid hormone (PTH), which can cause a calcium deficit because of the decreased PTH.
Hypermagnesemia	
Neuromuscular	A serum Mg excess has a sedative effect on the neuromuscular system, resulting in a loss of deep tendon reflexes.
Cardiac	Hypermagnesemia can cause hypotension and heart block.
Respiratory	Can inhibit intercostal muscle action, thus decreasing respirations, which could result in respiratory paralysis.
Renal	Renal insufficiency can increase the magnesium level since 40% of magnesium is excreted by the kidneys.

ETIOLOGY

Hypomagnesemia is probably the most frequently undiagnosed electrolyte deficiency. The total serum magnesium concentration is not representative of the cellular magnesium levels. Patients with hypomagnesemia are asymptomatic until the serum magnesium level approaches 1.0 mEq/L. Hence, many patients with hypomagnesemia are asymptomatic. Patients with hypokalemia or hypocalcemia who do not respond to potassium and/or calcium replacement may also have hypomagnesemia. Magnesium is important for potassium uptake and for maintaining cellular potassium. Correction of the magnesium deficit should be seriously considered when correcting serum potassium and serum calcium imbalances.

Hypermagnesemia occurs primarily because of magnesium intake, which occurs in laxatives, antacids, and many enema preparations. The elderly and those with renal insufficiency are at high risk for developing hypermagnesemia. The causes of hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia are presented in two tables. Table 8-4 lists the etiology and rationale for hypomagnesemia, and Table 8-5 lists the etiology and rationale for hypermagnesemia.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Magnesium influences the nervous system; too much or not enough magnesium affects the neuromuscular function. Severe hypomagnesemia may result in symptoms of tetany. Weakness, loss of deep tendon reflexes, and paralysis are signs and symptoms of hypermagnesemia. Central nervous system depression inhibits neuromuscular transmission, thus decreasing muscle tone and respiration. The serum magnesium level and the ECG changes determine the severity of the magnesium imbalance. Table 8-6 lists the clinical manifestations of hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia.

A **magnesium tolerance (load) test** may be prescribed to determine the presence of abnormal magnesium levels. With this test, a magnesium product is infused over 4–12 hours (check the procedure). Urine is collected over 24 hours starting with the beginning of the infusion. The normal magnesium excretion is 60–80% in 24 hours. Abnormal findings represent less than 50% of magnesium excretion.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Clinical management of hypomagnesemia includes a diet consisting of green vegetables, legumes, nuts (peanut butter), and fruits. Oral or intravenous magnesium salts may be prescribed when there is a marked to severe magnesium deficit. Table 8-7 lists the methods of clinical management for hypomagnesemia. Correction for magnesium deficit may take 3–4 days, depending upon the severity of the deficit. With asymptomatic hypomagnesemia, oral magnesium replacement is usually prescribed and with symptomatic hypomagnesemia, parenteral (IV, IM) magnesium sulfate is usually prescribed.

Table 8-4 Causes of Hypomagnesemia (Serum Magnesium Deficit)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes	
Inadequate intake, poor absorption, GI losses	Magnesium is found in various foods, e.g., green, leafy vegetables and whole grains.
Malnutrition, starvation	Inadequate nutrition can result in a magnesium deficit.
Total parenteral nutrition (TPN, hyperalimentation)	Continuous use of TPN without a magnesium supplement can cause a magnesium deficit.
Chronic alcoholism	Alcoholism promotes inadequate food intake and GI loss of magnesium.
Increased calcium intake	Calcium absorption promotes magnesium loss in feces.
Chronic diarrhea, intestinal fistulas, chronic use of laxatives	Chronic diarrhea impairs magnesium absorption. Prolonged use of laxatives can cause a magnesium deficit.
Renal Dysfunction	
Diuresis: diabetic ketoacidosis	Diuresis due to diabetic ketoacidosis causes magnesium loss via the kidneys.
Acute renal failure (ARF)	ARF in the diuretic phase promotes magnesium loss.
Cardiac Dysfunction	
Acute myocardial infarction (AMI)	Hypomagnesemia may occur from the first to the fifth day post-acute MI.
Heart failure (HF)	Prolonged diuretic therapy for HF can cause a magnesium deficit.
Electrolyte and Acid-Base Influence	
Hypokalemia	The cations potassium and calcium are interrelated with magnesium action.
Hypocalcemia Metabolic alkalosis	Hypomagnesemia can occur with hypokalemia, hypocalcemia, and metabolic alkalosis.
Drug Influence	
Aminoglycosides, potassium-wasting diuretics, cortisone, amphotericin B, digoxin	These drugs promote the loss of magnesium. Hypomagnesemia enhances the action of digoxin; digitalis toxicity may result.

Table 8-5 Causes of Hypermagnesemia (Serum Magnesium Excess)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes	
Excessive administration of magnesium products	Hypermagnesemia rarely occurs unless there is a prolonged excess use of magnesium-containing antacids (Maalox), laxatives (milk of magnesia), and IV magnesium sulfate.
IV magnesium sulfate	
Antacids with magnesium	
Laxatives with magnesium	
Renal Dysfunction	
Renal insufficiency	Renal insufficiency or failure inhibits the excretion of magnesium.
Renal failure	
Severe Dehydration	
Diabetic ketoacidosis	Loss of body fluids due to diuresis from diabetic ketoacidosis causes a hemoconcentration of magnesium, which can result in an increased magnesium level.

Table 8-6 Clinical Manifestations of Magnesium Imbalances

Body Involvement	Hypomagnesemia	Hypermagnesemia
Neuromuscular abnormalities	Hyperirritability Tetany-like symptoms Tremors Twitching of face Spasticity Increased tendon reflexes	CNS depression Lethargy, drowsiness, weakness, paralysis Loss of deep tendon reflexes
Cardiac abnormalities	Hypertension Cardiac dysrhythmias Premature ventricular contractions Ventricular tachycardia Ventricular fibrillation	Hypotension (if severe, profound hypotension) Complete heart block
ECG/EKG	Flat or inverted T wave Depressed ST segment	Widened QRS complex Prolonged QT interval
Others		Flushing Respiratory depression

Table 8-7 Suggested Clinical Management for Hypomagnesemia

Drug Name	Route for Administration	Rationale
Magnesium gluconate (Magonate)	Oral	Used for mild hypomagnesemia
Magnesium-protein complex (Mg-PLUS)	Oral	Used for mild hypomagnesemia
Magnesium sulfate	Intramuscular	Used for moderate hypomagnesemia: 1 gram or 2 mL of 50% $MgSO_4$ q8h
	Intravenous	Used for severe hypomagnesemia: 2 grams or 4 mL of 50% $MgSO_4$ diluted in 100 mL of D_5W, administer in 10–15 min

Correcting hypermagnesemia should include underlying causes and using intravenous saline or calcium salts to decrease the serum magnesium level. Intravenous calcium is an antagonist to magnesium; therefore, calcium decreases the symptoms of hypermagnesemia. If renal failure is the cause of severe hypermagnesemia, dialysis may be necessary.

Drugs and Their Effect on Magnesium Balance

Sodium inhibits tubular absorption of magnesium and calcium. Long-term administration of saline infusions may result in losses of magnesium and calcium. Diuretics, certain antibiotics, laxatives, and steroids are drug groups that promote magnesium loss. An excess intake of magnesium salts is the major cause of serum magnesium excess.

Hypomagnesemia (like hypokalemia) enhances the action of digoxin and causes digitalis toxicity. Magnesium sulfate corrects hypomagnesemia and symptoms of digitalis toxicity. Table 8-8 lists the drugs that affect magnesium balance. Refer to the table as needed.

Table 8-8 Drugs Affecting Magnesium Balance

Magnesium Imbalance	Drugs	Rationale
Hypomagnesemia (serum magnesium deficit)	Diuretics Furosemide/Lasix Ethacrynic acid/Edecrin Mannitol	Diuretics promote urinary loss of magnesium.
	Antibiotics Gentamicin Tobramycin Carbencicillin Capreomycin Neomycin Polymyxin B Amphotericin B	These agents can cause magnesium loss via kidney
	Digoxin	
	Calcium gluconate	
	Insulin	
	Laxatives	Laxative abuse causes magnesium loss via GI.
	Cisplatin	
	Corticosteroids Cortisone Prednisone	Steroids can decrease serum magnesium levels.
Hypermagnesemia (serum magnesium excess)	Magnesium salts: Oral and enema Magnesium hydroxide/MOM Magnesium sulfate/Epsom salt Magnesium citrate	Excess use of magnesium salts can increase serum magnesium levels.
	Magnesium sulfate (maternity)	Use of excess $MgSO_4$ in treatment of toxemia can cause hypermagnesemia.
	Lithium	Hypermagnesemia can be associated with lithium therapy.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: MAGNESIUM

1. Signs and symptoms of hypomagnesemia are similar to those of hypokalemia; see Table 8-4 on page 109.
2. Excess use of laxatives and antacids that contain magnesium can cause hypermagnesemia.
3. A magnesium deficit is often accompanied by a potassium and calcium deficit (40% of patients with hypomagnesemia also have hypokalemia). If a potassium deficit does not respond to potassium replacement, hypomagnesemia should be suspected.
4. Severe hypomagnesemia can cause symptoms of tetany.
5. IV magnesium sulfate diluted in intravenous solution should be administered at a slow rate. Rapid infusion can cause hot flashes.
6. In emergency situations, IV calcium gluconate is given to reverse hypermagnesemia.
7. Long-term administration of saline (NaCl) infusions can result in magnesium and calcium losses. Sodium inhibits renal absorption of magnesium and calcium.
8. A magnesium deficit enhances the action of digoxin.
9. Thiazides and loop (high-ceiling) diuretics decrease serum magnesium levels.
10. Mild to moderate hypermagnesemia is presently asymptomatic.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a health history for possible causes of hypomagnesemia or hypermagnesemia; see Tables 8-4 and 8-5.
- Assess for signs and symptoms of hypomagnesemia [tetany-like symptoms (tremors, twitching of the face)] or hypermagnesemia (decreased neuromuscular activity, decreased respiration, and hypotension).
- Obtain a serum magnesium level that can be used as a baseline for comparison of future serum magnesium levels.

- Assess dietary intake and use of intravenous therapy without magnesium. Prolonged intravenous therapy including total parenteral nutrition (TPN) may be a cause of hypomagnesemia.
- Check the ECG/EKG strips for changes. Report abnormal findings.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to poor nutritional intake, chronic alcoholism, chronic laxative abuse, and chronic diarrhea
- *Imbalanced Nutrition, more than body requirements,* related to oral and intravenous magnesium supplements and chronic use of drugs containing magnesium
- *Decreased Cardiac Output,* related to a serum magnesium deficit

Interventions

Hypomagnesemia

- Instruct the patient to eat foods rich in magnesium.
- Report when patients receive continuous magnesium-free IV fluids. TPN solutions should contain some magnesium.
- Administer IV magnesium sulfate diluted in IV solution, slowly unless the patient has a very severe deficit. Rapid infusion can cause a hot or flushed feeling.
- Have IV calcium gluconate available for emergency to reverse hypermagnesemia from overcorrection.
- Monitor vital signs and ECG strips. Report abnormal findings.
- Report urine output <25 ml/h or 600 ml/day when the patient is receiving magnesium supplements. Magnesium excess is excreted by the kidneys.
- Check for positive Trousseau's or Chvostek's signs, indicating severe hypomagnesemia. Tetany symptoms can occur in both magnesium and calcium deficits.

Hypermagnesemia

- Monitor vital signs, ECG strips, and urine output. Report abnormal findings.
- Monitor serum magnesium levels. A serum Mg <1.0 mEq/L or >10 mEq/L can cause a cardiac arrest.
- Instruct patient to avoid prolonged use of antacids and laxatives that contain magnesium.
- Suggest that the patient increase fluid intake for the purpose of diluting the serum magnesium level unless contraindicated for other health problems.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of the magnesium imbalance has been corrected. Check that serum potassium level is within normal range. Because potassium and magnesium are cations and have similar functions, one electrolyte imbalance affects the other electrolyte balance.
- Evaluate the effect of the therapeutic regimen for the correction of magnesium imbalance; serum magnesium is within normal range.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of hypomagnesemia or hypermagnesemia; ECG, vital signs, etc., return to the patient's normal baseline patterns.

CHAPTER 9

Phosphorus Imbalances

INTRODUCTION

Phosphorus (P) is a major anion that has its highest concentration in the intracellular fluid. Phosphorus and calcium have similar and opposite effects. Both electrolytes need vitamin D for intestinal absorption and are present in bones and teeth. The parathyroid hormone (PTH) acts on phosphorus and calcium differently. PTH decreases serum phosphorus levels by stimulating the renal tubules to excrete phosphorus and increases serum calcium levels by pulling calcium from the bone.

The normal serum phosphorus range is 1.7–2.6 mEq/L or 2.5–4.5 mg/dl. A phosphorus deficit is known as **hypophosphatemia,** and a phosphorus excess is called **hyperphosphatemia.** The ions phosphorus (P) and phosphate (PO_4) are used interchangeably. Phosphorus is measured in the serum, where it appears as the form of phosphate. Forty-five percent of phosphorus is protein bound and 55% is ionized (free) phosphorus, which is physiologically active. Table 9-1 summarizes the basic information related to phosphorus balance.

Phosphorus has many functions. It is a vital element needed in the formation of bones and teeth and for neuromuscular activity. As an essential component of the cell (nucleic acids and cell membrane), it is incorporated into the enzymes needed for metabolism, e.g., adenosine triphosphate (ATP), a transmission of hereditary traits, and 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG), and acts as an acid-base buffer. Table 9-2 explains the functions of phosphorus.

Table 9-1 **Basic Information Related to Phosphorus Balance**

Categories	Phosphorus Data
Distribution	Approximately 85% of phosphorus is located in bones and teeth and 15% is located in the intracellular fluid (ICF).
Functions	For neuromuscular activity, durability of bones and teeth, formation of ATP, utilization of B vitamins, transmission of hereditary traits, metabolism of CHO, proteins, and fats, and as a contributing factor in acid-base balance.
Normal serum values	Phosphorus: 1.7–2.6 mEq/L; 2.5–4.5 mg/dl; 0.81–1.45 mmol/L.
Dietary requirements	Eight hundred to 1200 mg daily.
Food sources	Whole grain, cereal, cheese, milk, eggs, dry beans, beef, pork, fish, poultry, and most carbonated beverages.
Excretion	Ninety percent is excreted via kidneys and 10% is lost via GI secretions.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Hypophosphatemia can occur within 3–4 days after an inadequate nutrient intake. Initially, the kidneys compensate by decreasing urinary phosphate excretion; however, a continuous inadequate intake of phosphorus results in extracellular fluid shift to the cells in order to replace phosphorus loss in the intracellular fluid.

PTH promotes renal excretion of phosphorus (phosphate) and calcium reabsorption. When there is a high serum concentration of phosphorus, aluminum-containing antacids decrease hyperphosphatemia and its symptoms. Hyperphosphatemia causes hypocalcemia.

ETIOLOGY

Dietary changes, gastrointestinal disturbances, hormonal influence, selected drugs, and cellular changes are all associated with hypophosphatemia. Respiratory alkalosis can result

Table 9-2 Phosphorus and Its Functions

Body Involvement	Functions
Neuromuscular	Normal nerve and muscle activity.
Bones and teeth	Bone and teeth formation, strength, and durability.
Cellular	Formation of high-energy compounds (ATP, ADP). Phosphorus is the backbone of nucleic acids and stores metabolic energy. Formation of the red-blood-cell enzyme 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG) is responsible for delivering oxygen to tissues. Utilization of B vitamins. Transmission of hereditary traits. Metabolism of carbohydrates, proteins, and fats. Maintenance of acid-base balance in body fluids.

from hypophosphatemia. Any carbohydrate-loading diet can cause a phosphorus shift from the serum into the cell, resulting in a decreased serum phosphorus level. Tissue repair following trauma causes phosphorus to shift into the cells.

Excessive use of phosphate supplements and renal insufficiency are factors associated with hyperphosphatemia. Hyperphosphatemia causes hypocalcemia by decreasing the production of calcitriol. Calcitriol promotes calcium absorption from the intestines, so with a decrease of calcitriol, the serum calcium level would be decreased. The acid-base disorders, metabolic acidosis and acute respiratory acidosis, can be causes for the occurrence of hyperphosphatemia. Tables 9-3 and 9-4 list the causes of a phosphorus deficit and excess.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Clinical manifestations of hypophosphatemia and hyperphosphatemia are determined by the etiology of the phosphorus imbalance. Neuromuscular irregularities, hematologic and cardiopulmonary abnormalities, and abnormal serum phosphorus level are the most common manifestations. Because the symptoms of phosphorus imbalance are often vague, serum

Table 9-3 Causes of Hypophosphatemia (Serum Phosphorus Deficit)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes	
Malnutrition	Poor nutrition results in a reduction of phosphorus intake.
Chronic alcoholism	Alcoholism contributes to dietary insufficiencies and increased diuresis.
Total parenteral nutrition (TPN, hyperalimentation)	TPN is usually a phosphorus-poor or -free solution. IV concentrated glucose and protein given rapidly shifts phosphorus into the cells, thus causing a serum phosphorus deficit.
Gastrointestinal Abnormalities	
Vomiting, anorexia	Loss of phosphorus through the GI tract decreases cellular ATP (energy) stores.
Chronic diarrhea	
Intestinal malabsorption	Vitamin D deficiencies inhibit phosphorus absorption. Phosphorus is absorbed in the jejunum in the presence of vitamin D.
Poor Oxygenation of Tissues	Lack of 2,3-DPG, which is needed for the delivery of oxygen.
Hormonal Influence	
Hyperparathyroidism (increased PTH)	Parathyroid hormone (PTH) production enhances renal phosphate excretion and calcium reabsorption.
Cellular Changes	
Diabetic ketoacidosis	Glycosuria and polyuria increase phosphate excretion. A dextrose infusion with insulin causes a phosphorus shift into the cells; decreasing the serum phosphorus level.
Burns	Phosphorus is lost due to its increased utilization in tissue building.
Acid-Base Disorders	
Respiratory alkalosis Metabolic alkalosis	Respiratory alkalosis from prolonged hyperventilation decreases the serum phosphorus level by causing an intracellular shift of phosphorus. Metabolic alkalosis can also cause this shift.

(continues)

Table 9-3 Causes of Hypophosphatemia (Serum Phosphorus Deficit) *continued*

Etiology	Rationale
Drug Influence	
Aluminum-containing antacids	Phosphate binds with aluminum to decrease the serum phosphorus level.
Diuretics	Most diuretics promote a decrease in the serum phosphorus level.

Table 9-4 Causes of Hyperphosphatemia (Serum Phosphorus Excess)

Etiology	Rationale
Dietary Changes	
Oral phosphate supplements Intravenous phosphate	Excessive administration of phosphate-containing substances increases the serum phosphorus level.
Hormonal Influence	
Hypoparathyroidism (lack of PTH)	Lack of PTH causes a calcium loss and a phosphorus excess.
Renal Abnormalities	
Renal insufficiency	Renal insufficiency or shutdown decreases phosphorus excretion.
Chemotherapy	During chemotherapy, phosphorus leaves the cells, thus, serum phosphorus level is increased.
Acid-Base Disorders	
Metabolic acidosis Respiratory acidosis	Acidosis is a cause of hyperphosphatemia. It prevents accumulation of cellular phosphates.
Drug Influence	
Laxatives containing phosphate	Frequent use of phosphate laxatives increases the serum phosphorus level.

values are needed. Usually mild to moderate phosphorus deficit is asymptomatic. Table 9-5 lists the clinical manifestations of phosphorus deficit and excess.

Table 9-5 Clinical Manifestations of Phosphorus Imbalances

Body Involvement	Hypophosphatemia	Hyperphosphatemia
Neuromuscular Abnormalities	Muscle weakness Tremors Paresthesia Bone pain Hyporeflexia Seizures	Tetany (with decreased calcium) Hyperreflexia Flaccid paralysis Muscular weakness
Hematologic Abnormalities	Tissue hypoxia (decreased oxygen-containing hemoglobin and hemolysis) Possible bleeding (platelet dysfunction) Possible infection (leukocyte dysfunction)	
Cardiopulmonary Abnormalities	Weak pulse (myocardial dysfunction) Hyperventilation	Tachycardia
GI Abnormalities	Anorexia Dysphagia	Nausea, diarrhea Abdominal cramps
Laboratory Values		
Milliequivalents per liter	<1.7 mEq/L	>2.6 mEq/L
Milligrams per deciliter	<2.5 mg/dl	>4.5 mg/dl

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

When the serum phosphorus level falls below 1.5 mEq/L or 2 mg/dl, oral and/or intravenous phosphate-containing solutions, such as sodium phosphate or potassium phosphate may be prescribed. If the serum phosphorus level falls below 0.5 mEq/L or 1 mg/dl, severe hypophosphatemia occurs. Intravenous phosphate-containing solutions (sodium phosphate and potassium phosphate) are indicated. Sodium phosphate is the preferred solution if the patient has oliguria.

Administration of insulin and glucose can lower the serum phosphorus level by shifting phosphorus from the extracellular

Suggested Phosphorus Replacement for Severe Hypophosphatemia

Uncomplicated P deficit:	IV phosphate salt: 0.6 mg/kg/h
Complicated P deficit:	IV phosphate salt: 0.9 mg/kg/h
Serum P level:	>1.5 mEq/L or 2 mg/dl oral phosphate salt

Check phosphorus level q6h.

fluid into the cells. The use of insulin and glucose is normally a temporary treatment to correct hyperphosphatemia.

Drugs and Their Effect on Phosphorus Balance

The major drug group that causes hypophosphatemia is the aluminum antacids. Other drug groups causing a phosphorus deficit include diuretics, steroids, and calcium salts. Excess use of phosphate laxatives, phosphate enemas, and oral and intravenous phosphates are often responsible for hyperphosphatemia. Table 9-6 lists the drugs that can cause a phosphorus deficit and excess. Refer to table as needed.

Table 9-6 Drugs That Affect Phosphorus Balance

Phosphorus Imbalance	Drugs	Rationale
Hypophosphatemia (serum phosphorus deficit)	Sucralfate Aluminum antacids Amphojel Basaljel Aluminum/magnesium antacids Di-Gel Gelusil Maalox Maalox Plus	Aluminum-containing antacids bind with phosphorus; therefore the serum phosphorus level is decreased. Calcium promotes phosphate loss.

(continues)

Table 9-6 Drugs That Affect Phosphorus Balance—*continued*

Phosphorus Imbalance	**Drugs**	**Rationale**
	Mylanta Mylanta II Calcium antacids Calcium carbonate	
	Diuretics Thiazide Loop (high-ceiling) Acetazolamide	Phosphorus can be lost when diuretics are used.
Hypophosphatemia (serum phosphorus deficit), *cont'd*	Androgens Corticosteroids Cortisone Prednisone Glucagon Gastrin Epinephrine Mannitol Salicylate overdose Insulin and glucose	These agents have a mild to moderate effect on phosphorus loss.
Hyperphosphatemia (serum phosphorus excess)	Oral phosphates Sodium phosphate/ Phospho-Soda Potassium phosphate/ Neutra-Phos K Intravenous phosphates Sodium phosphate Potassium phosphate	Excess oral ingestion and IV infusion can increase the serum phosphorus level.
	Phosphate laxatives Sodium phosphate Sodium biphosphate/ Phospho-Soda Phosphate enema Fleet sodium phosphate Excessive vitamin D Antibiotics Tetracyclines Methicillin	Continuous use of phosphate laxatives and enemas can increase the serum phosphorus level.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: PHOSPHORUS

1. Phosphorus is needed for durable bones and teeth, formation of ATP (high-energy compound for cellular activity), formation of 2,3-DPG (in the red blood cells that aid in the delivery of oxygen to the tissues), metabolism of carbohydrates, proteins, and fats, utilization of B vitamins, transmission of hereditary traits, and others.
2. Phosphorus and calcium are similar and yet differ in action. Both need vitamin D for intestinal absorption. PTH promotes renal excretion of phosphorus (phosphate) and calcium reabsorption from the bones.
3. Vomiting and chronic diarrhea cause a loss of phosphorus.
4. Acute hypophosphatemia may result from an abrupt shift of phosphorus into the cells. Respiratory alkalosis and metabolic alkalosis can cause shifting of phosphorus into the cells.
5. Concentrated IV phosphates are (hypertonic) and must be diluted. If IV potassium phosphate is given in intravenous solution, the IV rate should be no more than 10 mEq/h to avoid phlebitis and a potassium overload.
6. Aluminum-containing antacids decrease the serum phosphorus level; phosphate binds with the aluminum. Aluminum-containing antacids are useful for hyperphosphatemia.
7. Continuous use of phosphate laxatives can cause an elevated serum phosphorus level.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a health history of clinical problems associated with hypophosphatemia (malnutrition, chronic alcoholism, chronic diarrhea, vitamin D deficiency, hyperparathyroidism, continuous use of aluminum-containing antacids, and respiratory alkalosis) and with hyperphosphatemia (continuous use of phosphate-containing laxatives, hypoparathyroidism, and renal insufficiency).

- Assess for signs and symptoms of a phosphorus deficit or phosphorus excess (refer to Table 9-5).
- Check the serum phosphorus level. The serum phosphorus level is needed as a baseline level for assessing future serum phosphorus levels.
- Check serum calcium level. An elevated calcium level causes a decreased phosphorus level and vice versa.
- Check vital signs. Report abnormal findings, such as weak pulse, tachypnea.
- Check urinary output. Report abnormal findings. A decrease in urine output, <600 ml/day, increases the serum phosphorus level.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to inadequate nutritional intake, chronic alcoholism, vomiting, chronic diarrhea, lack of vitamin D intake, and intravenous fluids (including TPN), which lack a phosphate additive
- *Imbalanced Nutrition, more than body requirements,* related to excess intake of phosphate-containing compounds such as some laxatives, intravenous potassium phosphate, and others

Interventions

Hypophosphatemia

- Monitor serum phosphorus and calcium levels. Report abnormal results.
- Monitor oral and intravenous phosphate replacements. An oral phosphate salt, Neutrophos, which comes in capsules, may be indicated if nausea is present. Administer IV potassium phosphate slowly to prevent hyperphosphatemia and irritation of the blood vessel. Rapid intravenous potassium phosphate can cause phlebitis.
- Check for signs of infiltration at the IV site; KPO_4 is extremely irritating to the subcutaneous tissue and can cause sloughing of tissue and necrosis.

- Encourage the patient to eat foods rich in phosphorus, such as meats, milk, whole grain cereal, and nuts. Most carbonated drinks are high in phosphates.
- Instruct the patient to avoid taking antacids that contain aluminum hydroxide, such as Amphojel. Phosphorus binds with aluminum products; a low serum phosphorus level results.

Hyperphosphatemia

- Monitor vital signs. Report abnormal results.
- Monitor serum phosphorus and calcium levels. Report abnormal results.
- Observe the patient for signs and symptoms of hypocalcemia (e.g., tetany). An increased serum phosphorus level decreases the calcium level.
- Monitor urine output. Report inadequate urine output. Phosphorus is excreted by the kidneys and poor renal function can cause hyperphosphatemia.
- Instruct the patient to eat foods that are low in phosphorus and to avoid carbonated beverages, which are high in phosphorus.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of phosphorus imbalance has been eliminated.
- Evaluate the effect of clinical management in the correction of hypophosphatemia or hyperphosphatemia; serum phosphorus levels are within normal range.
- Determine that the signs and symptoms of phosphorus imbalance are absent; patient is free of neuromuscular abnormalities, such as muscle weakness and tetany symptoms.
- Document compliance with prescribed drug therapy and medical and dietary regimen.

UNIT III

ACID-BASE BALANCE AND IMBALANCE

INTRODUCTION

Our body fluid must maintain a balance between acidity and alkalinity in order for life to be maintained. The concentration of hydrogen ions (plus or minus) determine either the acidity or the alkalinity of a solution. The amount of ionized hydrogen in extracellular fluid is extremely small: around 0.0000001 g/L. The pH symbol stands for the negative logarithm of the hydrogen ion concentration. Mathematically, it is expressed as 10^{-7}. When the minus sign is dropped, the symbol is used to designate the hydrogen ion concentration as pH 7. As the hydrogen ion concentration rises in solution, the pH value falls, thus indicating increased acidity. As the hydrogen ion concentration falls, the pH rises, thus indicating increased alkalinity.

The hydroxyl ions (OH^-) are base ions and, when in excess, increase the alkalinity of the solution. A solution with a pH 7 is neutral because at this concentration the number of hydrogen ions is exactly balanced with the number of hydroxyl ions.

The pH of extracellular fluid in a healthy individual is maintained at a level between 7.35 and 7.45, resulting in a body fluid level that is slightly alkaline. If the pH value is below 7.35, acidosis is present, and if the pH value exceeds 7.45, alkalosis results. Within the body, the pH of the different body fluids varies. Table U3-1 lists the various body fluids and their pH ranges.

In health, there are $1\frac{1}{3}$ mEq/L of acid to each 27 mEq of alkali for each liter of extracellular fluid. This represents a ratio of 1 part acid to 20 parts alkali. Figure U3-1 demonstrates by the arrow that the body is in acid-base balance; a pH of 7.4 represents

Table U3-1 The pH of Body Fluids

Body Fluid	pH
Extracellular fluid	7.35–7.45
Intracellular fluid	6.9–7.2
Urine	6.0
Gastric juice	1.0–2.0
Intestinal juice	6.6–7.6
Bile	5.0–6.0

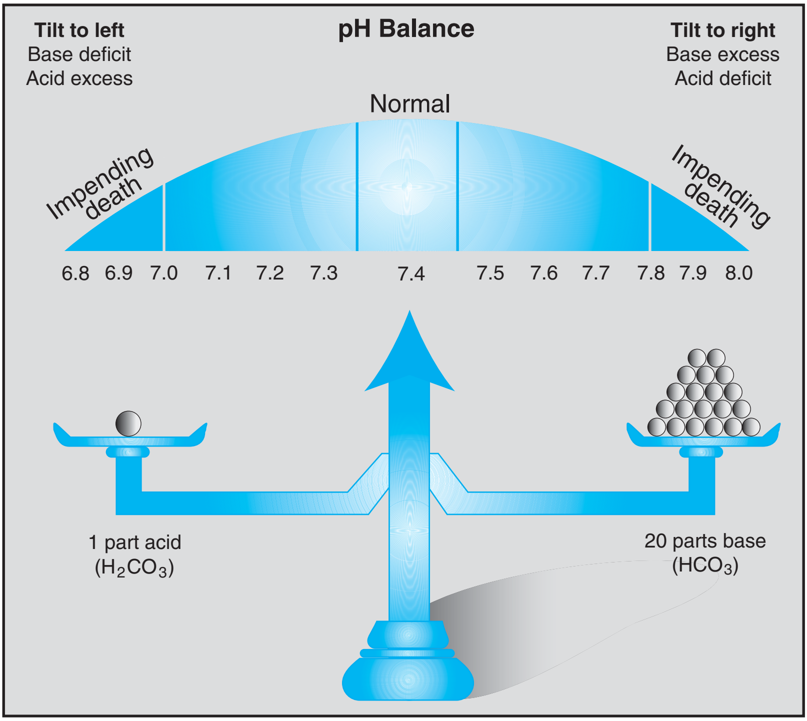

Tilt to left
Base deficit
Acid excess
pH Balance
Tilt to right
Base excess
Acid deficit
Normal
Impending death
Impending death
6.8
6.9
7.0
7.1
7.2
7.3
7.4
7.5
7.6
7.7
7.8
7.9
8.0
1 part acid
(H_2CO_3)
20 parts base
(HCO_3)

FIGURE U3-1 Acidosis and alkalosis.

this balance. If the arrow tilts left due to a base deficit or acid excess, then acidosis occurs. If the arrow tilts right due to a base excess or acid deficit, then alkalosis occurs.

REGULATORY MECHANISMS FOR pH CONTROL

The three major regulatory mechanisms for pH control are:

1. Chemical buffer systems
2. Respiratory regulation
3. Renal regulation

The buffer systems maintain the acid-base balance of body fluids by protecting the fluids against changes in pH. The most important buffer system in the body is the bicarbonate–carbonic acid buffer, which maintains the acid-base balance 55% of the time. Table U3-2 provides specific data related to the regulation of pH control for the three major regulatory mechanisms.

SUMMARY OF ACID-BASE IMBALANCES

Table U3-2 gives a summary account of the body's chemical buffer systems.

Table U3-2 Chemical Buffer Systems in the Body

Buffer system	Location	Chemical Equation $H^+ + \text{base} \rightleftharpoons \text{Acid}$	Function
Bicarbonate-carbonic acid	Throughout the body	$H^+ + HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons CO_2 + H_2O$ (H^+ + base $\rightleftharpoons$ acid $\rightleftharpoons$ gas + water)	Body's most powerful buffer system. Carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) can break down to form $CO_2 + H_2O$, and the lungs can excrete CO_2. Provides a coupling between CO_2 and acidity.
Phosphate	Kidneys	$H^+ + HPO_4^{2-} \rightleftharpoons H_2PO_4^-$	Excess H^+ combines with dibasic phosphate to form monobasic phosphate which is excreted in urine.
Ammonia-ammonium	Kidneys	$H^+ + NH_3 \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+$ (H^+ + base $\rightleftharpoons$ acid)	Excess H^+ combines with ammonia (NH_3) to form ammonium ion which is excreted in urine.
Proteins	Inside all cells	H^+ + protein $\rightleftharpoons$ H-protein	Proteins are weak acids and weak bases at the same time. They absorb excess H^+ when intracellular fluid is acidic and provide H^+ when intracellular fluid is alkaline.
Hemoglobin	Inside red blood cells	$H^+ + HbO_2 \rightleftharpoons HHb + O_2$	The most important protein buffer. Oxyhemoglobin (HbO_2) gives up its oxygen and is then able to combine with H^+. Keeps venous blood from being too acidic.

Table U3-3 Causes, Manifestations, and Laboratory Findings in Metabolic and Respiratory Acidosis and Alkalosis

Metabolic Acidosis	**Metabolic Alkalosis**
Clinical Manifestations	
Kussmaul breathing (rapid and vigorous)	Shallow breathing
Flushing of the skin (capillary dilation)	Tetany-like symptoms
Decrease in heart rate and cardiac output	Irritability, confusion
Nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain	Vomiting
Dehydration	
Laboratory Findings	
Bicarbonate deficit	*Bicarbonate excess*
pH<7.35, HCO_3 >24 mEq/L, BE<−2,	pH>7.45, HCO_3>28 mEq/L, BE>+2,
plasma CO_2 <22 mEq/L	plasma CO_2 < 32 mEq/L
Causes	
Diabetic acidosis, severe diarrhea or starvation, tissue trauma, renal and heart failure, shock, severe infection	Peptic ulcer, vomiting, gastric suction
Respiratory Acidosis	**Respiratory Alkalosis**
Clinical Manifestations	
Dyspnea, inadequate gas exchange	Rapid, shallow breathing
Flushing and warm skin	Tetany-like symptoms (numbness, tingling of fingers)
Tachycardia	Palpitations
Weakness	Vertigo
Laboratory Findings	
Carbonic acid excess (CO_2 retention)	*Carbonic acid deficit*
pH<7.35, $PaCO_2$ >45 mm Hg	pH>7.45, $PaCO_2$ <35 mm Hg
Causes	
COPD (emphysema, chronic bronchitis, severe asthma), narcotics, anesthetics, barbiturates, pneumonia, chest injuries	Anxiety, hysteria, drug toxicity, fever, pain, brain tumors, early salicylate poisoning, excessive exercise

CHAPTER

10

Determination of Acid-Base Imbalances

INTRODUCTION

Hydrogen ions circulate throughout the body fluids in two forms, *volatile acid* and *non-volatile acid.* A volatile acid (carbonic acid [H_2CO_3]) circulates as CO_2 and H_2O and is excreted as a gas, CO_2. A non-volatile acid (fixed acid, e.g., lactic, pyruvic, sulfuric, phosphoric acids) results from the various organic acids within the body. They are excreted from the body in urine. The lungs and the kidneys aid in the regulation of acid-base balance; the lungs excrete the volatile acid and the kidneys excrete non-volatile acids. The formula that demonstrates respiratory and renal regulation for acid-base balance is shown in Figure 10-1.

Arterial blood gases are drawn to determine acid-base balance and/or imbalance. The three values (pH, $PaCO_2$, and HCO_3) are analyzed from the arterial blood specimen to indicate the type of acid-base imbalance. The pH indicates either that the extracellular fluid is neutral (7.35–7.45), acidotic (<7.35) or alkalotic (>7.45). $PaCO_2$ is the respiratory component for checking acid-base imbalance. If the $PaCO_2$ is >45 mm Hg, respiratory acidosis occurs; if $PaCO_2$ is <35 mm Hg, respiratory alkalosis is present. The metabolic or renal component is HCO_3. If the HCO_3 is <24 mEq/L, metabolic acidosis occurs; if it is >28 mEq/L, metabolic alkalosis is present. Other measurements to determine metabolic acidosis and alkalosis are base excess (BE) and serum CO_2, a serum bicarbonate determinant. The norm for base excess is −2 to +2 mEq/L BE relates to the

Respiratory Regulation *Renal Regulation*

$$H_2 + CO_2 \leftrightharpoons (H_2CO_3) \leftrightharpoons H^+ + HCO_3$$

FIGURE 10-1 Respiratory and renal regulation of acid-base balance.

Table 10-1 Determination of Acid-Base Imbalance

Blood Tests	Normal Values	Imbalance
pH	Adult: 7.35–7.45 Newborn: 7.27–7.47 Child: 7.33–7.43	Adult: <7.35 = acidosis >7.45 = alkalosis
$PaCO_2$ (respiratory component)	Adult and child: 35–45 mm Hg Newborn 27–41 mm Hg	Adult and child: <35 mm Hg = respiratory alkalosis (hyperventilation) >45 mm Hg = respiratory acidosis (hypoventilation)
HCO_3^2 (metabolic and renal component)	Adult and child: 24–28 mEq/L[*] Newborn: 22–30 mEq/L	Adult and child: <24 mEq/L = metabolic acidosis >28 mEq/L = metabolic alkalosis
Base excess (BE) (metabolic and renal component)	Adult and child +2 to −2 mEq/L	Adult and child <-2 = metabolic acidosis $>+2$ = metabolic alkalosis
Anion gap: $[Na^+]+[K^+]$ $-[C1^-]$ $-[HCO_3^-]$[**]	Adult and child: 12–20 mEq/L[*]	>20 mEq/L: metabolic acidosis due to increased load of non-carbonic acid or decreased H^+ secretion <12 mEq/L: possible hyponatremia

[*] Anion gap is not always reported with blood gases because the electrolyte concentrations needed to compute it are not always measured.

bicarbonate range of 24 to 28 mEq/L, with a BE norm of 26 mEq/L ($-2 = 24$ mEq/L and $+2 = 28$ mEq/L). Table 10-1 presents the normal values for these tests and the types of acid-base imbalances that occur.

To determine the type of acid-base imbalance:

1. pH should be checked first. If it is less than 7.35, acidosis is present. If it is greater than 7.45, alkalosis is present.
2. $PaCO_2$ is checked next. If it is within normal range, respiratory acidosis or alkalosis is *not* occurring. If the $PaCO_2$ is greater than 45 mm Hg and the pH is less than 7.35, respiratory acidosis occurs.
3. HCO_3 is checked. If the bicarbonate is less than 24 mEq/L and the pH is less than 7.35, metabolic acidosis is present.

Figure 10-2 outlines the method for determining acid-base imbalances.

COMPENSATION FOR PH BALANCE

The body has specific compensatory reactions in response to metabolic acidosis and alkalosis and to respiratory acidosis and alkalosis. The pH returns to normal or close to normal by changing the component ($PaCO_2$ or HCO_3) that originally was *not* affected.

The respiratory system compensates for metabolic acidosis and alkalosis. In metabolic acidosis, the lungs (stimulated by the respiratory center) hyperventilate to decrease the CO_2 level; the $PaCO_2$ decreases due to "blowing off" of carbon dioxide and water, which decreases the body's carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) level. An example of respiratory compensation is a pH 7.33, $PaCO_2$ 32 mm Hg, and HCO_3 18 mEq/L. The pH shows slight acidosis, and the HCO_3 is definitely low, confirming metabolic acidosis. The $PaCO_2$ is low (less than 35 mm Hg) because the respiratory center compensates for the acidotic state by "blowing off" CO_2 (hyperventilating), and respiratory compensation occurs. Without this compensation, the pH would be extremely low; e.g., pH of 7.2.

The renal system compensate for respiratory acidosis and alkalosis. With respiratory acidosis, the kidneys excrete more acid, H^+, and conserve HCO_3. With a pH of 7.34, $PaCO_2$

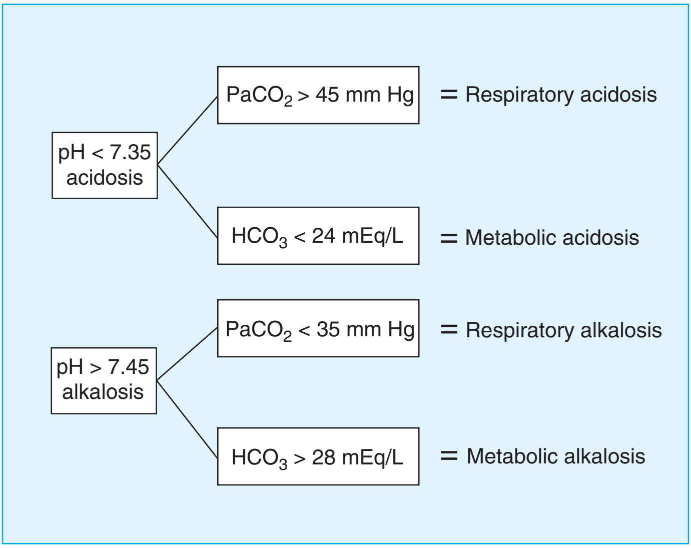

pH < 7.35
acidosis
$PaCO_2 > 45$ mm Hg
= Respiratory acidosis
$HCO_3 < 24$ mEq/L
= Metabolic acidosis
pH > 7.45
alkalosis
$PaCO_2 < 35$ mm Hg
= Respiratory alkalosis
$HCO_3 > 28$ mEq/L
= Metabolic alkalosis

FIGURE 10-2 Types of acid-base imbalances.

of 68, and HCO_3 of 35, the pH reveals a slight acidosis and the $PaCO_2$ is highly elevated, indicating CO_2 retention (carbon dioxide and water = carbonic acid) and respiratory acidosis. The HCO_3 indicates renal or metabolic compensation. Without this compensation, the pH would be extremely lower.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: DETERMINATION OF ACID-BASE IMBALANCES

1. Hydrogen ions circulate in the body fluid in the form of carbonic acid [H_2CO_3] and is excreted from the lungs, as a gas, CO_2, and the fixed acid, e.g., lactic, pyruvic, ketones, are excreted in the urine. The lungs and kidneys regulate the hydrogen ions; thus, lung and kidney disorders can cause an acid-base imbalance.
2. To determine acid-base imbalance, the pH should be checked first. The pH determines if the body fluids are within normal range (7.35–7.45), acidotic (<7.35) or alkalotic (>7.45).

3. To determine metabolic acidosis or metabolic alkalosis, first check the pH, then the bicarbonate (HCO_3) level. If the pH is <7.35 and the HCO_3 is <24 mEq/L, the acid-base imbalance is metabolic acidosis. If the pH is >7.45 and the HCO_3 is >28 mEq/L, metabolic alkalosis is occurring.
4. To determine the presence of respiratory acidosis or respiratory alkalosis, first check the pH, and then the $PaCO_2$. If the pH is <7.35 and the $PaCO_2$ is >45 mm Hg, the acid-base imbalance is respiratory acidosis. If the pH is >7.45 and $PaCO_2$ <35 mm Hg, respiratory alkalosis is occurring.

CHAPTER 11

Metabolic Acidosis and Metabolic Alkalosis

INTRODUCTION

The metabolic/renal components for metabolic acidosis and alkalosis include arterial bicarbonate (HCO_3), base excess (BE), and serum CO_2. In metabolic acidosis, the pH is decreased, or <7.35, the HCO_3 is <24 mEq/L, and the base excess (BE) is <-2. In metabolic alkalosis, the pH is increased or >7.45, the HCO_3 is >28 mEq/L, and the BE is $>+2$.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Metabolic acidosis is characterized by a decrease in bicarbonate concentration or acid excess. With metabolic alkalosis, there is an increase in bicarbonate concentration or a loss of the hydrogen ion (strong acid) in the extracellular fluid.

Anion gap is a useful indicator for determining the presence or absence of metabolic acidosis. The anion gap can be obtained by using the following formula:

$$\text{Anion gap (mEq/L)} = [Na^+] + [K^+] - [Cl^-] - [HCO_3^-]$$

The anion gap is useful for determining the cause of metabolic acidosis. When metabolic acidosis is present, anion gap may be normal (12–20 mEq/L) or high (>20 mEq/L). Metabolic acidosis with a normal anion gap is typically due to a loss of bicarbonate due to diarrhea or GI fistula, or to renal causes such as carbonic anhydrase inhibitors or renal tubular acidosis. Metabolic acidosis with high anion gap is due to excess acid rather than a lack of bicarbonate. Possible causes of high-anion-gap metabolic acidosis include ketoacidosis; lactic acidosis; ingestion of toxins such as methanol, ethylene glycol, or aspirin; and uremic acidosis (renal failure). An abnormally low anion gap may indicate hyponatremia.

If the anion gap is >16 mEq/L, metabolic acidosis is suspected. According to the example, the anion gap is 22 mEq/L, so metabolic acidosis is present.

Conditions associated with an anion gap that is greater than 16 mEq/L are diabetic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis, poisoning, and renal failure. If a patient takes excessive amounts of baking soda or commercially prepared acid neutralizers to ease indigestion or stomach ulcer pain, the anion gap is much less than 16 mEq/L, so the imbalance results in metabolic alkalosis.

ETIOLOGY

The causes of metabolic acidosis include starvation, severe malnutrition, chronic diarrhea, renal failure, diabetic ketoacidosis, hyperthyroidism, thyrotoxicosis, trauma, shock, excessive exercise, severe infection, and prolonged fever. Table 11-1 describes the causes and rationale for each disorder. In metabolic alkalosis, typical etiologic factors include vomiting, gastric suction, peptic ulcers, and hypokalemia. Table 11-2 describes each cause and rationale.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

When metabolic acidosis occurs, the central nervous system (CNS) is depressed. Symptoms can include apathy, disorientation, weakness, and stupor. Deep rapid breathing is a respiratory compensatory mechanism for decreasing the acid content in the blood.

In metabolic alkalosis, excitability of the CNS occurs. These symptoms may include irritability, mental confusion, tetany-like symptoms, and hyperactive reflexes. Hypoventilation may occur as a compensatory mechanism for metabolic alkalosis to conserve the hydrogen ions and carbonic acid. Table 11-3 lists the clinical manifestations related to metabolic acidosis and alkalosis.

In metabolic acidosis, the renal and respiratory mechanisms try to reestablish the pH balance. The H^+ exchanges with the Na^+, and thus H^+ is excreted in the urine. Kussmaul

Table 11–1 Causes of Metabolic Acidosis

Etiology	Rationale
Gastrointestinal Abnormalities	
Starvation Severe malnutrition	Lactic, pyruvic, and other acids accumulate as the result of cellular breakdown due to starvation and/or severe malnutrition.
Chronic diarrhea	Loss of bicarbonate ions in the small intestines is in excess. Also, the loss of sodium ions exceeds that of chloride ions. Cl^- combines with H^+, producing a strong acid (HCl).
Renal Abnormalities	
Renal failure	Kidney mechanisms for conserving sodium and water and for excreting H^+ fail.
Hormonal Influence	
Diabetic ketoacidosis	Failure to metabolize adequate quantities of glucose causes the liver to increase metabolism of fatty acids. Oxidation of fatty acids produces ketone bodies, which cause the ECF to become more acid. Ketones require a base for excretion.
Hyperthyroidism, thyrotoxicosis	An overactive thyroid gland can cause cellular catabolism (breakdown) due to a severe increase in metabolism, which increases cellular needs.
Others	
Trauma, shock	Trauma and shock cause cellular breakdown and the release of acids.
Excess exercise, severe infection, fever	Excessive exercise, fever, and severe infection can cause cellular catabolism and acid accumulation.

breathing (rapid deep breathing) causes CO_2 to be blown off through the lungs, decreasing carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) levels.

In metabolic alkalosis, the chemical buffer, renal, and respiratory mechanisms try to reestablish balance. With the buffer mechanism, the excess bicarbonate reacts with buffer acid salts to decrease the number of bicarbonate ions in the extracellular fluid and increase the concentration of carbonic acid. The renal mechanism functions by conserving the hydrogen ions and excreting the sodium, potassium, and bicarbonateeions.

Table 11-2 Causes of Metabolic Alkalosis

Etiology	Rationale
Gastrointestinal Abnormalities	
Vomiting, gastric suction	With vomiting and gastric suctioning, large amounts of chloride and hydrogen ions that are plentiful in the stomach are lost. Bicarbonate anions increase to compensate for chloride loss.
Peptic ulcers	Excess of alkali in ECF occurs when a patient takes excessive amounts of acid neutralizers such as $NaHCO_3$ to ease ulcer pain.
Hypokalemia	Loss of potassium from the body is accompanied by loss of chloride.

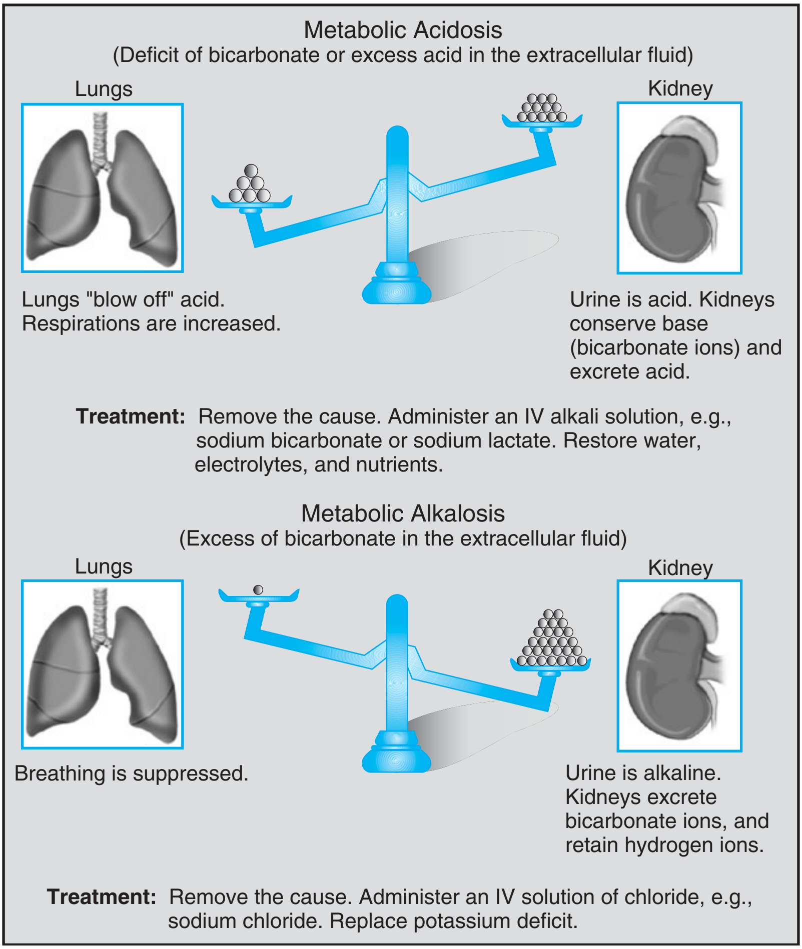
Table 11-3 Clinical Manifestations of Metabolic Acidosis and Metabolic Alkalosis

Body Involvement	Metabolic Acidosis	Metabolic Alkalosis
CNS Abnormalities	Restlessness, apathy, weakness, disorientation, stupor, coma	Irritability, confusion, tetany-like symptoms, hyperactive reflexes
Respiratory Abnormalities	Kussmaul breathing: deep, rapid, vigorous breathing	Shallow breathing
Skin Changes	Flushing and warm skin	
Cardiac Abnormalities	Cardiac dysrhythmias, decrease in heart rate and cardiac output	
Gastrointestinal Abnormalities	Nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain	Vomiting with loss of chloride and potassium
Laboratory Values		
pH	<7.35	>7.45
HCO_3, BE	<24 mEq/L; <-2	>28 mEq/L; $>+2$
Serum CO_2	<22 mEq/L	>32 mEq/L

The respiratory mechanism maintains balance through hypoventilation, retaining carbon dioxide and increasing the concentration of carbonic acid in the extracellular fluid.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

The first line of treatment for metabolic acidosis and alkalosis is to determine the cause of the imbalance. Correcting the cause may completely alleviate the symptoms. Giving fluids intravenously and restoring electrolytes and nutrients assist by correcting metabolic acid-base imbalances. Figure 11-1


Metabolic Acidosis

(Deficit of bicarbonate or excess acid in the extracellular fluid)

Lungs "blow off" acid. Respirations are increased.

Urine is acid. Kidneys conserve base (bicarbonate ions) and excrete acid.

Treatment: Remove the cause. Administer an IV alkali solution, e.g., sodium bicarbonate or sodium lactate. Restore water, electrolytes, and nutrients.

Metabolic Alkalosis

(Excess of bicarbonate in the extracellular fluid)

Breathing is suppressed.

Urine is alkaline. Kidneys excrete bicarbonate ions, and retain hydrogen ions.

Treatment: Remove the cause. Administer an IV solution of chloride, e.g., sodium chloride. Replace potassium deficit.

FIGURE 11-1 Body's defense action and treatment for metabolic acidosis and alkalosis.

outlines the body's normal defense actions and various methods of treatment for restoring balance in metabolic acidosis and alkalosis.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: METABOLIC ACIDOSIS AND ALKALOSIS

1. Metabolic acidosis is characterized by a decrease in bicarbonate concentration or acid excess. The pH is <7.35, HCO_3 is <24 mEq/L, BE is <-2 mEq/L.
2. The anion gap is a useful indicator for determining the presence or absence of metabolic acidosis. If the anion gap is >20 mEq/L, metabolic acidosis is suspected. The serum concentrations (in mEq/L) of sodium (Na^+), potassium (K^+), chloride (Cl^-), and bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) are used to compute the anion gap, as follows:

   $$\text{Anion gap (mEq/L)} = [Na^+] + [K^+] - [Cl^-] - [HCO_3^-]$$

3. With metabolic acidosis, the CNS is depressed; symptoms include apathy, disorientation, weakness, and stupor. Deep, rapid breathing (Kussmaul breathing) is a respiratory compensatory mechanism to decrease acid content in the blood.
4. Metabolic alkalosis is characterized by an increase in bicarbonate concentration or a loss of a acid (hydrogen ion). The pH is >7.45, HCO_3 is >28 mEq/L, BE $> +2$.
5. Vomiting, gastric suction, and ingestion of large amounts of a sodium bicarbonate preparation are common causes of metabolic alkalosis.
6. In metabolic alkalosis, the buffer, renal, and respiratory mechanisms try to reestablish balance. The renal mechanism functions by conserving hydrogen ions, and excreting sodium, potassium, and bicarbonate. Hypoventilation is a respiratory compensatory mechanism, which retains CO_2, thus increasing the carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) concentration.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a patient history of current clinical problems. Identify health problems associated with metabolic acidosis, such as starvation, severe or chronic diarrhea, diabetic ketoacidosis, trauma and shock, renal failure, and problems associated with metabolic alkalosis, such as vomiting, gastric suction, peptic ulcer.
- Check the arterial bicarbonate, base excess, and serum CO_2 levels for metabolic acid-base imbalances. Compare with the norms for arterial blood gases.
- Obtain baseline vital signs for comparison with future vital signs.
- Check laboratory results, especially blood sugar and electrolytes.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to the body's inability to use nutrition
- *Decreased Cardiac Output,* related to severe metabolic acidotic state
- *Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to nausea, vomiting, and increased urine output

Interventions

Metabolic Acidosis

- Monitor dietary intake and report inadequate nutrient and fluid intake.
- Report abnormal laboratory results regarding electrolytes, blood sugar, and arterial blood gases (ABGs). A pH <7.35 and HCO_3 <24 mEq/L indicate metabolic acidosis.
- Monitor vital signs. Report the presence of Kussmaul respirations that relate to diabetic ketoacidosis or severe shock.

- Monitor signs and symptoms related to metabolic acidosis (refer to Table 11-3).
- Monitor fluid intake and output. Report the amount of fluid loss via vomiting and gastric suctioning.
- Administer adequate fluid replacement with sodium bicarbonate as prescribed by the health care provider to correct acidotic state.

Metabolic Alkalosis

- Monitor serum electrolytes and ABG values. A pH >7.45 and $HCO_3 > 28$ mEq/L indicate metabolic alkalosis.
- Monitor vital signs. Note if the respirations remain shallow and slow.
- Monitor signs and symptoms of metabolic alkalosis (refer to Table 11-3).
- Report the consumption of large quantities of acid neutralizers that contain bicarbonate compounds such as Bromo-Seltzer.
- Record the amount of fluid loss via vomiting and gastric suctioning. Hydrogen and chloride are lost with the gastric secretions, thus the pH is increased and metabolic alkalosis results.
- Provide comfort and alleviate anxiety when possible.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of metabolic acidosis or metabolic alkalosis has been corrected or controlled.
- Evaluate the therapeutic effect on the correction of metabolic acidosis or metabolic alkalosis; ABGs are returning to or have returned to normal range.
- Patient remains free of signs and symptoms of metabolic acidosis or metabolic alkalosis; vital signs returned to normal range, especially respiration.
- Patient is able to perform activities of daily living.

CHAPTER

12

Respiratory Acidosis and Respiratory Alkalosis

INTRODUCTION

The $PaCO_2$ is the respiratory component that determines respiratory acidosis and alkalosis. In respiratory acidosis, the CO_2 is conserved by mixing it with water to form carbonic acid (H_2CO_3). In respiratory acidosis, the pH is decreased (<7.35) and the $PaCO_2$ is increased (>45 mm Hg). In respiratory alkalosis, the pH is increased (>7.45) and the $PaCO_2$ is decreased (<35 mm Hg).

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Respiratory acidosis is characterized by an increase in carbon dioxide and carbonic acid concentration in the extracellular fluid. Respiratory alkalosis is characterized by a decrease in carbon dioxide and carbonic acid in the extracellular fluid. Figure 12-1 demonstrates the relationship of the pH to the $PaCO_2$. When the pH is decreased and the $PaCO_2$ is increased, respiratory acidosis occurs. Likewise, if the pH is increased and the $PaCO_2$ is decreased, respiratory alkalosis occurs.

Very often, inadequate ventilation is the cause of respiratory acidosis. The characteristic breathing pattern associated with respiratory acidosis is dyspnea or shortness of breath because hypoventilation usually causes a decrease in the $PaCO_2$. In respiratory alkalosis, breathing is rapid and shallow (hyperventilation). In respiratory acidosis, the chemical buffers, renal, and respiratory mechanisms try to reestablish

$\boxed{\text{pH} < 7.35} + \boxed{\text{PaCO}_2 > 45 \text{ mm Hg}}$ = Respiratory acidosis

$\boxed{\text{pH} > 7.45} + \boxed{\text{PaCO}_2 < 35 \text{ mm Hg}}$ = Respiratory alkalosis

FIGURE 12-1 Relationship of pH and $PaCO_2$ in respiratory acid-base imbalances.

balance. As a result of a chloride shift, bicarbonate ions are released to neutralize carbonic acid excess. In respiratory alkalosis, the chemical buffer mechanism produces more organic acids which react with the excess bicarbonate ions. There is an increase in bicarbonate excretion and a retention of the hydrogen ion.

ETIOLOGY

Inadequate exchange of gases in the lungs causes a retention of CO_2 and carbonic acid in the blood ($CO_2 + H_2O = H_2CO_3$), resulting in respiratory acidosis. Respiratory alkalosis results from a CO_2 loss, lungs blowing off carbon dioxide. Tables 12-1 and 12-2 list the causes of respiratory acidosis and alkalosis.

Narcotics, sedatives, chest injuries, respiratory distress syndrome, pneumonia, and pulmonary edema can cause acute respiratory acidosis (ARA). Acute respiratory acidosis results from rapidly increasing CO_2 levels and retention of CO_2 in the blood. With chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), the $PaCO_2$ gradually increases over a prolonged period of time (days to months). The body can compensate for CO_2 accumulation by excreting excess hydrogen ions and conserving the bicarbonate ion. The patient's $PaCO_2$ can be extremely elevated and the HCO_3 also elevated, indicating metabolic/renal compensation. An example of compensated ABG for a patient with COPD is pH 7.22, $PaCO_2$ 98 mm Hg, HCO_3 40. Refer to Chapter 10 for a discussion of acid-base compensation mechanisms.

Patients in respiratory alkalosis are often very apprehensive and anxious. They hyperventilate to overcome their

Table 12-1 Causes of Respiratory Acidosis

Etiology	Rationale
CNS Depressants	
Drugs: narcotics [morphine, meperidine (Demerol)], anesthetics, barbiturates	These drugs depress the respiratory center in the medulla, causing retention of CO_2 (carbon dioxide), which results in hypercapnia (increased partial pressure of CO_2 in the blood).
Pulmonary Abnormalities	
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD: emphysema, severe asthma)	Inadequate exchange of gases in the lungs due to a decreased surface area for aeration causes retention of CO_2 in the blood.
Pneumonia, pulmonary edema	Alveolar edema inhibits effective gas exchanges, resulting in a retention of CO_2.
Poliomyelitis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, chest injuries	Respiratory muscle weakness decreases ventilation, which decreases CO_2 excretion, thus increasing carbonic acid concentration.

Table 12-2 Causes of Respiratory Alkalosis

Etiology	Rationale
Hyperventilation	
Psychologic effects: anxiety, overbreathing	Excessive "blowing off" of CO_2 through the lungs results in hypocapnia (decreased partial pressure of CO_2 in the blood).
Pain	Overstimulation of the respiratory center in the medulla results in hyperventilation.
Fever	
Brain tumors, meningitis, encephalitis	
Early salicylate poisoning	
Hyperthyroidism	

anxiety. This causes them to blow off excessive quantities of carbon dioxide, which results in a respiratory alkalotic state.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

In respiratory acidosis, hypercapnia (elevated $PaCO_2$) causes an increased pulse rate, an elevated blood pressure and a reflex attempt to increase ventilation, which often manifests as dyspnea (difficulty in breathing). The skin may be warm and flushed due to vasodilation from the increased CO_2 concentration.

When respiratory alkalosis occurs, there is CNS hyperexcitability and a decrease in cerebral blood flow. Tetany-like symptoms and dizziness frequently result. Table 12-3 lists the signs and symptoms of respiratory acidosis and alkalosis.

Table 12-3 Clinical Manifestations of Respiratory Acidosis and Respiratory Alkalosis

Body Involvement	Respiratory Acidosis	Respiratory Alkalosis
Cardiopulmonary Abnormalities	Dyspnea Tachycardia Blood pressure	Rapid, shallow breathing Palpitations
CNS Abnormalities	Disorientation Depression, paranoia Weakness Stupor (later)	Tetany symptoms: numbness and tingling of fingers and toes, positive Chvostek's and Trousseau's signs Hyperactive reflexes Vertigo (dizziness) Unconsciousness (later)
Skin	Flushed and warm	Sweating may occur
Laboratory Values		
pH	<7.35 (when compensatory mechanisms fail)	>7.45 (when compensatory mechanisms fail)
$PaCO_2$	>45 mm Hg	<35 mm Hg

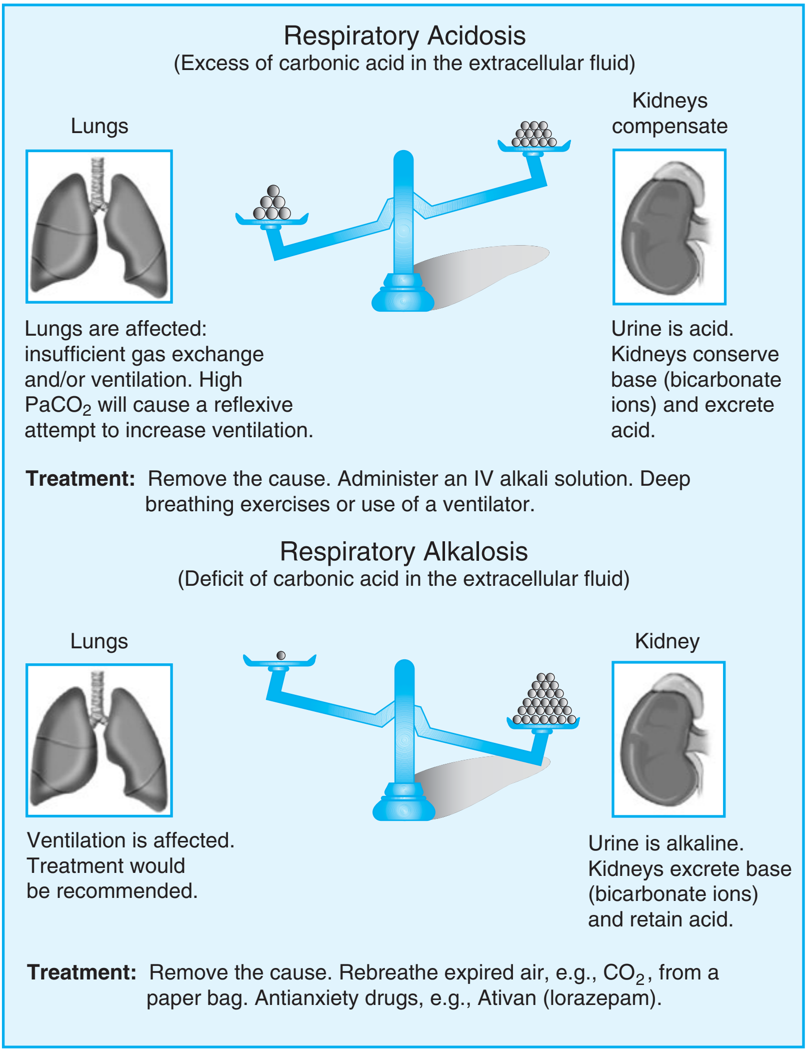
CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

The three treatment modalities for respiratory acidosis are: remove the cause; have the patient perform deep breathing exercises; use a ventilator. In respiratory acidosis, the kidneys conserve alkali and excrete hydrogen or acid in the urine. Excess CO_2 accumulation stimulates the lungs to blow off carbon dioxide or acid to compensate for the respiratory acidotic state.

With respiratory alkalosis, the three treatment modalities include: remove the cause; have the patient rebreathe expired air to obtain CO_2; use antianxiety drugs. The kidneys excrete alkaline ions (HCO_3) and retain acid or hydrogen ions. Figure 12-2 demonstrates the body's defense action and treatment for respiratory acidosis and alkalosis.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS AND ALKALOSIS

1. Respiratory acidosis is characterized by an increase in CO_2 and H_2CO_3 concentration in body fluids. The pH is <7.35 and $PaCO_2 >45$ mm Hg.
2. ABGs should be closely monitored when respiratory acidosis is suspected; e.g., with chest injuries, respiratory distress syndrome, COPD (asthma, emphysema, chronic bronchitis), pneumonia.
3. Warm, flushed skin (vasodilation from increased CO_2), dyspnea, increased pulse rate are signs and symptoms of respiratory acidosis due to hypercapnia.
4. Respiratory alkalosis is characterized by a decrease in CO_2 and H_2CO_3 concentration in body fluids. The pH is >7.45 and $PaCO_2 <35$ mm Hg.
5. Severe apprehension and anxiety lead to hyperventilation and respiratory alkalosis. Dizziness and tetany-like symptoms occur.
6. Treatment modalities include rebreathing expired air via paper bag (not plastic bag) and use of antianxiety drugs.



Respiratory Acidosis

(Excess of carbonic acid in the extracellular fluid)

Lungs are affected: insufficient gas exchange and/or ventilation. High $PaCO_2$ will cause a reflexive attempt to increase ventilation.

Urine is acid. Kidneys conserve base (bicarbonate ions) and excrete acid.

Treatment: Remove the cause. Administer an IV alkali solution. Deep breathing exercises or use of a ventilator.

Respiratory Alkalosis

(Deficit of carbonic acid in the extracellular fluid)

Ventilation is affected. Treatment would be recommended.

Urine is alkaline. Kidneys excrete base (bicarbonate ions) and retain acid.

Treatment: Remove the cause. Rebreathe expired air, e.g., CO_2, from a paper bag. Antianxiety drugs, e.g., Ativan (lorazepam).

FIGURE 12-2 Body's defense action and treatment for respiratory acidosis and alkalosis.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a patient history of clinical problems. Identify health problems associated with respiratory acidosis and alkalosis (refer to Tables 12-1 and 12-2).

- Check for signs and symptoms of respiratory acidosis and alkalosis (refer to Table 12-3).
- Obtain vital signs for a baseline record to compare with future vital signs.
- Check arterial blood gases (ABGs), particularly the pH and $PaCO_2$. A pH <7.35 and $PaCO_2$ >45 mm Hg are indicative of respiratory acidosis; a pH >7.45 and $PaCO_2$ <35 mm Hg are indicative of respiratory alkalosis.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Impaired Gas Exchange,* related to alveolar hypoventilation secondary to COPD
- *Ineffective Airway Clearance,* related to thick bronchial secretions and/or bronchial spasms
- *Risk for Injury,* related to hypoxemia and hypercapnia
- *Ineffective Breathing Pattern,* related to inadequate ventilation
- *Ineffective Breathing Pattern,* related to hyperventilation and anxiety
- *Risk for Injury,* related to dizziness, lightheadedness, and syncope secondary to respiratory alkalosis (hyperventilating)

Interventions

Respiratory Acidosis

- Monitor the patient's respiratory status for changes in respiratory rate, distress, and breathing pattern.
- Monitor arterial blood gases.
- Auscultate breath sounds periodically to determine wheezing, rhonchi, or crackles that indicate poor gas exchange.
- Monitor vital signs for tachycardia or cardiac dysrhythmias associated with hypercapnia and hypoxemia (oxygen deficit in the blood).
- Encourage the patient to breathe slowly, deeply, and cough to eliminate bronchial secretions and improve gas exchange.

- Assist the patient with use of an inhaler containing a bronchodilator drug.
- Administer chest clapping on COPD clients to break up mucous plugs and secretions in the alveoli.
- Teach breathing exercises and postural drainage to patients with COPD to remove secretions that are trapped in overextended alveoli.
- Encourage the patient to increase fluid intake in order to decrease tenacity of secretions.
- Monitor the patient's state of sensorium for signs of disorientation due to a lack of oxygen to the brain.
- Encourage the patient to participate in a pulmonary rehabilitation program.

Respiratory Alkalosis

- Encourage the patient who is overanxious and hyperventilating to take deep breaths and breathe slowly to prevent respiratory alkalosis.
- Listen to the patient who is emotionally distressed. Encourage the patient to seek professional help.
- Demonstrate a slow, relaxed breathing pattern to decrease overbreathing, which causes respiratory alkalosis.
- Administer a sedative as prescribed to relax the patient and restore a normal breathing pattern.
- Monitor ABGs and vital signs.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of respiratory acidosis or respiratory alkalosis is corrected or controlled; ABGs are returning to or have returned to normal range.
- The patient remains free of signs and symptoms of respiratory acidosis or respiratory alkalosis.
- The patient exhibits a patent airway and the breath sounds have improved.
- The patient ambulates with little or no assistance and without breathlessness.
- Document compliance with prescribed drug therapy and medical regimen.

UNIT IV

INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

INTRODUCTION

This unit discusses the basic classifications of intravenous solutions in terms of their osmolality and the various types of fluids for intravenous administration. The two chapters in this unit are Intravenous Solutions and their Administration and Total Parenteral Nutrition (TPN). Purposes for IV therapy include: (1) hydration to restore fluid loss (rehydrate) and improve renal output; (2) maintenance to meet daily fluid needs; (3) replacement for ongoing fluid losses; and (4) replacement of electrolyte losses.

Many of the solutions used for IV therapy are produced commercially to meet patient's needs associated with specific types of fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances. IV solutions are classified as being hypotonic, isotonic, or hypertonic. IV osmolality of a solution is determined by the concentration or the number of particles (osmols) suspended in the solution. The greater the number of particles in the solution, the higher the osmolality of the solution. Hypotonic solutions have less than 240 mOsm/L; isotonic solutions have approximately 240–340 mOsm/L; and hypertonic solutions have more than 340 mOsm/L. Table U4-1 lists IV solutions according to their osmolality and uses; e.g., hydrating solutions, replacement solutions, protein solutions, and plasma expanders.

CRYSTALLOIDS

Commonly used crystalloid solutions include dextrose and water (D_5W), saline (NSS), and lactated Ringer's solutions. Isotonic solutions such as 5% dextrose and water (D_5W) have approximately 250 mOsm/L. A normal saline solution (0.9% NaCl or NSS) has 310 mOsm/L, and lactated Ringer's solution has approximately the

Table U4-1 Selected Solutions Used in IV Therapy

Categories and Solutions	Tonicity (Osmolality)	Electrolytes (mEq/L)	Rationale
Hydrating Solutions			
0.45% NaCl [½ normal saline solution (NSS)]	Hypotonic	Na: 77; Cl: 77	Useful for establishing renal function. Not for replacement therapy.
Dextrose 2.5% in 0.45% saline	Isotonic	Calories: 85, Na: 77, Cl: 77	Helpful in establishing renal function.
Dextrose 5% in 0.2% saline	Isotonic	Calories: 170, Na: 38, Cl: 38	Useful for daily maintenance of body fluids when less Na and Cl are required.
Dextrose 5% in 0.33% saline	Hypertonic	Calories: 170, Na: 51, Cl: 51	Useful for daily maintenance of body fluids.
Dextrose 5% in 0.45% saline	Hypertonic	Calories: 170, Na: 77, Cl: 77	Calories: 170, maintenance of body fluids and for treating fluid volume deficits.
Dextrose 5% in water (Dextrose 10% in water is occasionally used)	Isotonic	Calories: 170	Helpful in rehydration and elimination. May cause urinary, sodium loss. Good vehicle for IV potassium.
Replacement Solutions			
Dextrose 5% in 0.9% NaCl [NSS]	Hypertonic	Calories: 170, Na: 154, Cl: 154	Replacement of fluid, sodium, chloride; and calories.
Lactated Ringer's	Isotonic	Na: 130, K: 4, Ca: 3, Cl: 109; lactate: 28	Resembles the electrolyte composition of normal blood serum/plasma. Potassium amount does not meet body's daily K-requirement.
Dextrose 5% in lactated Ringer's	Hypertonic	Calories: 170, Na: 130, K: 4, Ca: 3, Cl: 109, lactate: 28	Same contents as lactated Ringer's plus calories.
Ringer's solution	Isotonic	Na: 147, K: 4, Ca: 3, Cl: 154	Does not contain lactate which may be harmful to patients who lack enzymes essential to metabolize lactic acid.

(continues)

Table U4-1 Selected Solutions Used in IV Therapy—*continued*

Categories and Solutions	Tonicity (Osmolality)	Electrolytes (mEq/L)	Rationale
Normal saline solution (NSS)	Isotonic	Na: 154, Cl: 154	Restores ECF volume and replaces sodium and chloride deficits.
Hypertonic saline 3% NaCl	Hypertonic	Na: 513, Cl: 513	Helpful in hyponatremia. Helpful in eliminating intracellular fluid excess.
Protein Solutions			
Aminosyn RF 5.2%	Hypertonic	Calories: 175, K: 5.4, amino acids	Provides protein and fluid for the body, and promotes wound healing.
Aminosyn II 3.5% with dextrose 5%	Hypertonic	Calories: 345, Na: 18, amino acids	Provides protein, calories, and fluids. Helpful for the malnourished and for patients with hypoproteinemia. Not to be used in severe liver damage.
Plasma Expander			
Dextran 40 in normal saline or 5% dextrose in water	Isotonic		Colloidal solution used to increase plasma volume. Dextran 40 is a short-lived plasma volume expander (4–6 hrs). Useful in early shock to correct hypovolemia, increase arterial blood pressure, improve pulse pressure and cardiac output. It improves microcirculation and increases small vessel perfusion. *Caution*. NOT to be used in severely dehydrated patients in renal disease, thrombocytopenia, or patients who are actively hemorrhaging.

same number of milliosmols. Hypotonic solutions include 0.33% NaCl (one-third normal saline) with 103 mOsm/L, and 0.45% NaCl (one-half normal saline) with 154 mOsm/L. *Although 5% dextrose and water is isotonic, it becomes a hypotonic solution as soon as the dextrose is metabolized in the body.* When 5% dextrose and water without sodium chloride is used consistently over a period of time, the patient is actually receiving a hypotonic solution, which can cause ICFVE or water intoxication. Hypertonic solutions include 5% dextrose with 0.9% NaCl (NSS), which contains 560 mOsm/L, 5% dextrose in lactated Ringer's solution (525 mOsm/L), and 3% saline solution (810 mOsm/L).

Dextrose solutions for intravenous therapy are prepared in two strengths, 5% and 10%. Five percent dextrose means that there are 5 grams of dextrose in 100 ml of solution. Therefore, 1 L or 1000 ml of 5% dextrose contains 50 grams (50 g) of dextrose. One gram of dextrose is equivalent to 4 calories, thus 50 grams is equivalent to 200 calories. One liter of 5% dextrose and water does not supply many calories. Potassium that is administered intravenously must be diluted in a solution such as 5% dextrose and water. Potassium should *never* be given as a bolus injection because lethal cardiac dysrhythmias will result.

Normal saline solution (NSS or 0.9% NaCl) is isotonic and similar to plasma; however, it contains a slightly higher concentration of sodium chloride (Na = 154 mEq/L and Cl = 154 mEq/L). NSS is useful in replacing fluid and ECF electrolyte losses. It is considered a plasma volume expander. A hypertonic saline solution (3% NaCl) may be used in treating a client with severe hyponatremia; the serum sodium level is usually <115 mEq/L.

Lactated Ringer's solution is similar to plasma. It contains sodium, potassium, calcium chloride, and lactate (lactate is metabolized to bicarbonate). It is isotonic and frequently called a balanced electrolyte solution (BES). This solution is usually prescribed following trauma or surgery to replace "plasma-like" fluid. Lactated Ringer's and normal saline solutions can be used interchangeably for acute fluid replacement.

There are numerous commercially-prepared, balanced electrolyte solutions. Most of these IV solutions contain sodium, potassium, magnesium, chloride, and either acetate, lactate, or gluconate; some also contain calcium and phosphate. These solutions are prescribed for either maintenance needs or for replacement losses such as severe vomiting, burns, diabetic

Table U4-2 Commercially Prepared, Balanced Electrolyte Solutions (BES)

Solution	mEq/L Concentration
Normosol R	Na: 140; K: 5; Mg: 3; Cl: 98; Acetate: 27; Gluconate: 23
Normosol M	Na: 40; K: 13; Mg: 3, Cl: 40; Acetate: 16
Ionosol B (also in 5% dextrose)	Na: 57; K: 25; Mg: 5; Cl: 49; HPO_4: 7; Lactate: 25
Ionosol MB (also in 5% dextrose)	Na: 25; K: 20; Mg: 3; Cl: 22; HPO_4: 3; Lactate: 23
Plasma-Lyte 148	Na: 140; K: 5; Mg: 3; Cl: 98; Acetate: 27; Gluconate: 23
Plasma-Lyte R	Na: 140; K: 10 Ca: 5; Mg: 3; Cl: 103; Acetate: 47; Lactate: 8
Plasma-Lyte M	Na: 40; K: 16; Ca: 5; Mg: 3; Cl: 40; Acetate: 12; Lactate: 12
Isolyte E	Na: 140; K: 10; Ca: 5; Mg: 3; Cl: 103; Acetate: 49; Citrate: 8
Isolyte S	Na: 140; K: 5; Mg: 3; Cl: 98; Acetate: 27; Gluconate: 23
Isolyte R	Na: 40; K: 16; Ca: 5; Mg: 3; Cl: 40; Acetate: 24
Isolyte M	Na: 38; K: 35; Cl: 40; HPO_4: 15; Acetate: 20

acidosis, or postoperative dehydration. Table U4-2 lists commercially produced, balanced electrolyte solutions according to the companies that manufacture these products.

COLLOIDS

Colloids are frequently called volume expanders or plasma expanders; they physiologically function like plasma proteins in the blood by maintaining oncotic pressure. Commonly used colloids include albumin, dextran, Plasmanate, and hetastarch (artificial blood substitute). Hypotension and allergic reactions can occur with their use.

Dextran is a colloidal solution that is used to expand the plasma volume. Dextran can affect clotting by coating the platelets and reducing their ability to clot. Dextran comes in two concentrations, dextran 40 and dextran 70. Dextran 40 remains in the circulatory system for 6 hours and dextran 70 remains in circulation for 20 hours. Dextran 70 is infrequently used because it can cause severe dehydration and can affect blood typing and crossmatching. Dextran 40 is useful in correcting hypovolemia in early shock by increasing arterial blood pressure and increasing cardiac output; it also increases pulse pressure. Another purpose for dextran 40 is to improve microcirculation by reducing red blood cell aggregation in the capillaries.

The use of dextran 40 is contraindicated for patients having severe dehydration, renal disease, thrombocytopenia, or active hemorrhaging. In severe dehydration, dextran 40 increases dehydration by pulling more fluid from the cells and tissue spaces into the vascular space. If urine output is good, the vascular fluid is excreted. Both cellular and extracellular dehydration occur. However, if renal function is decreased, fluid hypervolemia might occur. If oliguria is due to hypovolemia, dextran 40 may improve urine output, but if renal damage is present, dextran 40 may cause renal failure. Dextran 40 tends to clot platelets and prolong bleeding time, so this solution is not indicated for a patient with thrombocytopenia. Dextran 40 improves microcirculation, and during active bleeding, additional blood loss can occur from the capillaries if hemorrhage is prolonged.

Albumin concentrate is useful in restoring body protein. It is considered to be a plasma volume expander. Too much albumin or albumin administered too rapidly can cause fluid to be retained in the pulmonary vasculature. Plasmanate is a commercially prepared protein product that is used instead of plasma and albumin to replace body protein.

BLOOD AND BLOOD COMPONENTS

Blood and blood components are another type of intravenous therapy. Whole blood, packed red cells (whole blood minus the plasma), plasma, and platelets can be administered intravenously. Fifty-five percent of whole blood is plasma. Various components of whole blood can be fractionated and transfused separately. These components include red blood cells (RBC or packed cells), plasma, platelets, white blood cells (WBC), albumin, and blood factors II, VII, VIII, IX, and X. Red blood cells, also known as packed cells, are composed of whole blood minus the plasma. A unit of RBC or packed cells is 250 ml. When RBC replacement is needed without an increase in fluid volume, a unit of RBC is often prescribed instead of whole blood.

The shelf life of refrigerated whole blood is 42 days. Red blood cells and plasma can be frozen to extend their shelf life to 10 years for red blood cells and 1 year for plasma. Platelets must be administered within 5 days after they have been extracted from whole blood. As whole blood ages, potassium leaves the red blood cells, thus increasing the serum potassium level. After 3 weeks of shelf life, serum potassium in the whole blood can increase to 20 mEq/L or greater. A patient who has an elevated or a slightly elevated serum potassium level should not receive whole blood that has a long shelf life. This "old blood" could dangerously increase the patient's serum potassium level.

The hematocrit measures the volume of red blood cells in proportion to the extracellular fluid. A rise or drop in the hematocrit can indicate a gain or loss of intravascular extracellular fluid. An increased concentration of red blood cells is known as hemoconcentration. A transfusion of whole blood or plasma decreases the hemoconcentration, thus lowering the hematocrit, increasing the blood pressure, and establishing renal flow. The treatment of choice to decrease osmolality is a transfusion of plasma or the administration of crystalloids.

CHAPTER 13

Intravenous Solutions and Their Administration

Sheila G. Cushing, MS, RN

INTRODUCTION

Concepts related to intravenous administration and therapy are presented in this chapter through the use of six subheadings: (1) basic purposes of IV therapy, (2) IV flow rate and calculation for IV infusion, (3) types of IV infusion devices for short-term IV therapy, (4) central venous catheters for long-term IV therapy, (5) assessment factors in IV therapy, and (6) possible complications resulting from IV therapy. Patient Management, including assessment, diagnoses, interventions, and evaluation/outcome, summarizes the important functions for the health professional.

BASIC PURPOSES OF INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

Healthy people normally do not require fluid and electrolyte therapy; however, certain illnesses and conditions compromise the body's ability to adapt to fluid changes. When a patient cannot maintain this balance, IV therapy may be indicated. People requiring intravenous therapy may depend on intravenous therapy to meet daily maintenance needs for water, electrolytes, calories, vitamins, and other nutritional substances.

The five purposes of IV therapy are to: (1) provide maintenance requirements for fluids and electrolytes, (2) replace previous losses, (3) replace concurrent losses, (4) provide nutrition, and (5) provide a mechanism for the administration of medications and/or the transfusion of blood and blood components. Multiple electrolyte solutions are helpful in replacing previous and concurrent fluid losses. Fluid and electrolyte losses that occur from diarrhea, vomiting, and/or gastric suction are an example of concurrent losses. When a patient is unable to meet his or her nutritional needs through oral intake, TPN may be prescribed; TPN is discussed in Chapter 14. IV therapy is also used for administering medications and blood products. Sufficient kidney function is necessary while the patient is receiving IV fluids and electrolyte therapy. Renal dysfunction may result in fluid overload and electrolyte imbalances.

Fluids and electrolytes for maintenance therapy should be ordered on a daily basis and administered over a period of 24 hours. If a patient receives his or her full 24-hour maintenance parenteral therapy in 8 hours, two-thirds of the water and electrolytes are in excess of the body's current needs, and a large portion of the excess maintenance fluids is excreted.

Tolerance for sudden changes in water and electrolytes is limited for extremely ill patients following major surgery, older adults, small children, and infants. Rapid administration of replacement fluids that exceed a person's physiologic tolerance can cause hyponatremia, pulmonary edema, and other complications.

IV FLOW RATE AND CALCULATIONS FOR INTRAVENOUS INFUSIONS

The desired amount of solution (ml) per day and the IV flow rate are generally calculated in relation to the type of therapy needed; e.g., maintenance, replacement with maintenance, or hydration. Urinary output needs to be re-established before maintenance therapy is started. Table 13-1 outlines the three types of IV therapy, the amount of suggested IV solutions, and the suggested IV flow rate. The IV flow rate may need to be adjusted if the patient is very ill, an older adult, a small child, or infant. Today, many institutions use IV controllers or pumps to deliver IV fluids. The health professional needs to know how to calculate the flow rate and regulate the various types of infusion devices.

The prescribed order for IV therapy includes the type of fluid for infusion and the amount to be administered in a

Table 13-1 Types of IV Therapy

Type of Therapy	Amount of Solution Desired (ml)	Rate of Flow
Maintenance therapy	1500–2000	62–83 ml/h or 1–1.5 ml/min if given over 24 h
Replacement with maintenance therapy	2000–3000	83–125 ml/h or 1.5–2 ml/min (depends on individual)
Hydration therapy	1000–3000	60–120 ml/h or 1–2 ml/min

Note: These guidelines may be adapted to individual circumstances. The health care provider orders the 24-h requirements and the health professional computes 1-h requirements from this. The amount of solution to be administered and the rate of flow can vary greatly with the very sick; the older adult, the small child, the infant, and the postsurgical patient.

specified period of time. The health professional must compute the number of milliliters per hour (ml/h) and then calculate the drops per minute for the infusion. Electronic infusion pumps are frequently used to administer IV solutions and are usually regulated to deliver milliliters per hour.

When using IV infusion sets for IV therapy administration, first check the drop factor or drip rate that is printed on the manufacturer's box or package. The number of drops per milliliter (gtt/ml) varies with each manufacturer. Drop factors range from 10–20 gtt/ml for the macrodrip chambers and 60 gtt/ml for microdrip chambers. Table 13-2 lists the drop factors according to macrodrip sets and microdrip sets.

Table 13-2 Intravenous Sets

Drops (gtt) Per Milliliter	
Macrodrip Sets	*Microdrip Sets*
10 gtt/ml	60 gtt/ml
15 gtt/ml	
20 gtt/ml	

There are two methods used to calculate IV flow rate (gtt/minute):

Two-Step Method:

a. Amount of fluid ÷ hours to administer = ml/h

$$\text{b. } \frac{\text{ml/h} \times \text{gtt/ml (IVset)}}{60 \text{ min}} = \text{gtt/min}$$

One-Step Method:

$$\frac{\text{Amount of fluid} \times \text{gtt/ml (IV set)}}{\text{Hours to administer} \times \text{Minutes per hour (60)}} = \text{gtt/min}$$

Example:

Order: 2000 ml of 5% dextrose in 0.45% NaCl (one-half normal saline solution) and 1000 ml of D_5W to run over 24 hours. The drop factor on the manufacturer's box is 10 gtt/ml. Using the two-step method, the patient should receive 125 ml/h and 21 gtt/min.

Using the two-step method:

a. 3000 ml ÷ 24 h = 125 ml/h

$$\text{b. } \frac{125 \text{ ml/h} \times 10 \text{ gtt/ml (IV-set)}}{60 \text{ min (1 hr)}} = \frac{1250}{60} = 21 \text{ gtt/min}$$

Using the one-step method:

$$\frac{3000 \text{ ml} \times 10 \text{ gtt/ml}}{24 \text{ h} \times 60 \text{ min}} = \frac{30000}{1440} = 20.8 (21 \text{ gtt/min})$$

If the health professional uses an electronic IV infusion pump or controller, the volume per hour must be calculated (in this case 125 ml/h) and entered on the pump.

TYPES OF IV INFUSION DEVICES FOR SHORT-TERM IV THERAPY

There are three common types of infusion devices for routine short-term IV therapy: the butterfly (steel needle), the over-needle catheter, and the inside-needle catheter. The winged-tip, or butterfly, set consists of a wing-tip needle with a steel cannula, plastic or rubber wings, and a plastic catheter or hub. The needle is $\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches long with needle gauges of 16 to 26. The infusion needle and clear tubing are bonded into a single unit.

Advantages of the butterfly infusion set are that it is a one-piece apparatus, has a short beveled needle, and is easy to tape securely. The butterfly reduces the risk of secondary puncture and infiltration on puncture. Disadvantages of this IV apparatus are that the butterfly should be used only for very short-term IV therapy (in many cases, less than 2 hours). The butterfly method is commonly used in children and older adults whose veins are likely to be small or fragile.

The second type of commonly used IV device is the over-needle catheter (ONC). The bevel of the needle extends beyond the catheter, which is $1\frac{1}{4}$ to 8 inches in length. Twelve to 24 gauge needles are available. With its short, large cannula, the ONC is preferable for rapid IV infusion and is more comfortable for the patient. Catheters used in ONCs and INCs are constructed of silicone, Teflon, polyvinyl chloride, or polyethylene.

The third type of IV device is the inside-needle catheter (INC), which is constructed exactly the opposite of the ONC. Needle length is $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 inches with a catheter length of 8 to 25 inches. Catheter gauges from 2 to 24 are available. The INC set comes with a catheter sleeve guard that must be secured over the needle bevel to prevent severing the catheter. With its longer, narrower catheter, the INC is preferred when vein catheterization is necessary for prolonged infusions.

CENTRAL VENOUS CATHETERS AND LONG-TERM IV THERAPY

Central venous catheters are another type of IV device. These catheters are radiopaque and may have a single, double, or triple lumen. Since the insertion of a central venous catheter presents critical risks, its insertion is followed by an x-ray to confirm the position and tip placement of the catheter.

Four common reasons for using a central venous catheter are: (1) to measure the central venous pressure, (2) for infusion of TPN, (3) for infusion of multiple IV fluids and/or medications, and (4) to infuse chemotherapeutic or irritating medications. Hickman, Groshong, and Cook are examples of central venous catheters that must be inserted in the operating room. The implantable vascular access device (IVAD) is another example of a central venous line that must be surgically inserted.

For patients without adequate peripheral sites and for those requiring long-term IV therapy, a central venous site is the optimal choice. Central venous sites are the superior vena cava and the inferior vena cava. The superior vena cava is accessed from the internal jugular vein and the right or left subclavian vein, whereas the inferior vena cava is accessed from the femoral vein. Figure 13-1 presents the central venous access sites. The catheter may be a single or multilumen. A peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) line is used for long-term IV therapy (2 weeks to 1 year) and is frequently used in home care settings for patient's who require IV therapy. The PICC line is inserted into the antecubital vein. A specifically trained or certified PICC insertion health professional inserts the catheter and an x-ray is taken to confirm accurate placement. Flush a central venous catheter before and after each access with 10 ml of normal saline solution followed by heparin. Some institutions are now using closed-valve catheters or caps that do not require heparin to keep a line patient, so always follow institutional policy. Guidelines for flushing solutions and volume are presented in Table 13-3.

Complications that may occur with insertion of a central venous line into the subclavian and jugular veins are pneumothorax, hemorrhage, air embolism, thrombus dislodgement, and cardiac dysrhythmias. Long-term complications such as hemorrhage, phlebitis, air embolism, thrombus formation, infection, dislodgement, cardiac dysrhythmias, and circulatory impairment might occur with central venous lines.

ASSESSMENT FACTORS IN INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

The IV solutions and devices are selected by the health professional. He or she must know and understand the various solutions, needles, catheters, administration sets, IV sites, flow rate, positioning, and taping IV tubing in order to accurately assess, initiate, and monitor infusions. Table 13–4 provides the assessment factors, interventions, and rationale related to IV therapy.

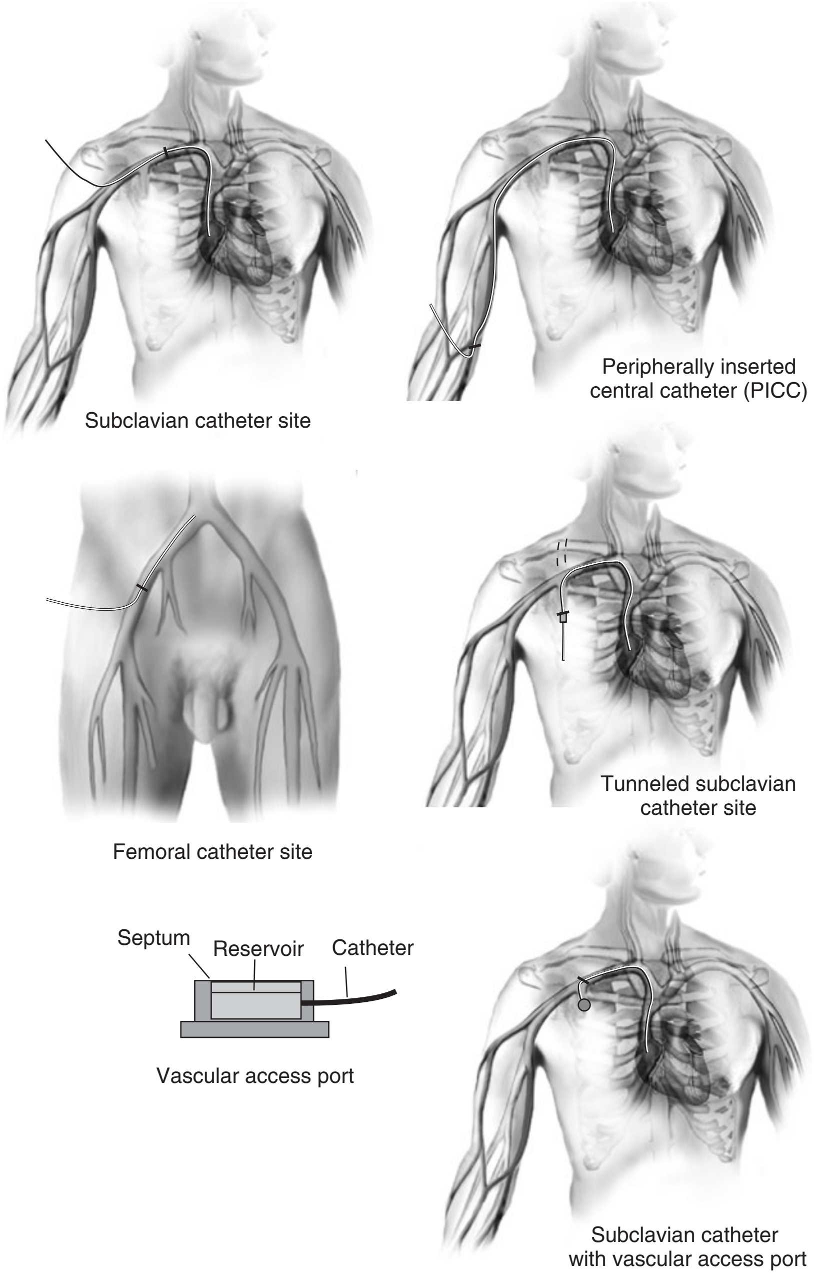

Subclavian catheter site
Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC)
Femoral catheter site
Tunneled subclavian catheter site
Septum
Reservoir
Catheter
Vascular access port
Subclavian catheter with vascular access port

FIGURE 13-1 Examples of central venous access sites.

Table 13-3 Venous Access Devices: Flushing Guidelines (Always Follow Institutional Procedure)

Type	Length (inches)	Flush Solution	Volume (ml)	Frequency
Peripheral Venous	1–2	Normal saline	1–3	After each use or q8h
Single lumen(central)	8	Heparinized saline	1–3*	After each use or q24h
Multilumen	8	Heparinized saline	1–3* per port	After each use of q24h
External-tunneled Hickman or Cook	35	Heparinized saline	2–5* per port	After each use of q24h
Groshong	35	Normal saline	10*	After each use of q8h
Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC)	20	Heparinized saline	3–5*	After each use or q12h
Implanted vascular access device	35	Heparinized saline	5*	After each use, q5–7d when not in use

*Use 10cc syringe to decrease pressure on the catheter.

Intravenous solutions with <240 mOsm are considered hypotonic. If a hypotonic solution is used continuously, ICFVE or water intoxication results. Five percent dextrose and water is an example of an isotonic solution that converts to a hypotonic solution when used continuously. Constant use of hyperosmolar solutions may cause dehydration.

If IV fluids are to run at less than 50 ml per hour for 12 hours, IV and/or infusion control device with a microdrip chamber is the best choice. IV administration sets should be changed every 72–96 hours and when the IV site is changed. IV containers (bags) should be changed daily or according to agency policy. Needles and IV catheters should be changed at least every 3 days. The body areas preferred for the insertion of peripheral IV devices are hand veins and distal arm veins. The problem with the use of ONCs is severing of the catheter with the needle tip, and the problem with INCs is that a leak can occur at the infusion insertion site. IV fluids running too fast can cause overhydration.

Table 13-4 Assessment Factors in IV Therapy

Assessment	Interventions	Rationale
Types of IV Solutions	Note the types of IV fluid ordered: hypotonic, isotonic, or hypertonic solutions.	An excessive use of hypotonic solutions can cause a fluid volume excess. Excessive use of hypertonic solutions may cause a fluid volume deficit. An isotonic solution has 240–340 mOsm/L; less than 240 is hypo-osmolar, and greater than 340 is hyperosmolar.
	Report extended use of continuous IVs of dextrose in water.	Dextrose 5% in water administered continuously becomes a hypotonic solution. Dextrose is metabolized rapidly and the remaining water decreases the serum osmolality. Alternate use of D/W with D/NSS (saline) to prevent this complication.
	Observe for signs and symptoms of fluid volume deficit, i.e., dry mucous membranes, poor skin turgor, and increased pulse and respiration rates, when using hypertonic solutions. Creatinine/BUN ratio, 1:10/20; hemoconcentration, 1:20 or greater.	Continuous use of hyperosmolar solutions pulls fluid from intracellular compartments to the extracellular compartments. The fluid is excreted by the kidneys. Poor kidney function causes fluid retention, increasing the risk for a fluid volume excess.
Intravenous Administration Set and Bag	Inspect IV bags for leaks by gently squeezing.	Microorganisms can enter IV bags through small leak sites contaminating the fluid.
	Check drop size on the equipment box. Use IV administration set with macrodrip chamber (10–20 gtt/ml) for administering IV fluids at a rate of 50 ml/h or greater.	Use of a microdrip chamber (IV tubing) for fluids that are ordered to run at a rate greater than 50 ml/h is inaccurate.

(continues)

Table 13-4 Assessment Factors in IV Therapy—*continued*

Assessment	Interventions	Rationale
	Use microdrip chamber (60 gtt/ml) for administering IV fluids at a rate under 50 ml/h.	Infusion pumps increase the accuracy and decrease the risks associated with IV fluids that are to run for 12–24 hrs and meet specific patient fluid needs.
	Change IV administration set every 72–96 hrs at the time of new hanging.	Studies have shown that IV tubing left hanging for 72–96 hrs is free of bacteria when proper aseptic technique is used.
	New IV containers are hung according to agency policy	An IV bag should not be used for longer than 24 hrs. If the order is for KVO (keep vein open), a 250–500-ml container with a microdrip chamber set is suggested.
Needles and IV Catheters (cannulas)	Recognize the types of IV needles and catheters used for IV fluids: Straight needles Scalp vein needles/ butterfly (steel) needles Heparin lock Over-needle catheter (ONC) Inside-needle catheter (INC)	Needles (straight and scalp vein) are used for short-term IV therapy and for patients with autoimmune problems. Catheters made of silicone and Teflon are less irritating than polyvinyl chloride and polyethylene catheters.
	Change IV site every 2–3 days according to agency policy.	Needles and catheters in longer than 72 hrs increase the risk of phlebitis.
	Check the ONC for placement and function.	There are many types of ONCs, i.e., Angiocath, A-Cath, Vicra Quik-Cath, etc. Catheter length can be 1–3 inches. Care should be taken to avoid severing the catheter with the needle tip.

(continues)

Table 13-4 Assessment Factors in IV Therapy—*continued*

Assessment	Interventions	Rationale
	Check for fluid leaks at the insertion site after the insertion of an INC.	An INC is used for central venous pressure monitoring, TPN (hyperalimentation), etc. It is frequently inserted in large veins, i.e., subclavian vein, internal jugular, or femoral vein. Leaks result from needle punctures that are larger than the catheter.
Injection Site	Insert needle or catheter in the hand or the distal veins of the arm. Use the antecubital fossa (elbow) site last.	The upper extremity is preferred for the infusion site, since the occurrence of phlebitis and thrombosis in the upper extremities is not as prevalent as it is in the lower extremities.
	Avoid using the leg veins if possible.	Circulation in the leg veins is reduced and thrombus formation can occur.
	Avoid using limbs affected by a stroke or mastectomy for IV sites.	Circulation is usually decreased in affected extremities.
	Apply arm board and/or soft restraints to the extremity with the IV when the patient is restless or confused.	Prevention of extremity movement with an IV decreases the chance of dislodging the needle and phlebitis.
Flow Rate and Irrigation	Check types of solutions clients are receiving.	Knowledge of tonicity (osmolality) of fluids aids in determining rate of flow. Rate of hypertonic solutions should be slower than isotonic solutions.
	Observe drip chamber and regulate accordingly.	Regulation of IV fluids is important to prevent overhydration, i.e., cough, dyspnea, neck vein engorgement, and chest crackles. Do not play “catch-up” with IV fluids.

(continues)

Table 13-4 Assessment Factors in IV Therapy—*continued*

Assessment	Interventions	Rationale
	Regulate KVO (keep vein open) rate to run 10–20 ml/h or according to agency policy, or use an infusion pump.	KVO IVs should run approximately 10–20 ml/h.
	Label IV bag for milliliters (ml) to be received per hour. Check rate of flow every 30 min to 1 h with hypertonic and toxic solutions and every hour with isotonic solutions.	Hypertonic solutions administered rapidly can cause cellular dehydration and, if the kidneys are properly functioning, vascular dehydration. Hypertonic fluids act as an osmotic diuretic and can cause diuresis; when administered rapidly, speed shock can occur; and if extravasation occurs, necrotic tissue can result.
	Restore IV flow if stopped by opening flow clamp, milking the tubing, raising the height of IV bag, or repositioning the extremity.	If IV flow has stopped and does not start by opening clamp, milking tubing, raising the bag, or repositioning extremity, then the IV catheter should be removed. Irrigating IV catheters is prohibited in some institutions and should never be attempted with clotted lines. Forceful irrigation can dislodge clot(s) and cause the movement of an embolus to the lungs.
Position of IV Line	Position and tape IV tubing to prevent kinking.	Kinking of the tubing may cause the IV to be discontinued and to be restarted at a different site.
	Hang IV bag $21\frac{1}{2}-3$ feet above patient's infusion site.	The higher the IV bag, the faster the gravity flow rate. If the IV bag is too low, IV fluids may stop due to an insufficient gravity pull.

POSSIBLE COMPLICATIONS RESULTING FROM IV THERAPY

Numerous complications may result from the use of intravenous therapy. Infiltration, phlebitis, hematoma, and infections are common problems associated with IV infusions. Other serious problems include speed shock, air embolus, pulmonary embolus, and pulmonary edema. Speed shock occurs when drugs in solution are given too rapidly. It increases the drug concentration in the body and produces shocklike symptoms. An air embolus can be fatal when more than 50 ml of air is injected into the vein. Pulmonary embolus results when a thrombus in the peripheral veins becomes an embolus and travels to the lungs. This may occur when a clotted IV needle or catheter is irrigated forcefully, or when the lower extremities are used for administering IV fluids. Restlessness, chest pain, cough, dyspnea, and tachycardia are clinical signs and symptoms of a pulmonary embolus. Table 13-5 lists problems and complications that may occur from IV administration of fluids and medications.

Table 13-5 **Possible Complications Resulting from IV Administration**

Complications	Interventions	Rationale
1. Infiltration	Observe insertion site for infiltration, i.e., swelling, coolness, and soreness.	Infiltration is accumulation of non-medicated fluid in the subcutaneous tissue. When infiltration or extravasation occurs, the IV should be discontinued and restarted at a different site. Notify the health care provider if extravasation is observed.
2. Phlebitis	Observe insertion site for phlebitis, i.e., red, swollen, hard, painful, and warm to touch. Apply warm, moist heat to area as ordered.	Phlebitis is an inflammation of the vein that can be caused by irritating substances. Drugs and hypertonic solutions may cause phlebitis. Application of moist heat decreases inflammation.

(continues)

Table 13-5 Possible Complications Resulting from IV Administration—*continued*

Complications	Interventions	Rationale
3. Systemic infection	Observe for pyrogenic reactions (septicemia), i.e., chills, fever, headache, fast pulse rate. Check vital signs q4h for shocklike symptoms. Utilize aseptic technique when inserting IV catheters and changing IV tubing and IV bag.	Aseptic technique should be used at all times with IV therapy. Prevention of systemic infections is of primary importance.
4. Speed shock	Observe for signs and symptoms of speed shock, i.e., tachycardia, syncope, decreased blood pressure.	Speed shock occurs when solutions with potent drugs are given rapidly. High drug concentration accumulates rapidly in the body and can cause shocklike symptoms.
5. Air embolism	Remove air from tubing to prevent air embolism.	Air can be removed from tubing by (1) inserting a needle with syringe into side arm of tubing set and withdrawing the air and (2) using a pen or pencil on tubing, distal to the air, and rolling tubing until air is displaced into the drip chamber.
	Observe for signs and symptoms of air embolism. These include pallor, dyspnea, cough, syncope, tachycardia, decreased blood pressure.	Air embolism occurs when air inadvertently enters the vascular system. Injection of more than 50 ml of air can be fatal. It occurs more frequently in the central veins, and symptoms usually appear within 5 min.
	Immediately place patient on left side in Trendelenburg position.	Air is trapped in the right atrium, which prevents it from going to the lungs.

(continues)

Table 13-5 Possible Complications Resulting from IV Administration—*continued*

Complications	Interventions	Rationale
6. Pulmonary embolism	Report signs and symptoms of pulmonary embolism, i.e., restlessness, chest pain, cough, dyspnea, tachycardia.	Thrombus originating in the peripheral vein becomes an embolus and can lodge in a pulmonary vessel.
	Administer oxygen, analgesics, anticoagulants, and IV fluids as ordered.	Preventive measures should be taken, such as *never* forcefully irrigating an IV catheter to reestablish flow and avoiding the use of veins in the lower extremities.
7. Pulmonary edema	Auscultate lungs for crackles. Check neck veins for engorgement. Decrease IV flow rate.	IV fluids administered too rapidly or in large amounts can cause overhydration. Excess fluids accumulate in the lungs.
8. “Runaway” IV fluids	Monitor IV fluid every hour even if on an electronic infusion pump (EIP).	Control clamp on IV tubing is opened.
	Check EIP flow rate and alarm set.	Alarm was not set properly on EIP.
9. Hematoma	Observe for hematoma with unsuccessful attempts to start IV therapy.	Hematoma (blood tumor) is a raised ecchymosed area.
	Apply ice pack immediately, then warm compresses after 1 hour.	Ice stops bleeding into tissue. Warm compresses cause vasodilation and improve blood flow and healing.
Additives to IV Fluids	Recognize the untoward reactions of drugs in IV fluids: potassium, Levophed, low-pH drugs, vitamins, antibiotics, antineoplastic drugs.	Potassium, antineoplastic drugs, and Levophed irritate the blood vessels and body tissue. Phlebitis is common with these drugs; and if infiltration occurs, sloughing of tissues may result. Vitamins and antibiotics should not be mixed together. They are incompatible.

(continues)

Table 13-5 Possible Complications Resulting from IV Administration—*continued*

Complications	Interventions	Rationale
		Always check compatibility charts before adding medications to IV fluids.
	Stay with the patient 10–15 mins when the patient is receiving drugs that are classified as a possible cause of anaphylaxis.	Allergic reactions often occur within the first 15 mins when drugs are administered by IV.
	Inject drugs into IV container and invert several times before administering.	Equal drug distribution throughout the solution ensures proper dilution. *Do not* add drugs, i.e., potassium, into the IV bag while it is being administered unless the IV is temporarily stopped and the bag is inverted several times to promote equal distribution.
Intake and Output	Check urine output every 4–8 hrs. If a critically ill patient is receiving potassium, urine output should be checked every hour.	If renal function is poor, overhydration can occur when excessive or continuous IV fluids are given. Potassium is excreted by the kidneys; thus, a decreased urine output can result in hyperkalemia.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Check the prescribed IV solutions to ensure that the prescribed solutions are not all hypotonic or hypertonic. When 3000 ml of 5% dextrose in water is administered daily, this solution becomes hypotonic, and the dextrose is metabolized in the body, leaving water.

- Determine which IV administration set with drip chamber should be used. This is generally determined according to how long the IV fluids are to run. If the 1000 ml is to run 8 hours or more, the macrodrip chamber tubing should be selected.
- Select and observe infusion sites carefully. To reduce the risk of phlebitis and dislodged thrombus, the upper extremities are preferred infusion sites.
- Calculate flow rates and regulate the IV solutions. Patency of the IV system and regulation of the flow rate are essential.
- Assess for problems and complications of IV infusion.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Excess Fluid Volume,* related to runaway IV or volume infusion too great for patient's physical condition
- *Risk for Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to inadequate fluid intake
- *Risk for Infection,* related to contaminated IV fluid, contaminated equipment, or a break in aseptic technique
- *Deficient Knowledge,* related to a lack of familiarity with IV therapy or infusion devices

Interventions

- Monitor the rate of IV flow. Avoid fluid overload from IV solutions that run too fast. Pulmonary edema can result. IV solutions that run too slowly can cause an inadequate fluid intake.
- Monitor vital signs and chest sounds for signs of fluid overload; these include tachycardia, dyspnea, chest crackles, and vein engorgements.
- Use aseptic technique when inserting an infusion device, changing IV administration set, changing IV bags, and changing site dressings. A break in the system provides the potential for bacterial invasion.

- Change peripheral IV site, IV administration set, and dressing sites according to the agency's policy.
- Check frequently for fluid leaks from IV site and tubing, and for pain, redness, and swelling at the site.
- Monitor urine output. Decreased urinary output may be an indication of fluid overload or dehydration.
- Monitor laboratory results, particularly serum electrolytes, BUN, serum creatinine, hematocrit, and hemoglobin. These results can indicate overhydration, dehydration, and/or electrolyte imbalances.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the effects of intravenous therapy to replace fluid and electrolyte losses, meet concurrent fluid losses, and maintain fluid balance.
- Evaluate the tonicity of the prescribed daily IV fluids to avoid constant use of either hypotonic or hypertonic solutions.
- The patient remains free of problems and complications, such as phlebitis, infiltration, fluid overload, air embolus, and pulmonary embolus, related to IV therapy.

CHAPTER

14

Total Parenteral Nutrition (TPN)

Sheila G. Cushing, MS, RN

INTRODUCTION

Total parenteral nutrition (TPN), sometimes referred to as hyperalimentation, is the infusion of amino acids, hypertonic glucose, fat emulsions, and additives such as vitamins, electrolytes, minerals, and trace elements. TPN can meet a patient's total nutritional needs and is commonly used for patients whose caloric intake is insufficient. This method of nutrition is recommended for those who need nutritional support for a long period of time and cannot tolerate enteral feedings. Administering a high concentration of glucose solutions in peripheral veins can cause phlebitis at the infusion site; therefore, central vein administration is used for TPN. Central veins such as the right subclavian vein and the internal jugular vein can accommodate a high volume of hypertonic solutions because of their size and ability to dilute the infused fluid.

ETIOLOGY

Candidates for TPN include patients with severe burns who are in negative nitrogen balance; who cannot take enteral feedings; with severe debilitating diseases (cancer, AIDS); with gastrointestinal disorders such as ulcerative colitis, gastrointestinal fistulas, and other GI conditions in which the GI tract cannot consume enteral feedings.

For patients who are unable to tolerate oral or gastric feeding and suffer from severe malnutrition, TPN helps to restore a positive nitrogen balance. Following a major bowel resection, the absorptive area of the intestines is reduced; TPN aids in providing adequate nutrients. The benefit TPN provides patients with a gastrointestinal fistula is to allow the intestine to rest while providing nutrients. Table 14-1 lists indications for TPN.

Table 14-1 Indications for TPN (Hyperalimentation)

Indications	Rationale
Oral or nasogastric feedings are contraindicated or not tolerated	Long-term use of IV glucose solutions can cause protein wasting. TPN maintains a positive nitrogen balance.
Severe malnutrition	Malnutrition can cause severe protein loss and wasting syndrome. Negative nitrogen (protein) balance occurs. TPN restores positive nitrogen balance.
Malabsorption syndrome	The inability to absorb nutrients in the small intestine requires nutrients to be offered intravenously.
Dysphagia	Difficulty in masticating and swallowing due to pharyngeal radiation treatment prevents patients from breaking down food sufficiently for digestion.
Gastrointestinal fistula	Fistulas promote protein losses. TPN allows the intestine to rest and decreases gallbladder, pancreas, and small intestine secretions.
Major bowel resection and ulcerative colitis	These disorders reduce the absorptive area of the small intestine. TPN increases the intestine's ability to absorb nutrients more quickly than oral feedings and it permits the bowel to rest.
Extensive surgical trauma and stress	Extensive surgery requires 3500–5000 calories a day to maintain protein balance. TPN lowers the chance for infection and provides a positive nitrogen balance to aid in wound healing. TPN before surgery improves the nutritional status so that the patient can withstand surgery and its stresses.
Extensive burns	Extensive burns require 7500–10,000 calories daily. TPN improves wound healing and formation of granulation tissue and promotes successful skin grafting.
Metastatic cancer or AIDS with anorexia and weight loss	Patients with wasting syndrome and debilitating diseases, such as cancer or AIDS, frequently are in negative nitrogen balance. TPN restores protein balance and tissue synthesis.

TPN SOLUTIONS

The typical TPN solution for 1 L or 1000 ml contains 25% dextrose mixed in a commercially prepared protein (amino acid) source. Vitamins and electrolytes are added prior to administration. Electrolytes are frequently added immediately before the infusion according to the patient's serum electrolyte levels. Frequently, the pharmacy department prepares these solutions using aseptic technique under a laminar airflow hood according to the prescribed order. Dextrose (glucose) is the choice carbohydrate for TPN because it can be metabolized by all tissues. The protein source for TPN is crystalline amino acids. Intravenous fat emulsions are added to the solution to increase the number of calories and prevent hyperglycemia or they may also be given through an extra line. Patients with diabetes mellitus may need a higher percentage of fat emulsion to prevent hyperglycemia. Standard TPN solutions contain dextrose, amino acids, sodium, potassium (added later), magnesium, calcium, chloride, phosphate, acetate, vitamins (added later), and trace elements. Other additives may be included according to individual needs.

Daily TPN solutions can be administered through a central venous access device such as a PICC line or a Hickman catheter as a continuous infusion or intermittent infusion that runs for approximately 12 hours. By having a 12-hour TPN infusion time, the patient is free, the remaining 12 hours for normal activities, such as work, school, or play. Today, many patients receive the 12-hour method of infusion in the home. A support system is usually available for patient's needs and questions.

Usually 1 L of solution is ordered for the first 24 hours when initiating TPN therapy. This allows the pancreas to accommodate the increased glucose concentration of the solution. Additional daily increases of 500 to 1000 ml per day are ordered until the desired daily volume is reached. A usual maintenance volume of $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 liters of the hypertonic TPN solution is administered over 24 hours. A continuous infusion rate prevents fluctuations in blood glucose levels. If blood sugar levels are under control, a 12-hour TPN method may be used.

Generally medications are not administered in TPN solutions, but there are a few exceptions. For example, regular insulin can be added to TPN to control hyperglycemia.

Some medications are compatible with TPN and can be administered at the same site, but most often a multilumen central venous catheter or additional peripheral site is used if the patient requires IV fluids, blood product, and/or IV medications.

ELECTROLYTE AND GLUCOSE IMBALANCES ASSOCIATED WITH TPN

Because of high glucose concentration potassium shifts from the extracellular fluid sites to the cells (ICF). Increased potassium is needed in the TPN solutions, otherwise the patient's potassium level begins to fall after 8–12 hours of TPN therapy. Hypokalemia may result from patients receiving insulin to manage hyperglycemia. Insulin moves potassium back into the cells. The patient should generally receive 60 to 90 mEq of potassium per day in the TPN solutions (in some cases, more potassium per day is added to the solutions). Hyperkalemia may result from decreased renal function, systemic sepsis, or tissue necrosis. Serum potassium levels and urine output need to be closely monitored while the patient is receiving potassium.

Hypophosphatemia (decreased serum phosphorus level) is a common problem associated with TPN. Increased glucose concentration in TPN solutions moves phosphate back into the cells. During TPN therapy, protein synthesis promotes the shift of phosphates back into the cells.

Hypomagnesemia does not occur as frequently as hypokalemia and hypophosphatemia; however, it can occur in patients who are severely malnourished, have excessive loss of intestinal secretions, have a long-term alcoholic problem, or are receiving daily magnesium-wasting diuretics.

Hyponatremia and hypocalcemia are not as common as hypokalemia and hypophosphatemia. A decreased serum sodium level may result from the Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone (SIADH) or from excessive fluid intake. Hypocalcemia usually results from a decrease in albumin levels associated with malnutrition. Hypercalcemia may occur during long-term TPN therapy. This results when calcium is lost from the bone. Table 14-2 lists the types of electrolyte and glucose imbalances, daily electrolyte requirements, and causes of the imbalance.

Table 14-2 Electrolyte and Glucose Imbalances Related to TPN

Imbalances	Suggested Replacement	Causes
Electrolytes		
Hypokalemia	60–90 mEq/d	Hyperglycemia relatedto Insulin in TPN solution
Hyperkalemia		Decreased renal function Systemic sepsis Tissue necrosis
Hypophosphatemia	15–45 mEq/d	High blood glucose levels Protein synthesis
Hypomagnesemia	4–40 mEq/d	Severe malnutrition Excessive loss of intestinal secretions Chronic alcohol problem
Hyponatremia	30–50 mEq/L	SIADH Excessive fluid intake
Hypocalcemia	5–10 mEq/L	Decreased albumin levels Malnourishment
Glucose		
Hyperglycemia	25% dextrose/L	Rapidly administered TPN solutions Stress Illness

Hyperglycemia is a problem related to the high glucose concentration of TPN solutions. Excess blood glucose levels occur more frequently during early TPN therapy. Other causes include rapidly infused glucose solutions, stress, and illness. TPN is primarily started with one liter of solution for the first day and then the volume of solution is increased to meet the patient's nutritional needs.

COMPLICATIONS RELATED TO TPN

Major complications that can result from TPN therapy are air embolus, phlebitis, thrombus, infection, hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia, and fluid overload. TPN is an excellent medium for the growth of organisms, bacteria, and yeast. Strict asepsis is necessary when IV administration sets and dressings are changed. Most hospitals have a procedure for changing dressings in which strict aseptic technique is required.

When the IV administration set is changed at the central venous catheter site, all lines must be clamped before they are disconnected to prevent air from entering the circulation. As a further safeguard the tubing is generally changed during the expiratory phase of the respiratory cycle. When changing the catheter, patients with a central line should carry a readily available plastic clamp to prevent an air embolism in case there is inadvertent damage to the catheter. The patient must lie flat and perform the Valsalva maneuver (take a breath, hold it, and bear down) to prevent air from being sucked into the circulation. The Valsalva maneuver increases intrathoracic pressure.

Increased blood glucose (hyperglycemia) occurs as a result of rapid infusion of the hypertonic dextrose solution used in TPN. An elevated blood glucose level may occur during early TPN until the pancreas adjusts to the hyperglycemic load. Regular insulin, either in the IV solution or by subcutaneous injection, may be required to prevent or control hyperglycemia. Other complications that can occur include hypoglycemia from abruptly discontinuing hyper-osmolar dextrose solutions, fluid volume excess from the infusion of an excessive volume of fluid, or a fluid shift from intracellular to extracellular compartments. Table 14-3 lists the five major complications associated with TPN therapy (hyperalimentation), their related causes, symptoms, and corresponding interventions.

Hypertonic dextrose in a protein hydrolysate solution promotes yeast and bacteria growth. It has been reported that these organisms do not grow as rapidly in a crystalline amino acid solution as they do in protein hydrolysate solution. Many of the TPN solutions contain a crystalline amino acid solution, not a protein hydrolysate solution.

Table 14-3 Complications of TPN

Complications	Causes	Symptoms	Interventions
Air embolism	IV administration set disconnected Catheter not clamped Injection port fell off Improper changing of IV administration set Catheter damage (leak or tear)	Coughing Shortness of breath Chest pain Cyanosis	Clamp catheter Patient must lie on left side with head down Check vital signs (VS) Notify health care provider
Infection	Poor aseptic technique when catheter inserted Contamination when changing administration set Contamination when solution mixed Contamination when dressing changed	Temperature above 100° (37.7°C) Pulse increased Chills Sweating Redness, swelling, drainage at insertion site Pain in neck, arm, or shoulder Lethargy Urine: glycosuria Bacteria Yeast growth	Notify health care provider Change dressing every 24–48 h according to agency policy Change solution every 24 h Change tubing every 24 h according to agency policy Check VS every 4 h
Hyperglycemia	Fluids rapidly infused Insufficient insulin coverage Infection	Nausea Weakness Thirst Headache Blood glucose elevated	Monitor blood glucose Notify health care provider Decrease infusion rate Regular insulin as required Monitor blood glucose every 4 h and prn

(continues)

Table 14-3 Complications of TPN—*continued*

Complications	Causes	Symptoms	Interventions
Hypoglycemia	Fluids abruptly discontinued Too much insulin infused	Nausea Pallor Cold, clammy Increased pulse rate Shaky feeling Headache Blurred vision	Notify health care provider Increase infusion rate with NO insulin, as per order or hospital policy *or* Orange juice with 2 teaspoons of sugar if patient can tolerate fluids *or* Glucose IV, as per order or hospital policy *or* Glucagon, as per order or hospital policy
Fluid overload (hypervolemia)	Increased rate of IV infusions Fluid shift from cellular to vascular due to hypertonic solutions	Cough Dyspnea Neck vein engorgement Chest crackles Weight gain	Check VS every 4 h Weigh daily Monitor intake and output Check neck veins for engorgement Check chest sounds Monitor electrolytes Monitor BUN and creatinine

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Check TPN solutions, infusion site, and IV line. TPN lines are not to be interrupted except for lipids that may be piggybacked into the TPN line. It is highly recommended that flow rates be maintained by an electronic infusion pump (EIP).
- Check vital signs. Use vital signs measurements as a baseline for future comparison of vital signs.
- Check laboratory results, especially serum electrolyte and blood glucose levels. These values will be used for comparison with future laboratory results.
- Assess nutritional status, weight, energy level, and skin changes.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Risk for Infection,* related to TPN therapy, concentrated glucose solutions, and invasive lines requiring dressing and tubing changes
- *Risk for Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to inadequate fluid intake and osmotic diuresis
- *Excess Fluid Volume,* related to excess fluid infusion or a health condition that is unable to tolerate a high concentration solution administered at an increased rate
- *Ineffective Breathing Pattern,* related to complications of central venous lines and fluid volume excess
- *Deficient Knowledge,* related to unfamiliarity with TPN therapy and procedures specific to IV therapy equipment

Interventions

- Change IV administration sets according to agency policy—typically with every bag change because TPN is an excellent medium for bacterial growth. To prevent an air embolus when changing the IV tubing always clamp the central venous line (use plastic or padded clamps only). If an air embolus is suspected, immediately place the patient in a Trendelenburg position on his or her left side.

- Do not use an existing TPN line for blood samples.
- Place prepared solutions not in use in the refrigerator (remove the solution 2 hours before hanging). TPN is usually started at 1000 ml for the first 24 hours and is increased at a rate of 500 to 1000 ml daily until the desired volume is reached. When discontinuing TPN, decrease the daily rate gradually over 12 to 72 hours according to the order.
- Change central venous line dressings according to hospital policy, usually using strict aseptic technique.
- Monitor the central venous line infusion site for signs of infection or thrombus. Complaints of pain, numbness, or tingling in the fingers, neck, or arm on the same side as the catheter may indicate a thrombus formation. Elevated temperature and labored or rapid breathing, pain, redness, swelling, and drainage at the infusion site are indicators of infection and/or phlebitis.
- Check for signs of pulmonary edema such as dyspnea.
- Observe for signs and symptoms of reactions to lipid solutions; e.g., elevated temperature, flushing, sweating, pressure sensation over eyes, nausea or vomiting, headache, chest or back pain, and dyspnea.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the effects of total parenteral nutrition (TPN) on providing adequate or increased nutrition, i.e., weight increase, fluid and electrolyte balance, and osmolality levels, are within normal range.
- Patient remains free of complications, i.e., infection, air embolism, pulmonary embolism, pulmonary edema.
- Maintain a support system.

UNIT

V

FLUID, ELECTROLYTE, AND ACID-BASE IMBALANCES AND CLINICAL SITUATIONS

INTRODUCTION

In the clinical and chronic care settings, health professionals provide care for patients experiencing a variety of problems related to fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances. This unit addresses two developmental situations that focus on infants and children, and the older adult. The remaining six chapters focus on clinical problems and acute disorders related to trauma and shock, burns and burn shock, gastrointestinal surgical interventions, increased intracranial pressure, and chronic disorders related to cancer, heart failure, diabetic ketoacidosis, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. To assess patients' needs and provide the appropriate care needed for patients with selected health problems, the health professional must have a working knowledge and understanding of concepts related to fluid and electrolyte balance. Knowledge of these concepts allows the health professional to assess physiologic changes that occur with fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances and to plan appropriate interventions to assist patients as they adapt to these changes.

In each of these chapters, the pathophysiology (physiologic changes), etiology, clinical manifestations, clinical management, clinical considerations, and patient management (assessment, diagnoses, interventions, and evaluations/outcomes) are included. Clinical considerations summarize important facts related to the fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base problems for the specific health disorder. These considerations should be useful to health care providers when providing care for patients.

CHAPTER 15

Fluid Problems in Infants and Children

Gail Wade, RN, DNSc

INTRODUCTION

The health professional's understanding of the physiologic differences in infants and children that have implications for fluid and electrolyte balance is essential to providing optimal health care. Since these physiologic differences vary significantly throughout infancy and childhood, important regulatory factors must be viewed in terms of the maturity of the infant or child when addressing fluid balance problems that can be life-threatening in this vulnerable age group.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Neonates, infants, and young children exhibit major physiologic differences from adults in their total body surface area, immature renal structures, endocrine system, and high rate of metabolism affecting hemostatic control. Each of these factors predisposes them to developmental variations in fluid and electrolyte balance. Water distribution in the newborn or infant is not the same as in an adult. Infants' proportionately higher ECF volume predisposes them to rapid fluid losses, increasing their vulnerability to dehydration. Table 15-1 compares the percent of an individual's fluid volume to body weight over the life span.

Table 15-1 Comparison of Fluid Volumes to Body Weight from Birth through Adolescence

	Newborns	Infants to 1 Year	Child/ Adolescent
Total Fluid Volume to Body Weight	75%	65%	50%
ECF Volume	45%	25%	10–15%
ICF Volume	30%	30–40%	40%

Adapted from *Maternal & Child Nursing Care* (2nd ed., p. 1237), by M. L., London, P. W., Ladewig, J. W., Ball, & R. C., Bindler, 2007, Upper Saddle River, N. J.: Pearson Prentice Hall.

Table 15-2 outlines important physiologic differences in infants and children that predispose them to fluid balance problems. The combination of these differences stimulates the metabolic processes of infants and young children to respond to even small changes in fluid volume, resulting in electrolyte imbalances. Untreated imbalances may have major health consequences.

Table 15-2 Physiological Differences in Infants that Predispose Them to Fluid Imbalances

Developmental Physiologic Differences	Pathophysiologic Implications
1. Increased body surface area	Excess water loss via skin (the smaller the infant, the greater the loss)
2. Immature kidneys (can take up to 2 years for kidneys to mature)	Limited ability to retain water Increased water loss (limited ability to retain water)
3. Proportionately higher ratio of ECF volume (65%/weight compared to 20% in adults)	Predisposes infant to rapid losses of fluid, resulting in dehydration
4. Higher metabolic rate	Predisposes infant to more rapid use of water
5. Immature endocrine system	Limits rapid response of appropriate regulatory system
6. Increased pH in newborns (lasts a few days to a few weeks or may persist in low birth weight infants)	Indicative of metabolic acidosis

As the child grows, fluid shifts from the ECF to the ICF compartment. At 1 year, the percentage of the child's total body water is similar to the percentage of the adult's (60%) total body water; however, the proportion of ECF and ICF is still different. Generally, serum electrolyte levels in infants and children are similar to adult levels.

ETIOLOGY

Infants' and children's increased risk for fluid balance problems is often complicated by their small size, the immaturity of various body regulatory systems, their overall health status, and the extent of their fluid reserve. A summary of the etiological factors associated with fluid balance problems in infants and children is listed in Table 15-3. The most common fluid balance problem in infants and children is dehydration (fluid volume deficit). Electrolyte imbalances are associated with fluid volume problems. Etiological factors associated with common fluid and electrolyte balance problems in infants and children are listed in Table 15-4.

Table 15-3 Common Etiological Factors Associated with Fluid Balance Problems in Infants and Children

Type of Problem	Etiological Factors
Dehydration (fluid volume deficit)	Diarrhea Vomiting Inadequate fluid intake Excessive insensible water loss Radiant warmers/phototherapy
Overhydration (fluid volume excess)	Intravenous overloading Large intake of fluids (especially in infants with underdeveloped thirst mechanism) Administration of inappropriately prepared formulas Tap-water enemas Rapid reduction of glucose levels in diabetic ketoacidosis

Table 15-4 Common Electrolyte Balance Problems with Related Etiological Factors

Problems	Etiological Factors
Hyponatremia (sodium depletion)	Vomiting/diarrhea Overhydration with 5% dextrose in water (D_5W) Diuretics Low sodium intake Excessive insensible water loss Water intoxication related to excessive intake of electrolyte-free solutions (tap water) Irrigation of body cavities with water Disease states (nephrotic syndrome, HF, acute renal failure, cirrhosis, burns, SIADH)
Hypernatremia (sodium excess)	Vomiting/diarrhea High salt intake (oral or intravenous) High solute intake without water replacement (tube feedings) Excessive insensible water loss Disease states (diabetes insipidus, nephropathy)
Hypokalemia (potassium depletion)	Vomiting/diarrhea Laxative and enema abuse Medications (steriods, antibiotics, diuretics) High carbohydrate intake Disease states (metabolic alkalosis, Cushing's syndrome, anorexia nervosa)
Hyperkalemia (potassium excess)	Intravenous potassium overload Blood transfusions with aged blood Medications (potassium-sparing diuretics, chemotherapy) Disease states (theophylline intoxication, renal disease, hypoaldosteronism, metabolic acidosis, crush injuries, burns, sickle cell crisis)
Hypocalcemia (calcium depletion)	Inadequate diet (deficient in vitamin D and calcium) Cow's milk formula Medications (diuretics, anticonvulsants, antacids, laxatives, phosphate-containing preparations, antineoplastics) Disease states (renal insufficiency, hypoparathyroidism, alkalosis, pancreatitis, GI disorders)

(continues)

Table 15-4 Common Electrolyte Balance Problems with Related Etiological Factors—*continued*

Problems	Etiological Factors
Hypercalcemia (calcium excess)	Prolonged immobilization Excessive IV or oral intake Medications (vitamin D intoxication, diuretics thiazides) Disease states associated with bone catabolism (hyperparathyroidism, hyperthyroidism, leukemia and other malignancies, kidney disease)

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Signs and symptoms of fluid imbalance vary with the infant's or child's level of maturity, state of hydration, and the source of the problem.

Dehydration is the most common type of fluid balance problem in infants and children. It occurs when the total amount of fluid output exceeds the total fluid intake. Dehydration associated with diarrhea is the number one cause of fluid and electrolyte imbalance in infants and children. When vomiting occurs with diarrhea, fluid and electrolyte losses are more severe.

Losses in body weight can be used to determine the degree of body fluid loss. For every 1% of weight loss, 10 ml/kg of body fluid is lost. Dehydration is classified as mild, moderate, or severe based on body loss measurements. Table 15-5 provides guidelines to assess the degree of dehydration in infants and children. Although the table indicates a clear demarcation between mild and moderate dehydration, recent evidence suggests that distinguishing between mild and moderate dehydration based on clinical signs alone may be difficult. Manifestations for mild to moderate dehydration in reality may be evident over a wide range of fluid loss (from 3% to 9%). The most useful clinical signs for detecting dehydration in children are prolonged capillary refill time, abnormal skin turgor, and abnormal respiratory patterns. Because of immature kidneys in children under two, specific gravity is not a reliable sign of dehydration. Table 15-6 outlines the types, clinical manifestations, and suggested interventions for dehydration.

Although less common than dehydration, fluid overload or intoxication from overhydration occurs when excessive fluid ingestion results in low serum sodium levels and central nervous system irritation. Infants are especially vulnerable since their thirst mechanism and kidneys are not well-developed. A common cause of fluid overload is infant formulas that have been prepared with too much water. Other causes include: poor management of IV fluids during an acute illness, too rapid dialysis, tap water enemas, excess water ingestion, or a rapid reduction in glucose levels with diabetic ketoacidosis. The typical signs, symptoms, and laboratory findings in overhydration are displayed in Table 15-7.

Table 15-5 Clinical Assessment of Degree of Dehydration in Infants and Children

	% Dehydration (ml/kg body weight)		
	Infants	**Children**	**Clinical Assessment**
Mild	5% (50 ml/kg)	3% (30 ml/kg)	Thirst Slightly dry mucous membranes Decreased skin elasticity Skin color pale Tears present Fontanel flat Heart rate normal to slightly increased Respiratory rate normal to slightly increased Urine output normal to slightly decreased Alert, restless

(continues)

Table 15-5 Clinical Assessment of Degree of Dehydration in Infants and Children—*continued*

	% Dehydration (ml/kg body weight)		
	Infants	**Children**	**Clinical Assessment**
Moderate	10% (100 ml/kg)	60% (60 ml/kg)	Increased severity of symptoms Skin and mucous membranes dry Tenting Capillary filling 2–3 seconds Skin color gray Tears reduced Fontanel soft and depressed Deep set eyes Heart rate increased Rapid respirations Urine output decreased (<1 ml/kg/hr)
Severe	15% (150 ml/kg)	9% (90 ml/kg)	Restless to lethargic Marked severity of symptoms Skin clammy Mucous membranes parched/cracked Skin turgor absent Capillary filling > 3 seconds Skin color mottled Tears absent Fontanel and eyes sunken Heart rate rapid, weak to nonpalpable Blood pressure low to undetectable Respirations deep Urine output decreased or absent Lethargic to comatose (infants & young children); often conscious & apprehensive (older children & adolescents)

Source: Adapted from *The Harriet Lane Handbook: A Manual for Pediatric House Officers* (17th ed., p. 285), J. Robertson and N. Shilkofski (Eds.), 2005, Philadelphia: Elsevier Mosby.

Table 15-6 Types of Dehydration: Isonatremic, Hypernatremic, and Hyponatremic

Types of Dehydration	Water and Sodium Loss	Serum Sodium Level	ECF and ICF Loss	Causes	Symptoms	Treatment
Isonatremic dehydration (iso-osmolar or isotonic dehydration)	Proportionately equal loss of water and sodium	130–150 mEq/L	Extracellular fluid volume is markedly decreased (severe hypovolemia). Since sodium and water loss are approximately the same, there is no osmotic pull from ICF to ECF. The plasma volume is significantly reduced and shock occurs from decreased circulating blood volume. ICF volume remains virtually constant.	Diarrhea, vomiting, and malnutrition (decreases in fluid and food intake) are the most common causes.	With severe fluid loss, symptoms are characteristic of hypovolemic shock: rapid pulse rate, rapid respiration; later, a decreasing systolic blood pressure. Other symptoms are weight loss, irritability, lethargy, pale or gray skin color, dry mucous membranes, reduced skin turgor, sunken eyeballs, sunken fontanels, absence of tearing and salivation, and decreased urine output.	For mild to moderate dehydration, oral rehydration therapy (ORT) should be initiated. For mild dehydration, give 50 ml/kg over a 4 hr period; give 100 ml/kg over a 4 hr period for moderate dehydration. During the maintenance phase, infants should resume breast-feeding or formula. Children should return to their regular diet. If dehydration is severe, infants and children should be given one or more boluses (20 ml/kg) of isotonic intravenous fluid (i.e., lactated ringers or 0.9% normal saline) for the first 30 minutes regardless of the type of dehydration.

(continues)

Table 15-6 Types of Dehydration: Isonatremic, Hypernatremic, and Hyponatremic—*continued*

Types of Dehydration	Water and Sodium Loss	Serum Sodium Level	ECF and ICF Loss	Causes	Symptoms	Treatment
Isonatremic dehydration *(continued)*						The boluses may be repeated for up to 40 ml/kg if child is unstable. Albumin, blood, or plasma may be prescribed if there is no response after two boluses of 20 ml/ kg or if there is blood loss. Any significant losses need to be replaced over 6 to 8 hrs. Half of the replacement therapy in addition to the maintenance needs is given over the first 8 hrs; the other half is given over the next 16 hrs.
Hypernatremic dehydration (hyperosmolar or hypertonic dehydration) (second leading type of dehydration in children)	Water loss is greater than sodium loss; sodium excess	↑ 150 mEq/L	ECF and ICF volumes are both decreased. Increased ECF osmolality (solutes) results in a shift of fluid from the ICF to the ECF, causing severe cellular dehydration.	Diabetes insipidus; administration of IV fluids or high-protein tube feedings with high electrolyte levels; oral fluids with large amounts of solute.	Shock is less apparent since ECF loss is not as severe. Symptoms include weight loss, avid thirst, confusion, convulsions, tremors, thickened and firm skin turgor, sunken eyeballs and fontanels, absence of tearing, moderately rapid pulse, moderately rapid respirations, frequently normal blood pressure,	Fluid replacement must be very specific to the losses. A gradual reduction in sodium over 48 h is recommended to minimize the risk of cerebral edema. Half of the fluid deficit and the entire solute deficit may be replaced in the first 24 h; the remainder and maintenance fluid are replaced over the next 24 h. Serum sodium levels should be evaluated every 4 h.

Hypernatremic dehydration *(continued)*			ECF depletion may not be as severe as ICF depletion. Loss of hypo-osmolar fluid raises the osmolality of ECF.		normal to decreased urine output, and intracranial hemorrhage. Neurological symptoms such as seizures are likely to occur. This type of dehydration is the most dangerous.	Dextrose 5% with 0.2% NaCl may be ordered, and later, lactated Ringer's solution. With normal urinary flow, potassium can be added to the solution (2–3 mEq/kg).
Hyponatremic dehydration (hypo-osmolar or hypotonic dehydration)	Sodium loss is greater than water loss; excess water	↓130 mEq/L	ECF is severely decreased, and ICF is increased. The osmolality of ECF is lower than the osmolality of ICF. Water shifts from the ECF to the ICF (lesser to the greater concentration). The cerebral cells are frequently affected first as the excess water interferes with brain cell activity.	Severe diarrhea (sodium is lost in excess of water), excessive water intake, electrolyte-free fluid infusions (5% dextrose in water), renal disease, diuretic therapy, and burns.	Thirst, weight loss, lethargy, comatose, poor skin turgor, clammy skin, sunken and soft eyeballs, absence of tearing, shock symptoms (rapid pulse rate, rapid respirations, and low systolic blood pressure), and decreased urine output.	Rapid fluid correction with electrolytes can cause an excessive shift of cellular fluid into the plasma. The result can be overhydration and heart failure. Half of the replacement fluids and all of the maintenance fluid should be given over the first 8 h and the second half over the next 16 h. Generally, a solution of 0.3% sodium is administered. Unless sodium deficits are extreme, sodium replacement should not exceed 2–4 mEq/L over a 4-h period. Ongoing electrolyte losses are calculated and replaced every 6 to 8 h.

Table 15-7 Overhydration: Possible Signs, Symptoms, and Laboratory Findings

Signs and Symptoms	Laboratory Findings
Rapid weight gain (>10% of body weight)	
Generalized edema	Decreased levels of serum electrolytes
Adventitious lung sounds	Decreased hematocrit
Slow, bounding pulse	
CNS disturbances (irritability, headache, seizures, lethargy)	
Blurring of vision	
Nausea and vomiting	
Cramps and muscle twitching	

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Regardless of the type of fluid volume problem, immediate treatment of infants and children is needed to prevent hypovolemic shock and serious complications such as central nervous system disturbances. Oral rehydration is the treatment of choice for children with mild to moderate dehydration.

For mild dehydration, parents should be urged to give the child any kind of oral fluid that the child tolerates and to continue feedings as tolerated. Formula can be given to infants. If these approaches are unsuccessful, then oral rehydration solutions (ORS) should be given.

Table 15-8 contains a list of oral electrolyte solutions that are used for rehydration and maintenance. Generic brands are also available. When purchasing generic brands, however, it is important to select the appropriate solution for the type of rehydration or maintenance therapy needed.

Once rehydration is accomplished, the child should be encouraged to resume a normal diet. Some healthcare providers prescribe diluted or lactose-free formulas for infants while others believe full-strength formula can be given. Feedings for breast-fed infants may be supplemented with an ORS

Table 15-8 Composition of Oral Rehydration Solutions (ORS)

Solution	Carbohydrate (gm/L)	Sodium (mmol/L)	Potassium (mmol/L)	Chloride (mmol/L)	Base (mmol/L)	Osmolarity (mOsm/L)
WHO* (2002)	13.5	75	20	65	30	245
WHO (1975)	20	90	20	80	30	311
Enfalyte	30	50	25	45	34	200
Pedialyte	25	45	20	35	30	250
Rehydralyte	25	75	20	65	30	305
CeraLyte	40	50–90	20	NA	30	220

*World Health Organization

Source: Adapted from "Managing acute gastroenteritis among children," by Centers for Disease Control, 2003, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly,* 52 (RR16), p. 1.

(usually 100 ml/kg is recommended). Any ongoing losses (through stool or emesis) should also be replaced. For each loss through diarrhea stools, 10 ml/kg of the child's body weight should be replaced with an electrolyte solution.

With the resumption of a normal diet, healthcare provider may prescribe 100 ml/kg of an ORS to supplement the diet. Diets that are low in simple carbohydrates and contain easily digestible foods such as cereal, yogurt, cooked vegetables, and soups can be given to older children. Toddlers may tolerate soft or pureed foods. The BRAT diet (bananas, rice, apples, and toast or tea) is no longer recommended because of its limited nutritional value and high carbohydrate, low electrolyte composition. Foods to avoid are fried foods, soda, and jello water.

Oral rehydration therapy (ORS) is replaced with parenteral therapy in infants and children with severe vomiting, gastric distention, and severe dehydration. Emergency treatment of unstable children with severe dehydration is needed to prevent or correct hypovolemic shock. In emergency situations, fluids should be restored rapidly.

Careful consideration of the parameters for rehydrating children is essential. Overhydration can lead to cerebral edema with neurological symptoms such as seizures. Initial expansion of ECF volume is usually accomplished with a bolus of an isotonic solution such as 0.9% sodium chloride or lactated Ringer's solution. Recommended amount is 20 to 30 ml/kg. The bolus may be repeated if needed.

Initial expansion is to prevent shock by improving circulatory and renal function. Requirements for continued rehydration vary with the child's clinical status and the nature of the electrolyte imbalance. The amount of fluid replaced is based on the calculated loss as well as the fluid maintenance requirements.

Before determining the specific type of dehydration, infants and children with severe dehydration are treated according to the protocol for isonatremic dehydration. They are usually given one or more boluses (20 ml/kg) of isotonic intravenous fluid (i.e., lactated ringers or 0.9% normal saline) for the first 30 minutes regardless of the type of dehydration. The boluses may be repeated for up to 40 ml/kg if the child is unstable. Albumin, blood, or plasma may be prescribed if there is no response after two boluses of 20 ml/kg

Table 15-9 **Holliday-Segar Method for Calculating Maintenance Replacement**

	Water	Electrolytes
Body Weight	**ml/kg/day**	**mEq/100 ml H_2O**
First 10 kg	100	Na^+ 3
Second 10 kg	50	Cl^- 2
Each additional kg	20	K^+ 2

Adapted from *The Harriet Lane Handbook: A Manual for Pediatric House Officers* (17th ed. p. 284), J. Robertson and N. Shikofski (Eds.), 2005, Philadephia: Elsevier Mosby.

or if there is blood loss. Maintenance is calculated using the Holliday-Segar method (see Table 15-9). Any significant losses need to be replaced over 6 to 8 hours. Half of the replacement therapy in addition to the maintenance needs is given over the first 8 hours; the other half is given over the next 16 hours. The type of intravenous fluid administered is determined by the type of dehydration. Guidelines for treatment related to type of dehydration are listed in Table 15-6.

Assessment and treatment of hypernatremic dehydration is complicated because fluid shifts between the intracellular and extracellular space to preserve the circulating volume. Therefore, the potential of overhydrating the child and causing water intoxication is present. To ensure that serum sodium levels do not decrease too rapidly, levels should be monitored every 2 to 4 hours and the fluid level adjusted accordingly. The goal for correcting hypernatremic dehydration is to prevent water intoxication.

Infants and children are maintained on intravenous fluid only until their condition has stablized. Once the fluid and electrolyte imbalances have stabilized, oral rehydration should be initiated.

Special Considerations for Infants and Children

- Total body fluid volume (ratio of total volume to percent of body weight) varies with age and has significant implications for fluid management. Even small changes influence electrolyte balance.
- The ratio of extracellular fluid volume to intracellular fluid volume varies with age and the degree of fluid imbalance.
- The immature development of regulatory mechanisms (thirst mechanisms, kidneys, hormones) for control of fluid and electrolyte balance in infants and children increases the potential for shock associated with dehydration in infants and children.
- Careful consideration of the parameters for rehydrating children is essential. With mild to moderate dehydration, oral replacement therapy is recommended.
- Infants and children with severe dehydration require intravenous therapy. Initial rehydration is to prevent shock by improving circulatory and renal function. Requirements for continued rehydration vary with the child's clinical status and the nature of the electrolyte imbalance.
- Frequent assessment of the child receiving intravenous therapy for severe dehydration is critical. Overhydration can lead to water intoxication and cerebral edema.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Complete a health history of the current problem.
- Complete a head-to-toe assessment of the infant or child to compare your findings with those of the health history and note symptoms of fluid overload or deficit. Refer to Table 15-10 for a complete head-to-toe assessment outline.
- Identify potential health problems related to factors associated with fluid and electrolyte balance, such as

changes in weight, eating/drinking patterns, urine output, insensible perspiration, respiratory rate, vomiting, diarrhea, irritability, listlessness, skin (turgor, color, temperature), membranes, eyes, tears, fontanels, vital signs, neurological signs, neurovascular measurements, and stool frequency/consistency.

- Review studies (electrolytes, hemoglobin/hematocrit, urine specific gravity) to determine fluid and electrolyte balance problems.
- Obtain a baseline of vital signs, weight, and so on for comparison with future measurements.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Deficient Fluid Volume*, related to decreased fluid reserve or excessive vomiting and diarrhea
- *Excess Fluid Volume*, related to inadequate fluid excretion and/or alternative fluid volume regulation
- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements*, related to starvation, diabetic ketoacidosis
- *Deficient Knowledge (parents)*, related to the fluid needs of infants and children

Interventions

Deficient Fluid Volume

- Monitor lab values (creatinine ratio, electrolyte, hemoglobin, hematocrit, urine specific gravity).
- Closely monitor for changes in general appearance, behaviors, and neurologic status.
- Monitor weight daily.
- Monitor vital signs in accordance with severity of health problems.
- Integrate observations to determine the type and degree (mild, moderate, severe) of dehydration.
- Monitor effects of fluid replacement on behavior and laboratory findings.
- Monitor balance in intake and output.

Table 15-10 Head-to-Toe Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance in Infants and Children

Observation	Assessment	Rationale
Behavior and Appearance	Irritable/restless Anorexia Purposeless movement Unusual cry Lethargic Lethargy with hyperirritability on stimulation Unresponsive (comatose)	Early symptoms of fluid volume deficit are irritability, purposeless movements, and an unusual or high-pitched cry in infants. Young children may experience thirst with restlessness. As dehydration continues, lethargy and unconsciousness may occur.
Skin	Color _____ Temperature _____ Feel _____ Turgor _____	Skin color may be pale (mild), gray (moderate), or mottled (severe) depending on the degree of dehydration. Temperature is usually cold except with hypertonic dehydration where the temperature may be hot or cold. Skin feels dry with isotonic dehydration; clammy with hypotonic dehydration; and thickened and doughy with hypertonic dehydration. Turgor is measured by pinching the skin on the abdomen, chest wall, or medial aspect of the thigh and assessing the rate of skin retraction (elasticity). As dehydration progresses, elasticity decreases from fair to very poor. With hypertonic dehydration, turgor may remain fair. Skin turgor of obese infants or children may appear normal even with a deficit. Undernourishment can cause poor tissue turgor with fluid balance.
Mucous Membranes	Dryness in oral cavity (cheeks and gums) _____ Dry tongue with longitudinal wrinkles _____	The mucous membranes and tongue are dry with a fluid deficit. Sodium deficit causes the tongue to appear sticky, rough, and red. A dry tongue may also indicate mouth breathing. Some medications and vitamin deficiencies cause dryness of mucous membranes. Dryness in the oral cavity membranes (cheeks and gums) is a better indicator of fluid loss.

(continues)

Table 15-10 Head-to-Toe Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance in Infants and Children—*continued*

Observation	Assessment	Rationale
	Thirst Mild ____ Avid ____	Thirst is an indicator of dehydration (fluid loss). Thirst may be difficult to determine when vomiting is present. Avid thirst may indicate serum hyperosmolality and cellular dehydration.
Eyes	Sunken ____ Tears ____ Soft eyeballs ____	Sunken eyes and dark skin around them may indicate a severe fluid volume deficit. Tears are absent with moderate to severe dehydration. (Tearing is not present until approximately 4 months of age.) Soft eyeballs may indicate isonatremic or hyponatremic dehydration.
Fontanel	Sunken ____ Bulging ____	Depression of the anterior fontanel is often an indicator of fluid volume deficit. A fluid excess results in bulging fontanel.
Vital Signs Temperature	Admission Temperature ____ Time ____ (1) ____ Time ____ (2) ____	Body temperature can be subnormal or elevated. Fever increases insensible water loss. The child's extremities may feel cold because of hypovolemia (fluid volume deficit), which decreases peripheral circulation. A subnormal temperature may be due to reduced energy output.
Pulse	Admission pulse ____ Pulse rate Time ____ (1) ____ Time ____ (2) ____ Pattern ____	A weak and rapid pulse rate (over 160 for infant and over 120 for child) may indicate a volume deficit (hypovolemia) and the possibility of shock. A full, bounding, not easily obliterated pulse may indicate a fluid volume excess. An irregular pulse can be due to hypokalemia. A weak, irregular, rapid pulse may indicate hypokalemia, while a weak, slow pulse may indicate hypernatremia.
Respiration	Admission rate ____ Respiration Time ____ (1) ____ Time ____ (2) ____	Note the rate depth and pattern of the infant's breathing. Dyspnea and moist crackles usually indicate fluid volume excess. Rapid breathing increases insensible fluid loss from the lungs. Rapid, deep, vigorous breathing (Kussmaul breathing) frequently

(continues)

Table 15-10 Head-to-Toe Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance in Infants and Children—*continued*

Observation	Assessment	Rationale
	Pattern ____	indicates metabolic acidosis. Acidosis can be due to poor hydrogen excretion by the kidneys, diarrhea, salicylate poisoning, or diabetes mellitus. Shallow, irregular breathing can be due to respiratory alkalosis.
Blood Pressure	Admission BP ____ Blood pressure Time ____ (1) ____ Time ____ (2) ____	Elasticity of young blood vessels may keep blood pressure stable even when a fluid volume deficit is present. Increased blood pressure may indicate fluid volume excess. Decreased blood pressure may indicate severe fluid volume deficit, extracellular shift from the plasma to the interstitial space, or sodium deficit.
Neurological Signs	Abdominal distention ____ Diminished reflexes (hypotonia) ____ Weakness/ paralysis ____ Tetany tremors (hypertonia) ____ Twitching, cramps ____ Sensorium Confusion ____ Comatose ____ Other ____	Abdominal distention and weakness may indicate a potassium deficit. Tetany symptoms can indicate a calcium and/or magnesium deficit. Serum calcium deficits occur easily in children, since their bones do not readily replace calcium to the blood. Confusion can be due to a potassium deficit and/or fluid volume imbalance.
Neurovascular Signs	Capillary filling time ____	A measure of systemic perfusion. Moderate to severe dehydration is often accompanied by delayed capillary filling time of >2–3 seconds.
Weight	Preillness weight ____ Current weight ____	Weight loss can indicate the degree of dehydration (fluid loss): *Mild*—2–5% in infants and young children *Moderate*—5–10% in infants and young children; 3–6% in older children *Severe*—10–15% in infants and young children; 6–9% in older children

(continues)

Table 15-10 Head-to-Toe Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance in Infants and Children—*continued*

Observation	Assessment	Rationale
		Fluid loss can also be estimated by considering that 1 g of weight loss equals 1 mL of fluid loss. Edema and ascites can occur with fluid imbalances. Fluid overloads can result in hepatomegaly (enlarged liver). Weights should be taken on the same scale, at the same time each day, and with the same covering.
Urine	Number of voidings in 8 h ____ Amt ml/8 h ____ Amt ml/h ____ Urine color ____ Specific gravity ____ Urine pH ____	Accurate measurements of intake and output from all sources is essential. Normal output ranges are: Infants: 2–3 ml/kg/hr Young children: 2 ml/kg/hr Older children: 1–2 ml/kg/hr By subtracting the weight of a saturated urine diaper from a dry diaper, output in infants and toddlers can be determined (1 g wet diaper = 1 ml urine). Because of evaporative losses, diapers must be weighed within 30 min of the void to be accurate. Specific gravity can be obtained by refractometer or dipstick. Accurate assessment can be made within 2 h of the void. Oliguria (decrease in urine output) with very concentrated urine (dark yellow color) and increased specific gravity (>1.020 for infants and 1.030 for children) can indicate a moderate to severe fluid volume deficit, plasma to interstitial fluid shift, sodium deficit or severe sodium excess, potassium excess, or renal insufficiency. An elevated specific gravity is also indicative of glycosuria and proteinuria. With severe fluid deficit the infant may not void for 16–24 h and not show evidence of abdominal distention. Polyuria (increased urine output) with low specific gravity (<1.010) can indicate fluid excess, renal disease, a sodium deficit, or extracellular shift from interstitial fluid to plasma or decreased

(continues)

Table 15-10 Head-to-Toe Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance in Infants and Children—*continued*

Observation	Assessment	Rationale
		antidiuretic hormone (ADH). An acidic pH may indicate metabolic or respiratory acidosis, alkalosis with severe potassium deficit, or a fluid deficit. Alkaline urine may result from metabolic or respiratory alkalosis, hyperaldosteronism, acidosis with chronic kidney infection and tubular dysfunction, or diuretic therapy.
Stools	Number ____ Consistency____ Color ____ Amount ____	The consistency, color, and amount of each stool should be noted. If the stool is liquid, it should be measured. Frequent liquid stools can lead to fluid volume deficit, potassium and sodium deficit, and bicarbonate deficit (acidosis).
Vomitus	Number ____ Consistency____ Color ____ Amount ____	Vomitus needs to be described according to consistency, color, and amount. Frequent vomiting of large quantity leads to fluid loss, potassium and sodium loss, as well as hydrogen and chloride loss (alkalosis).
Other Fluid Loss	GI suction Amount ____ Drainage tube Amount ____ Fistula Color ____ Amount ____ Other Amount ____	Fluid loss from all sources should be measured. Fluid loss from GI suctioning, drainage tubes, and fistula can contribute to severe fluid and electrolyte imbalance.
Blood Chemistry and Hematology	Electrolytes Time ____ Time ____ K ____ ____ Na ____ ____ Cl ____ ____ Ca ____ ____ Mg ____ ____ BUN ____ ____ Creatinine ____ ____ Hgb ____ ____ Hct ____ ____	One set of blood chemistry is not sufficient for assessment. Electrolytes should be frequently monitored when they are not in normal range. Norms are: K: Newborn 3.0–6.0 mEq/L Infant & older 3.5–5.0 mEq/L Na: Newborn 136–146 mEq/L Infant 139–146 mEq/L Child 135–148 mEq/L

(continues)

Table 15-10 Head-to-Toe Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance in Infants and Children—*continued*

Observation	Assessment	Rationale
		Cl: Newborn 97–110 mEq/L Child 98–111 mEq/L Ca: Newborn 7–12 mg/dL Child 8–10.8 mg/dL Mg: All ages 1.3–2.0 mEq/L BUN: Newborn 4–18 mg/dL Child 5–18 mg/dL Creatinine: Newborn 0.3–1.0 mg/dL Infant 0.2–0.4 mg/dL Child 0.3–0.7 mg/dL Hgb: Newborn 14.5–22.5 g/dL Infant 9–14 g/dL Child 11.5–15.5 g/dL Hct: Newborn 44–72% Infant 28–42% Child 35–45% An elevated BUN can indicate fluid volume deficit or kidney insufficiency. Elevated creatinine frequently indicates kidney damage. Elevated hemoglobin and hematocrit may indicate hemoconcentration caused by fluid volume deficit. If anemia is present, the hemoglobin and hematocrit may appear falsely normal.
	Blood gases pH ____ $PaCO_2$ ____ PaO_2 ____ HCO_3 ____ BE ____	After the first day of life, normal range for pH is 7.35–7.45. A pH of 7.35 or less indicates acidosis. A pH of 7.45 or higher indicates alkalosis. Newborns and infants have $PaCO_2$ levels that range between 27 and 41 mmHg. After infancy, $PaCO_2$ levels range from 35 to 48 mmHg in males and from 32 to 45 mmHg in females. Lower values indicate respiratory alkalosis or compensation (overbreathing, hyperventilating).

(continues)

Table 15-10 Head-to-Toe Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance in Infants and Children—*continued*

Observation Assessment	Rationale
	Higher values mean respiratory acidosis. Normal range for HCO_3 in all ages is 21–28 mEq/L. BE (base excess) varies with age. Normal BE ranges are: Newborn (−10)–(−2) mEq/L Infant (−7)–(−1) mEq/L Child (−4)–(+2) mEq/L HCO_3 below 21 and BE less than the normal value for age indicates metabolic alkalosis. HCO_3 above 28 and BE higher than the normal value for age indicates metabolic acidosis.

Excess Fluid Volume (Overhydration)

- Attempt to identify the source of the fluid overload.
- Closely monitor intake and output for imbalance.
- Monitor laboratory values (electrolytes, hemoglobin, hematocrit, urine specific gravity, and creatinine ratio), and report even small changes.
- Monitor vital signs in accordance with severity of the imbalance.
- Monitor weight daily.
- Observe closely for CNS signs and symptoms that may result in seizures or coma.
- Monitor extremities, face, perineum, and torso for signs of edema.
- Provide a quiet, controlled environment.
- Record and report even small changes in findings.

Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements

- Ask the parent or child to identify the child's food preferences. Whenever possible, these preferences should be respected.

- Diets that are low in simple carbohydrates and contain easily digestible foods such as cereal, yogurt, cooked vegetables, and soups are appropriate for older children. Toddlers may tolerate soft or pureed foods. The BRAT (bananas, rice, apples, and toast or tea) diet is no longer recommended because it is high in carbohydrates and low in electrolytes. Parents should also be advised to avoid giving their child fried foods, soda, or jello water.
- For mild dehydration, urge parents to give any kind of fluid that the child will tolerate and continue normal feeding. Formula can be given to the infant.
- Advise parents that ½ strength juices are a better choice than colas if the child is anorexic. Colas are high in glucose, potentially increasing serum osmolality.
- If the dehydration progresses and the child does not tolerate fluids, parents should be told to give an appropriate oral rehydration solution. Rehydration therapy for mild dehydration is 50 ml/kg given over 4 hours. For moderate dehydration, 100 ml/kg should be given over 4 hours. The solution can be given via an oral syringe or a teaspoon.
- Once the child's condition has stabilized and the child is interested in eating, advise the parents to provide foods that are low in simple carbohydrates and easily digestible. In the early stages of recovery, an oral rehydration solution may be prescribed.

Deficient Knowledge (Parents)

- Assess the parents' knowledge level about their child's condition.
- Encourage parents to continue using approaches that are successful.
- Answer parents' questions as necessary.
- Provide needed information about the child's condition and the treatment plan.
- Provide support and encouragement to the parents.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of the fluid volume problem has been eliminated or controlled (disease state identified, vomiting and/or diarrhea controlled, hemorrhage) and the electrolyte imbalance and/or fluid intake has been adjusted appropriately.
- Evaluate the effectiveness of interventions through selected electrolyte studies (Na, Cl, K, Ca) to verify that they have returned to normal range.
- Document daily weight (in kilograms for infants and young children) for return to stable baseline weight (consult parents if necessary).
- Assess general appearance for a decrease in signs and symptoms of fluid imbalance (lethargy, hyperirritability, sunken or bulging fontanels in infants, edema, weak/shrill cry, limited tears, seizures, and so on).
- Assess hydration status (return of moist, pink mucous membranes, good skin turgor, and so on) of infant or child.
- Monitor fluid balance through intake and output measures.
- Document parental understanding of teaching related to the signs and symptoms of dehydration in children.
- Evaluate whether the child's nutritional status has returned to the preillness state.

CHAPTER 16

Older Adults with Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalances

Ingrid Pretzer-Aboff, PhD, RN

INTRODUCTION

The health professional's understanding of the normal age-related physiological changes of older adults is essential to providing optimal health care for this rapidly growing sector of the population. These age-related changes are often compounded by chronic health problems, thus, the older adult is more vulnerable to life-threatening complications from fluid and electrolyte imbalances. Health interventions must include careful attention to these imbalances.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

During the normal aging process the pulmonary, renal, cardiac, gastrointestinal, and integumentary systems undergo structural changes that ultimately decrease their functional efficiency. While these changes do not intrinsically imply that a body system is impaired, it does explain why, in older adults, the ability to compensate for fluid and electrolyte imbalances may be decreased. In addition, risk factors such as chronic diseases increase the debilitating effects of normal functional changes in all of the body's systems and further inhibit the older adult's ability to maintain fluid and electrolyte balance.

Assessments provide information about age-related changes and factors that may place older adults at risk for fluid and electrolyte imbalances that can be manifested as functional consequences. Appropriate interventions are needed to foster positive functional consequences and decrease the debilitating effects of these risk factors and age-related changes.

Table 16-1 lists (a) age-related structural changes in five major body systems; (b) health risk factors for fluid and electrolyte imbalance; (c) functional changes resulting from age-related changes and potential risk factors; and (d) interventions to foster positive functional outcome.

ETIOLOGY

The older adult's ability to adapt to changes in fluid and electrolyte balance is often complicated by chronic disease, and/or medications. Refer to Table 16-2 for a summary of fluid problems commonly found in the older adult.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The severity of fluid and electrolyte imbalances in the older adult vary with the individual's ability to maintain a fluid reserve, the efficiency of the individual's regulatory systems, and any complicating disease factors. Since structural changes and underlying disease influence the manifestation of clinical symptoms, it is important to view health problems in terms of each system affected. Table 16-3 outlines typical symptoms of an older adult experiencing excess fluid volume. Table 16-4 outlines some presenting symptoms for an older adult experiencing a deficient fluid volume.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Effective management of fluid and electrolyte imbalances requires the health professional to integrate findings from their structural and functional assessments with health data related to individual risk factors and chronic diseases. Once this data is put into perspective, fluid balance can be managed by targeting outcomes appropriate to the patient's age-related changes and current health problems. Table 16-5 lists actions to be taken in the clinical management of fluid balance in the older adult.

Table 16-1 Major Structural Changes, Risk Factors, and Functional Outcomes in Older Adults

Organ System	Structural Changes	Risk Factors	Functional Outcomes	Nursing Interventions
Pulmonary function decreased	Loss of elasticity of parenchymal lung tissue with 20% decrease in weight Increased rigidity of chest wall, decreased recoil of lungs Fewer alveoli Decreased strength of expiratory muscles Decrease in internal surface area Decreased mucociliary transport system	Chronic diseases Emphysema Asthma Chronic bronchitis Bronchiectasis Injuries from smoking Longer sleeping hours Exposure to air pollutants Occupational exposure to toxic substances Infection Decreased immune system response	Defective alveolar ventilation Decreased gas exchange Increased work of breathing Respiratory rate may increase Baseline arterial oxygenation is lower Decreased ability to clear mucus and foreign bodies (bacteria) Decline in response to supplemental oxygen Decreased cough reflex Accumulation of bronchial secretions Increased CO_2 retention Increased difficulty in regulating pH Decreased response to hypoxia and hypercapnia	Increase breathing capacity to enhance the elimination of CO_2 by: 1. Breathing exercises with prolonged expiration 2. Coughing after a few deep breaths 3. Frequent position changes

(continues)

Table 16-1 Major Structural Changes, Risk Factors, and Functional Outcomes in Older Adults—*continued*

Organ System	Structural Changes	Risk Factors	Functional Outcomes	Nursing Interventions
Pulmonary function decreased (*continued*)			Decreased tolerance for exercise Decreased vital capacity response Increased residual volume	
Renal function decreased	Arteriosclerotic changes in large renal vessels Decrease in number of functioning cortical nephrons (begins by age 40) 30–50% less by age 70 Decrease in size and weight of the kidneys Increased interstitial tissue Reduced medullary nephron's ability to concentrate urine Decrease in number glomeruli Thickening of glomeruli and tubular membranes	Medications (e.g., nephrotoxic drugs, diuretics) Genitourinary diseases (e.g., infections, obstructions) Chronic renal insufficiency Hypertension Atherosclerotic vascular disease	Reduced glomerular filtration Decreased renal blood flow Impaired ability to excrete water and solutes causing: 1. A decrease in H^+ excretion; thus, metabolic acidosis can occur 2. Reduced ability to concentrate urine 3. Increased accumulation of waste products in body 4. Decreased ability to excrete drugs Decline in urine creatinine clearance of about 10% per decade after age 40	Assess adaptive capacity and maintain optimal renal function by: 1. Checking fluid intake and output balance 2. Encouraging fluid intake as appropriate 3. Checking acid-base balance according to serum CO_2 or HCO_3 4. Testing specific gravity to determine kidneys' ability to concentrate urine 5. Tracking renal function by monitoring serum creatinine, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), and urine creatinine clearance

Renal function decreased *(continued)*			(Note: Serum creatinine remains within normal limits) Overall decrease in adaptive capacity of the kidneys to stress Decreased thirst perception (hypodipsia) Impaired responsiveness to sodium balance	6. Noting drugs that may be toxic to renal function 7. Observing for side effects from drug accumulation
Circulation and cardiac function decreased	Increased rigidity and decreased elasticity of arterial walls (arteriosclerosis) Decreased elasticity of blood vessels Thickening of cardiac vessels and valves Decrease in number of conductive cells	Myocardial infarction Cardiomyopathy Obesity Smoking Dietary habits that contribute to risk factors: Hyperlipidemia, excess salt and calories Inactivity Low potassium intake Diuretic therapy Excessive alcohol consumption Stress Air pollution Hormone changes	Potential increase in blood pressure Stasis of blood causing back pressure on capillaries, which in turn causes fluid to move into tissue areas causing edema Decreased cardiac reserve (capacity of heart to respond to increased burden) slows the adaptive functions as evidenced by: 1. Heart rate same as young adults except under stress takes longer to return to normal 2. Increased incidence of edema and congestive heart failure	Assess adaptive capacity of heart and maintain circulation and cardiac function by: 1. Checking blood pressure for elevations resulting from arteriosclerotic changes 2. Determining blood flow by checking peripheral pulses 3. Checking dependent extremities for edema from increased capillary pressure 4. Checking pulse rates (apical and radial) 5. Noting changes in heart rate following activity

(continues)

Table 16-1 Major Structural Changes, Risk Factors, and Functional Outcomes in Older Adults—*continued*

Organ System	Structural Changes	Risk Factors	Functional Outcomes	Nursing Interventions
Circulation and cardiac function decreased *(continued)*			Diminished strength of cardiac contractions Decreased cardiac output and stroke volume Decreased compensatory responses to blood pressure changes Decreased maximum heart rate and aerobic capacity Decrease in maximum oxygen consumption Approximately 50% of older adults have abnormal resting electrocardiographs (EKGs)	6. Assessing lung sounds for crackles 7. Monitoring intake and output balance 8. Assessing for unexplained weight gain of 4.5 kg (10 lb), pitting edema 9. Administering diuretics as prescribed, assessing effectiveness 10. Observing for signs and symptoms of hypovolemia and electrolyte depletion (namely hypokalemia) as a result of diuretic therapy 11. Monitoring serum electrolytes 12. Encouraging regular exercise, longer cooling down periods

Gastrointestinal function decreased	Atrophy of gastric mucosa Muscular atrophy and loss of supportive structures in small intestines	Alcohol or medications Psychosocial factors (e.g., isolation, depression) Factors that interfere with ability to obtain, prepare, consume, or enjoy food and fluids (e.g., immobility, mental impairment) Extraintestinal disorders (diabetes, vascular disorders, and neurologic changes)	Decrease in gastric secretions, especially HCl Metabolic alkalosis related to decreased HCl Atrophic gastritis due to decreased HCl Weakened intestinal wall causing diverticuli Decreased motility (peristalsis) of gastrointestinal tract (may cause constipation) Decreased calcium and nutrient absorption Decreased solubility and absorption of some drugs	Assess for adaptive changes and maintain gastrointestinal function by: 1. Discussing patient preferences for foods 2. Suggesting dietary alterations according to physiologic changes, individual preferences, and nutritional needs; may need increased calcium and vitamin D 3. Encouraging fluid intake 4. Checking frequency, consistency, and stool color in bowel elimination 5. Assessing bowel sounds and level of peristalsis
Liver function and endocrine gland function decreased	Liver decreases in mass of approximately 40% by age 80 Hormonal cells decrease in size and character, and outputs dwindle	Liver or endocrine diseases Medications (e.g., steroids, cardiac medications, antibiotics) Alcohol consumption	Liver: 1. Decreased hepatic capacity to detoxify drugs 2. Decreased synthesis of cholesterol and enzyme activity	Assess adaptive liver and endocrine gland functioning by: 1. Noting drugs patient is taking that may be toxic to liver

(continues)

Table 16-1 Major Structural Changes, Risk Factors, and Functional Outcomes in Older Adults—*continued*

Organ System	Structural Changes	Risk Factors	Functional Outcomes	Nursing Interventions
Liver function and endocrine gland function decreased *(continued)*			Hormonal: 1. Decreased overall metabolic capacity 2. Decreased endocrine gland function to react to adverse drug action	2. Observing for toxic effects of drug buildup 3. Observing for desired effects of drugs 4. Assessing alcohol consumption and teaching accordingly 5. Assessing for jaundice 6. Assessing for fluid shift (e.g., ascites)
Skin function decreased	All three layers of the skin (epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous) become thinner, lose elasticity and strength Blood flow—decreased Sebaceous glands—decreased production Sweat glands—decreased production Decrease in number of nerve endings	Exposure to ultraviolet rays (sunlight) Adverse medication effects Personal hygiene habits (e.g., too frequent bathing) Immobility Friction Chemical Mechanical injury Temperature—too high or low Pressure Gene influence	Drier, coarser skin Increased threshold level to pain and temperature sensitivity Decreased ability to produce sweat Impaired ability to maintain body temperature Decreased skin elasticity (making it difficult to assess skin turgor)	Maintain skin integrity and function by: 1. Maintaining hydration, monitoring fluid status 2. Maintaining optimal skin temperature 3. Maintaining and encouraging mobility to enhance circulation 4. Turning patient and elevating extremities when necessary to minimize edema and skin breakdown

Skin function decreased *(continued)*	Diabetes Peripheral vascular disease	5. Educating about decreased sensitivity to pain and temperature 6. Providing special mattress for those at risk 7. Padding, protecting boney prominences and pressure sites as needed

Table 16-2 Body Fluid Problems in the Older Adult

Problems	Etiology	Interventions
Deficient Fluid Volume: Dehydration	1. Insufficient water intake 2. Increased urinary output 3. Decreased thirst mechanism 4. Diminished response to ADH (antidiuretic hormone) 5. Reduced ability to concentrate urine	1. Measure fluid intake and output to assess fluid balance 2. Encourage adequate oral fluid intake 3. Assess toxicity of IV fluid intake 4. Assess for clinical signs and symptoms of hypovolemia (dehydration) 5. Monitor other types of fluid therapy, e.g., IV clysis and tube feeding. Adjust rate of IV fluid according to age and physiologic state 6. Monitor levels of serum electrolytes, BUN, serum creatinine, hematocrit, and hemoglobin
Excess Fluid Volume: Edema	1. Slightly elevated ECF 2. Overhydration from IV therapy 3. Increased capillary pressure 4. Cardiac insufficiency	1. Measure fluid intake and output to assess fluid balance 2. Monitor daily weights 3. Adjust IV flow rate to prevent overhydration 4. Assess for peripheral edema in morning 5. Protect edematous skin from injury 6. Observe for signs and symptoms of hypervolemia—overhydration, which can lead to pulmonary edema such as headache, anxiety, shortness of breath, tachypnea, coughing, pulmonary crackles, and chest pain

(continues)

Table 16-2 Body Fluid Problems in the Older Adult—*continued*

Problems	Etiology	Interventions
Constipation	1. Decrease in water intake 2. Muscular atrophy of small and large intestines with decrease in GI motility 3. Perceptual loss of bowel stimulation 4. Medications that influence gastric motility and hydration	1. Encourage fluid intake 2. Assess bowel sounds for peristalsis 3. Administer mild laxative and teach dangers of abuse 4. Have patient eat at regular times 5. Offer bedside commode 6. Increase roughage in diet as tolerated 7. Observe color, consistency, and frequency of stools
	1. Tube feedings with high carbohydrate content 2. Constipation—with small amount of liquid stools 3. Partially digested nutrients 4. Viral or bacterial infection	1. Assess for problem causing diarrhea (infectious, impaction, medications) 2. Administer drug(s), e.g., Lomotil, Kaopectate, Immodium, to decrease motility of bowel 3. Observe color, frequency, and consistency of stool 4. Monitor closely for hypovolemia and electrolyte imbalance (potassium, sodium) 5. Encourage clear liquids

Table 16-3 Characteristics of an Older Adult with Excess Fluid Volume

Organ System Affected	Structural Changes	Risk Factors	Functional Changes	Diagnoses	Interventions	Rationale
Cardiac	Arteriosclerosis Increased capillary pressure Decreased effectiveness of cardiac contractions	Recent weight gain of 10 pounds or more Low protein intake HF HTN	High blood pressure Edema Decreased cardiac output Increased heart rate	Excess fluid volume: edema, related to decreased cardiac output as evidenced by weight gain of 10 pounds, lower extremity edema, and pulmonary crackles	1. Monitor intake and output, body weight, vital signs, and neck veins for distension	Checking for overhydration is important to measure the effectiveness for medical treatment and interventions
					2. Monitor hemoglobin, hematocrit, serum creatinine, BUN, and electrolytes	Hemoglobin, hematocrit, serum creatinine, BUN, and electrolytes concentration are important to assess fluid balance changes
					3. Administer diuretics as ordered by healthcare provider	A ↓ Hgb and Hct levels can indicate fluid overload

Cardiac *(continued)*					4. If on diuretics, monitor K$^+$	Diuretics increase fluid loss and decrease edema. Many diuretics cause potassium loss
Respiratory	Loss of elasticity of the parenchymal lung tissue Increased rigidity of the chest wall	Immobility Hypoventilation	CO_2 retention Respiratory acidosis *and* Reduced breathing capacity	Impaired gas exchange Ineffective breathing patterns	1. Monitor chest for adventitious sounds	To assess for fluid overload
					2. Observe for cough, which may indicate pulmonary edema	Cough is an early sign of fluid overload
					3. Breathing exercises—prolonged expiration	Assists in removing excess CO_2
					4. Coughing after a few deep breaths	To enhance gas exchange (O_2 + CO_2)
					5. Change position frequently	Assists in lung expansion
Renal	Persistent renal vasoconstriction from arteriosclerotic changes and decreased numbers of functioning nephrons	Medications Genitourinary obstructions ↑ HTN	Reduced glomerular filtration rate and ability to excrete water and solute	Excess fluid volume related to renal insufficiency as evidenced by decreased urine output,	1. Assess intake and output	To determine amount of excess fluid volume
					2. Weigh daily, assess for edema	Daily weight is the best monitor of fluid status
					3. Auscultate lung and heart sounds	

(continues)

Table 16-3 Characteristics of an Older Adult with Excess Fluid Volume—*continued*

Organ System Affected	Structural Changes	Risk Factors	Functional Changes	Diagnoses	Interventions	Rationale
Renal *(continued)*				increased serum creatinine, and BUN	4. Assess urine specific gravity (SG) 5. Monitor serum creatinine and BUN 6. Monitor serum sodium, hemoglobin, and hematocrit 7. Monitor potassium 8. Administer diuretics as indicated	Fluid overload may lead to pulmonary edema and heart failure Increased urine SG indicates inadequate fluid intake or decreased renal function Assess progression and management of renal dysfunction May decrease in values as a result of hemodilution Lack of renal secretion may lead to hyperkalemia

						To promote diuresis
Gastrointestinal Liver* Integumentary	Loss of elasticity and strength of skin Decreased blood flow, sebaceous and sweat gland production	Edema Immobility	Pitting edema noted in lower extremities, reducing protective function of skin and increasing risk of skin injury	Impaired skin integrity related to edema and immobility	1. Avoid friction, prolonged pressure, chemical irritation, mechanical injury, excessive temperature variations 2. Encourage mobility to enhance circulation 3. Elevate extremities 4. Implement interventions for excess fluid volume	To reduce possible skin breakdown due to edema and/or immobility Good circulation improves skin repair To improve circulation and reduce edema Fluid balance reduces risks to integumentary system

*Not applicable.

Table 16-4 Characteristics of an Older Adult with Deficient Fluid Volume—*continued*

Organ System Affected	Structural Changes	Risk Factors	Functional Changes	Diagnoses	Interventions	Rationale
Cardiac Respiratory*	Increased rigidity and decreased elasticity of arterial walls (arteriosclerosis) Decreased elasticity of blood vessels Thickening of cardiac vessels and valves Decrease in number of conductive cells	Decreased fluid intake Diuretic therapy Excessive alcohol consumption	Potential decrease in blood pressure Diminished strength of cardiac contractions Decreased cardiac output and stroke volume Decreased compensatory responses to blood pressure changes Decreased maximum heart rate and aerobic capacity	Decreased cardiac output related to decreased desire to drink fluids, diuretic therapy as evidenced by decreased blood pressure; thready, rapid pulse; and fatigability	Assess adaptive capacity of heart and maintain circulation and cardiac function by: 1. Checking blood pressure and pulse for orthostatic changes 2. Determining blood flow by checking peripheral pulses 3. Assessing for increased fatigue in patient	Orthostatic blood pressure and pulse changes may indicate dehydration Weak, thready pulse may be a sign of dehydration Fatigue may be a result of decreased cardiac output related to dehydration
Renal	Persistent renal vasoconstriction Decreased number of functioning nephrons	Obstructions Disease Medications	Decreased thirst mechanism	Deficient fluid volume related to decreased desire to drink fluids, high alcohol intake,	1. Observe for decreased urine output	Decreased skin turgor is a sign of dehydration. Decreased urine output may be due to

			Reduced glomerular filtration rate Decreased ability to excrete water and solute	and social isolation, as evidenced by dry lips, furrowed tongue, and decreased skin turgor	2. Measure intake and output 3. Check specific gravity of urine 4. Observe lab results for increased red blood cell count, hematocrit, hemoglobin, creatinine clearance, serum creatinine, and BUN	dehydration or renal dysfunction To determine fluid balance To assess renal function Provide clues to extent of fluid deficit Provide clues in regard to renal function
Gastrointestinal	Muscular atrophy and loss of supportive structure of small and large intestine Atrophy of gastric mucosa	Alcohol intake Poor diet Immobility Decreased motivation to drink fluids other than alcohol Social isolation	Decreased GI secretions Decreased motility Constipation Decreased sensation of thirst	Constipation related to inadequate intake of food and fluids and lack of exercise, as evidenced by infrequent bowel movements, small, hard stools	1. Increase fluid intake of water and fluids 2. Assess fluid balance 3. Encourage a balanced diet with increased roughage 4. Assess bowel sounds 5. Observe color and consistency of stools	To enhance bowel elimination and soften stools Fluid balance reduces risk for constipation Balanced diet with fiber stimulates bowel elimination

(continues)

Table 16-4 Characteristics of an Older Adult with Deficient Fluid Volume—*continued*

Organ System Affected	Structural Changes	Risk Factors	Functional Changes	Diagnoses	Interventions	Rationale
Liver*						
Integumentary	All three layers of the skin (epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous) become thinner, lose elasticity and strength Decreased blood flow Decreased number of nerve endings	Temperature—too high or too low Immobility Pressure Friction	Decreased skin integrity	Risk for impaired skin integrity	1. Observe for decreased skin turgor and dry mucous membranes 2. Maintain and encourage sufficient fluid intake	Decreased skin turgor and dry mucous membranes are signs of dehydration Adequate hydration improves skin condition

*Not applicable.

Table 16-5 Clinical Management of Fluid Balance in the Older Adult

- Adjust fluid and electrolyte replacement therapy to match the older adult's reduced functional efficiency and slower response rate (renal, cardiac, pulmonary, GI, integumentary, and regulatory systems).
- Alert patient to side effects of diuretics and other medications and his or her increased risk for fluid and electrolyte imbalances (especially sodium and potassium).
- Recognize patient's increased risk for fluid and electrolyte complications in acute illness or surgical interventions.
- Encourage patient to select appropriate foods and fluids in balanced quantities to meet individual hydration needs.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: OLDER ADULTS

1. Efficiency of body systems decreases with age and chronic health problems reducing both the effectiveness and speed of bodily responses to stressors.
2. Hypernatremia associated with fluid imbalance is a common problem for the older adult. It is usually related to poor fluid consumption.
3. Potassium-depleting diuretics tend to induce hypokalemia in the older adult; potassium-sparing diuretics are more likely to produce hyperkalemia.
4. Fluid deficits are often associated with orthostatic hypotension.
5. Prolonged use of strong laxatives and enema dependency can cause hypokalemia and deficient fluid volume.
6. Standard colon-cleansing procedures can cause fluid and electrolyte complications in the marginally hydrated older adult.
7. Calcium deficiencies are often associated with osteoporosis. Risks increase with age and postmenopausal osteoporosis.
8. Heat stroke is more common in the older adult than in other age groups (age-related mortality rates increase after the age of 70).
9. The older adult is at an increased risk for postsurgical complications (cardiac, pneumonia, and fluid and electrolyte imbalance).

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Complete an extensive health history with careful attention to fluid and electrolyte balance factors (dehydration, fluid overload, edema, mental clarity, cardiac, and renal function).
- Complete a head-to-toe physical assessment with specific attention to changes associated with aging.
- Identify risk factors and potential fluid and electrolyte health problems.
- Obtain complete list of medications and herbal supplements.
- Complete laboratory studies on electrolytes, hemoglobin/hematocrit ratio, BUN creatinine ratio, and urine specific gravity to identify fluid and electrolyte problems.
- Obtain baseline measurements of vital signs and weight for future reference.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to severe imbalance between intake and output
- *Excess Fluid Volume,* related to inadequate fluid excretion associated with poorly functioning regulatory systems (heart, kidneys, endocrine, and lungs)
- *Imbalanced Nutrition: less than body requirements,* related to inadequate diet

Interventions

Deficient Fluid Volume (Dehydration)

- Monitor lab values (BUN/creatinine ratio, electrolyte, hemoglobin, hematocrit, urine specific gravity).
- Closely monitor for changes in general appearance, behaviors, and neurologic activity.
- Monitor weight daily.

- Monitor vital signs in accordance with severity of health problems.
- Integrate observations to determine the degree (mild, moderate, severe) of dehydration.
- Monitor effects of fluid replacement with physical assessment and laboratory findings.
- Monitor balance in intake and output measures.

Excess Fluid Volume (Overhydration)

- Attempt to identify the source of the fluid overload.
- Closely monitor intake and output for imbalance.
- Monitor laboratory values (serum electrolytes, hemoglobin, hematocrit, urine specific gravity, and serum creatinine).
- Monitor weight daily.
- Observe closely for signs and symptoms of pulmonary edema.
- Monitor extremities and torso for signs of edema.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Evaluate intake and output for fluid balance.
- Confirm effectiveness of medications and fluid replacement in treatment.
- Monitor nutritional intake to ensure fluid balance.
- Evaluate body weight and vital signs for return to normal patient values.
- Evaluate skin turgor, circulation, temperature, and moisture to reduce effects of risk factors.
- Monitor lab results for Hgb, Hct, Na, Cl, K, BUN, and creatinine until findings are within normal range.
- Maintain a support system.

CHAPTER

17

Acute Disorders: Trauma and Shock

Linda Laskowski-Jones, RN, MS, APRN, BC, CCRN, CEN

INTRODUCTION

Numerous physiologic changes in fluid and electrolyte imbalances occur as a result of traumatic injuries and shock. Swift and accurate assessment and interventions are necessary to protect the life of the injured patient. This chapter is divided into three sections related to fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base changes: trauma, neurotrauma (increased intracranial pressure), and shock.

TRAUMA

Fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base changes occur rapidly in the acutely traumatized patient. Quick assessment and action are needed for the best chance of survival. Trauma deaths can occur almost immediately at the time of the trauma, hours later, or days later primarily due to acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), sepsis, or multiple organ failure. Following a traumatic injury, the injured sites are assessed, fluid replacements are prescribed, and medical and/or surgical interventions are performed.

Pathophysiology

Following a severe traumatic injury, there is cellular breakdown (catabolism) due to cell damage and hypoxia. In trauma, sodium shifts into cells and potassium shifts out of cells; fluid shifts from the intravascular (vessels) to the interstitial spaces and cells. These shifts can result in severe fluid and electrolyte imbalances. Kidney activity is altered during and after a severe traumatic injury. Decreased circulatory flow can decrease renal arterial flow and renal perfusion, thus diminishing renal function. With cellular breakdown and hypoxia, non-volatile acids such as lactic acid increase in the vascular fluid, causing metabolic acidosis. Also, with decreased renal function, hydrogen ion retention occurs, thus contributing to the acidotic state that generally accompanies trauma and shock. Table 17-1 lists the physiologic changes that occur during trauma.

Table 17-1 Physiologic Changes Associated with Trauma

Physiologic Changes	Causative Factors
Potassium, sodium, chloride, bicarbonate	Potassium is lost from cells due to catabolism (cellular breakdown). As potassium leaves, sodium and chloride with water shift into the cells. The sodium pump does not function properly (see Chapter 6).
Fluid changes	Fluids along with sodium shift into cells and to the third space (interstitial space—at the injured site). The increased cellular and third-space fluids cause a vascular fluid deficit (dehydration) and hyponatremia. Serum osmolality may be normal or increased due to the fluid deficit and excess solutes other than sodium, such as potassium and urea. Remember, sodium influences the osmolality of plasma (see Chapter 1). The volume and composition of extracellular fluid (ECF) fluctuates depending on the number of cells injured and the body's ability to restore balance. Two to three days following injury, fluid shifts from the third space at the injured site back into the vascular space.
Protein changes	Trauma results in nitrogen loss due to increased protein catabolism, decreased protein anabolism, and/or a protein shift with water to the interstitial space. The colloid osmotic pressure is decreased in

(continues)

Table 17-1 Physiologic Changes Associated with Trauma—*continued*

Physiologic Changes	Causative Factors
Protein changes (*continued*)	the vascular fluid and increased in the interstitial fluid (tissues), which causes fluid volume deficit (vascular) and edema.
Capillary permeability	Increased capillary permeability causes water to flow into and out of the cells and into tissue spaces. This contributes to hypovolemia (fluid volume deficit).
Hormonal influence	ADH and aldosterone help to restore the ECF. A vascular fluid deficit and/or increased serum osmolality stimulates ADH secretion, which causes water reabsorption from the distal tubules of the kidneys. In certain traumatic situations (surgery, trauma, pain), SIADH (syndrome of inappropriate ADH) occurs and causes excess water reabsorption from the kidneys. Aldosterone is secreted from the adrenal cortex due to hyponatremia and stress. Aldosterone promotes sodium reabsorption from the renal tubules and is reabsorbed with water. Potassium is excreted.
Kidney influence	Kidney activity is altered during and after a severe traumatic injury. Sodium, chloride, and water shift to the injured site, which causes hypovolemia. Decreased circulatory flow can decrease renal arterial flow, which can cause temporary or permanent kidney damage. Impaired kidney function results in hyperkalemia.
Acid-base changes	With cellular breakdown and hypoxia from decreased perfusion, non-volatile acids (acid metabolites), e.g., lactic acid, increase in the vascular fluid, causing metabolic acidosis. Kidneys conserve or excrete the hydrogen ion to maintain the acid-base balance. Decreased kidney function can cause hydrogen retention and acidosis. The lungs try to compensate for the acidotic state by blowing off excess CO_2—hyperventilation. Blowing off CO_2 decreases the formation of carbonic acid.

Etiology

Trauma can result from severe injury including massive blood loss from major arterial and venous vessels, injuries to the brain (epidural or subdural hematomas) or brain stem, ruptured spleen, liver lacerations, fractures to large bones, chest injury (hemopneumothorax), and crush injuries to bones, tissues, and organs of the body.

Clinical Manifestations

The clinical manifestations that frequently occur in traumatic injuries include changes in vital signs and/or behavioral, cardiac conduction, venous, neuromuscular, and integumentary changes. Laboratory test results are a guide to determine fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base changes that are occurring.

The pulse rate may be fast, irregular, or weak. The blood pressure decreases according to the blood volume and fluid deficit. With severe fluid loss, the pulse pressure is narrowed. Tachypnea, dyspnea, or deep and rapid breathing may be present.

To overcome the hypovolemic state caused by blood and fluid loss and fluid shift to the injured site and cells, antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is released. This is a compensatory mechanism to maintain the vascular fluid. The water reabsorption can be continuous for several days. Urine output is decreased due to excess production of ADH.

The patient may be irritable, restless, and confused because of hypoxia and fluid and electrolyte losses. Integumentary changes may not be noted immediately following severe trauma with fluid losses. However, after several hours or a day, the skin turgor can be affected and mucous membranes may become dry. Table 17-2 lists the clinical manifestations related to trauma.

Clinical Management

Accurate clinical assessment is vitally important when planning and implementing care. Table 17-3 is a guide that may be used when assessing the patient for fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances. To understand the significance of the assessment, the rationale helps to identify the type of imbalance present.

Table 17-2 Clinical Manifestations Related to Trauma

Clinical Manifestations	Signs and Symptoms
Vital Signs	
Pulse	Increased pulse rate (tachycardia) Irregular pulse rate, weak, thready pulse
Blood pressure	Blood pressure decreases when severe fluid loss occurs Pulse pressure narrows
Respiration	Increased breathing (tachypnea) Dyspnea Deep, vigorous breathing (Kussmaul breathing)
Temperature	Hypothermia commonly associated with shock. Septic shock causes hyperthermia.
Behavioral changes	Irritability, restlessness, and confusion
Cardiac conduction changes	ECG: T wave changes (inverted or peaked), ST segment changes, and cardiac dysrythmias (result of coronary ischemia or potassium imbalance)
Venous changes	Neck vein engorgement with cardiac tamporade or tension pneumothorax No vein engorgement with fluid loss
Renal changes	Hourly urine output decreases
Neuromuscular changes	Muscular weakness
Integumentary changes	Poor skin turgor Dry mucous membrane Edema at injury site(s) Diaphoresis Draining wound, exudate
Laboratory Findings	
Electrolytes ↓ or ↑	Serum potassium, sodium, magnesium, chloride may be decreased or increased
Serum CO_2	Decreased CO_2 indicates metabolic acidosis; increased CO_2 indicates metabolic alkalosis or respiratory acidosis
BUN ↑	Increased BUN indicates fluid loss or decreased renal function
Serum creatinine ↑	Increased serum creatinine indicates decreased renal function
Arterial blood gases: pH, $PaCO_2$, HCO_3	Decreased pH and HCO_3 indicate metabolic acidosis

Table 17-3 Assessment of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances in the Traumatically Injured Patient

Observation	Assessment		Rationale
1. Vital signs			Changes in vital signs (VS) are indicators of patient's physiologic status. Several VS should be taken and the first reading acts as the baseline for comparison.
Pulse	Pulse rate Volume Pattern	____ ____ ____	Pulse rate and pattern should be monitored frequently. Pulse rate >120 may indicate hypovolemia and the possibility of shock. Full-bounding pulse can mean hypervolemia and an irregular pulse can mean hypokalemia.
Blood pressure	Admission BP Time Time	 ____ ____	Decrease in BP (systolic and diastolic) may not occur until severe fluid loss has occurred. Several BP readings should be taken, and the first BP reading acts as the baseline for comparison. A drop in systolic pressure can indicate hypovolemia. Pulse pressure (systolic minus diastolic) of <20 can indicate shock.
Respiration	Respiration Pattern	____ ____	Note changes in rate, depth, and pattern. A rate >32 can indicate hypovolemia. Deep, rapid, vigorous breathing can indicate acidosis as a result of cellular damage and shock. Hyperventilating (fast, shallow breathing) can be due to anxiety or hypoxia. Head injury can produce a wide variety of respiratory patterns.
Temperature	Temperature on admission	____	Hypothermia is a common finding in shock; an elevated temperature can indicate infection.

(continues)

Table 17-3 Assessment of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances in the Traumatically Injured Patient—*continued*

Observation	Assessment		Rationale
2. Behavioral changes	Irritable	____	Irritability, apprehension, restlessness, and confusion are indicators of hypoxia and later of fluid and electrolyte imbalances (hypovolemia, water intoxication, and potassium imbalance).
	Apprehensive	____	
	Restless	____	
	Confused	____	
	Delirious	____	
	Lethargic	____	
3. Neurologic and neuromuscular signs	Sensorium		Changes in sensorium can be indicative of fluid imbalance. Tetany can indicate a calcium and magnesium deficit. Hypocalcemia can occur with multiple transfusions of banked blood.
	Confused	____	
	Semiconscious	____ ____	
	Comatose	____	
	Muscle weakness	____	
	Pupil dilation	____	
	Tetany		
	Tremors	____	
	Twitching	____	
	Others	____	
4. Fluid loss	Wound(s)	____	Note the presence of an open draining wound. Kidneys regulate fluids and electrolytes. Monitoring the urine output hourly is most important. Oliguria can indicate a lack of fluid intake or renal insufficiency due to decreased circulation/circulatory collapse or hypovolemia.
	Urine		
	Number of voidings	____	
	Amount		
	ml/hr	____	
	ml/8 hr	____	
	ml/24 hr	____	
	Color	____	
	Specific gravity	____	
	Vomitus		Frequent vomiting in large quantities leads to fluid, electrolyte (potassium, sodium, chloride), and hydrogen losses. Metabolic alkalosis can occur.
	Number	____	
	Consistency	____	
	Amount	____	
	Nasogastric tube		Gastrointestinal secretions should be measured. Large quantity losses of GI secretions can cause hypovolemia.
	Amount—ml/8 hr	____	
	Amount—ml/24 hr	____	
	Drain(s)		Excess drainage could contribute to fluid loss and should be measured if possible.
	Number	____	
	Amount	____	

(continues)

Table 17-3 Assessment of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances in the Traumatically Injured Patient—*continued*

Observation	Assessment		Rationale
5. Skin and mucous membrane	Skin color		Pale and/or gray-colored skin can indicate hypovolemia or shock. Flushed skin can be due to hypernatremia, metabolic acidosis, or early septic shock.
	Pale	____	
	Gray	____	
	Flushed	____	
	Skin turgor		Poor skin turgor can result from hypovolemia/dehydration. This may not occur until 1–3 days after the injury.
	Normal	____	
	Poor	____	
	Edema—pitting peripheral		Edema indicates sodium and water retention. Sodium, chloride, and water shift into the cells and to the injury site(s) (interstitial or third space).
	Feet	____	
	Legs	____	
	Dry mucous membranes	____	Dry, tenacious (sticky) secretions and dry membranes are indicative of dehydration or fluid loss. This may not occur until 1–3 days after the injury.
	Sticky secretions	____	
	Diaphoresis	____	Increased insensible fluid loss can result from diaphoresis (excess perspiration). Amount of fluid loss from skin can double.
6. Chest sounds and vein engorgement	Chest crackles	____	The chest should be checked for crackles due to overhydration (pulmonary edema) following fluid administration/resuscitation.
	Neck vein engorgement	____	Neck and hand vein engorgement are indicators of fluid excess. Crackles and vein engorgement can occur from excess IV fluids or rapid IV administration.
	Hand vein engorgement	____	
7. ECG (EKG)	T wave		Flat or inverted T waves indicate cardiac ischemia and/or a potassium deficit. Peaked T waves indicate a potassium excess.
	Flat	____	
	Inverted	____	
	Peaked	____	

(continues)

Table 17-3 Assessment of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances in the Traumatically Injured Patient—*continued*

Observation	Assessment		Rationale
8. Fluid intake	Oral fluid intake Amount ml/8 hr ml/24 hr	 ____ ____	Oral fluids should not be given until the injury(s) can be assessed. If surgery is indicated, the patient should be NPO.
	Types of IV fluids Crystalloids Colloids Blood	 ____ ____ ____	Crystalloids, i.e., normal saline, lactated Ringer's, are normally ordered first to restore fluid loss, correct shocklike symptoms, restore or increase urine output, and serve as a lifeline to administer IV drugs.
	Amount ml/8 hr ml/24 hr ml/hr	 ____ ____ ____	Five percent dextrose in water can cause water intoxication (ICF volume excess) and is contraindicated as a resuscitation fluid in shock states.
9. Previous drug regimen	Diuretics Digitalis Steroids Beta blockers Calcium channel blockers	____ ____ ____ ____ ____	A drug history should be taken and reported to the physician. Potassium-wasting diuretics taken with a digitalis preparation can cause digitalis toxicity in the presence of hypokalemia. Steroids cause sodium retention and potassium excretion.
			Long-term steroid use can impair adrenal function in shock states and impair the patient's ability to mount a stress response. A steroid bolus or "stress dose" is indicated for steroid-dependent patients. Beta blockers and calcium channel blockers block the effects of the sympathetic nervous system. They may block the compensatory mechanisms for shock.

(continues)

Table 17-3 Assessment of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances in the Traumatically Injured Patient—*continued*

Observation	Assessment		Rationale
10. Chemistry, hematology, and arterial blood gas changes	Electrolytes *Serum* K ____ Na ____ Cl ____ Ca ____ Mg ____	 *Urine/24 hr* K ____ Na ____ Cl ____	Electrolytes should be drawn immediately after a severe injury and used as a baseline for future electrolyte results. (See Chapter 6 for normal values.) Urine electrolytes are compared to serum electrolytes. Normal range for urine electrolytes are: K 25–120 mEq/24 hr Na 40–220 mEq/24 hr Cl 150–250 mEq/24 hr
	Serum CO_2	____	Serum CO_2 >32 mEq/L indicates metabolic alkalosis and <22 mEq/L indicates metabolic acidosis.
	Osmolality Serum Urine	 ____ ____	Serum osmolality >295 mOsm/kg indicates hypovolemia/dehydration and <280 mOsm/kg indicates hypervolemia. Urine osmolality can be 100–1200 mOsm/kg with a normal range of 200–600 mOsm/kg.
	BUN Creatinine	____ ____	An elevated BUN can indicate fluid volume deficit or kidney insufficiency. Elevated creatinine indicates kidney damage. Normal range: BUN 10–25 mg/dl Creatinine 0.7–1.4 mg/dl
	Blood glucose	____	Blood sugar increases during stress (up to 180 mg/dl, or higher in diabetics).
	Hbg ____	Hct ____	Elevated hemoglobin and hematocrit can indicate hemoconcentration caused by fluid volume deficit (hypovolemia).

(continues)

Table 17-3 Assessment of Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances in the Traumatically Injured Patient—*continued*

Observation	Assessment	Rationale
	Arterial blood gases (ABGs) pH ____ $PaCO_2$ ____ HCO_3 ____ BE ____	pH: <7.35 indicates acidosis and >7.45 indicates alkalosis. *$PaCO_2$ (respiratory component):* Norms 35–45 mmHg Respiratory acidosis (↓ pH, ↑ $PaCO_2$) may occur due to inadequate gas exchange. A ↑ pH and ↓ $PaCO_2$ indicate respiratory alkalosis from hyperventilation. *HCO_3 (renal component):* Norms 24–28 mEq/L A ↓ HCO_3 and ↓ pH mean metabolic acidosis, which is the most common acid-base imbalance following injury from inadequate perfusion and lactic acid production. An ↑ HCO_3 and ↑ pH mean metabolic alkalosis. BE (base excess): Norms +2 to −2. Same as bicarbonate. A base excess of <−2 (also termed base deficit) is an indication of poor perfusion/inadequate resuscitation.

After an acute injury in which there is blood and fluid loss, intravenous therapy is initiated. Balanced electrolyte solutions (BES) such as normal saline solution (0.9% NaCl) and lactated Ringer's solution are usually started immediately. Oral fluids should not be given until the extent of the injury and the need for surgery is determined. Five percent dextrose in water (D_5W) is not the choice fluid replacement solution in trauma and shock states; it can cause water intoxication.

The patient is typed and crossmatched for blood when significant blood loss occurs. Unless there is a significant loss of blood and fluid, the BES helps to restore fluid loss, increase circulation, and increase the blood pressure.

Excess and/or rapidly administered IV solutions can cause overhydration. Signs and symptoms of overhydration may include constant irritated cough, dyspnea, chest crackles, neck vein engorgement, and peripheral edema. A serum osmolality greater than 295 mOsm/kg indicates hypovolemia, and a serum osmolality less than 280 mOsm/kg indicates hypervolemia.

SHOCK

Shock is the state of inadequate tissue perfusion that occurs when the hemostatic circulatory mechanism that regulates circulation fails. Shock can result from trauma because of a large loss of blood and fluid, which results in circulatory failure. A common feature of shock, regardless of the cause, is a low circulating blood volume in relation to vascular capacity. In a shock state, blood loss may not necessarily be from hemorrhaging but may result from “pooling” of blood in body cavities, limiting the amount of blood available to circulate. With shock, the cardiac output is insufficient to perfuse vital organs and tissues. There are four categories of shock: (1) hypovolemic, which includes hematogenic from hemorrhage; (2) cardiogenic; (3) septic; and (4) neurogenic.

Pathophysiology

The physiologic changes resulting from shock include a decrease in blood pressure; an initial increase in vasoconstriction of the blood vessels, particularly the skin, skeletal muscles, and kidneys but not the cerebral vessels; an increase in heart rate; a decrease in metabolism; and a decrease in renal function. Renal insufficiency can occur when hypotension is prolonged. Systolic blood pressure measurements must be 70 mmHg and above to maintain kidney function and coronary perfusion.

When the blood pressure is low, the baroreceptors (pressure receptors) in the carotid sinus and aortic arch cause an increase in the systemic vasomotor activity that leads to vasoconstriction and cardiac acceleration to maintain homeostasis. The coronary arteries dilate with a decrease in blood volume. Inadequate oxygenation of cells leads to anaerobic metabolism and the formation of non-volatile acids such as lactic acid. These changes result in an acid-base imbalance known as metabolic acidosis.

In early shock, fluid is shifted from the interstitial space to the intravascular space in order to compensate for the fluid deficit in the vascular system. As a result of this *early* shift, more fluid in the vascular system increases the venous return to the heart and increases the cardiac output. In *late* shock, fluid is forced from the intravascular space (blood vessels) back into the interstitial spaces (tissues). Table 17-4 describes the physiologic changes resulting from shock.

Etiology

Four types of shock—hypovolemic, cardiogenic, septic (also known as endotoxic or vasogenic), and neurogenic—are named for the clinical cause of the shock conditions. There are four classes of hypovolemic shock based on the amount of blood lost. With Class I there is approximately less than 1 1/2 units of blood loss. Class II may have up to 3 units or 1500 ml of blood loss. Severe shock occurs with Class III (3 to 4 units of blood loss) and Class IV (more than 4 units or 2000 ml of blood loss).

Table 17-5 describes the four types of shock, the clinical causes, and the rationale and physiologic changes that occur with each type. Hemorrhaging from injury or surgery, burns, or GI bleeding can cause hypovolemic shock. Cardiogenic shock may be caused by a myocardial infarction, cardiac failure, or cardiac tamponade. Severe bacterial infection and immunosuppressant therapy contribute to the development of septic shock. Neurogenic shock can result from high spinal anesthesia, severe emotional factors, or spinal cord injury.

Clinical Manifestations

Apprehension; restlessness; muscle weakness; a fall in blood pressure; tachycardia; tachypnea; and decreased urine output are characteristic signs and symptoms of the four types of shock. In shock, tachycardia is frequently seen before the blood pressure begins to fall. The increased heart rate is an early compensatory mechanism to increase circulation. A low pulse pressure (the difference between the systolic and diastolic pressures) of 20 mmHg or less is indicative of impending shock. To maintain coronary circulation and renal

Table 17-4 Physiologic Changes Resulting from Shock

Physiologic Changes	Rationale
Arterial blood pressure: decreased	Reduced venous return to heart decreases cardiac output and arterial blood pressure (BP). Decrease in BP is sensed by baroreceptors carotid sinus and aortic arch, which leads to immediate reflex increase in systemic vasomotor activity. (This center is found in the medulla.) Cardiac acceleration and vasoconstriction occur in order to maintain homeostasis with respect to blood pressure. This may be sufficient for early or impending shock.
Vasoconstriction of blood vessels: increased	Increased sympathetic nervous system activity causes vasoconstriction. Vasoconstriction tends to maintain blood pressure and reduce discrepancy between blood volume and vascular capacity (size). Vasoconstriction is greatest in skin, kidneys, and skeletal muscles and not as significant in cerebral vessels. Coronary arteries actually dilate with a decrease in blood volume. This is a compensatory mechanism to provide sufficient blood to the heart muscle (myocardium) for heart function.
Heart rate: increased	Heart rate is increased to overcome poor cardiac output and to increase circulation. Rapid, thready pulse is often one of the first identifiable signs of shock.
Metabolism: decreased	Unopposed plasma colloid osmotic pressure draws interstitial fluid into vascular bed. Inadequate oxygenation of cells prevents their normal metabolism and leads to anaerobic metabolism and the formation of non-volatile acids (acid metabolites), thus lowering serum pH values. With a fall in serum pH and a decrease in HCO_3, metabolic acidosis results. A rise in blood sugar is first seen due to release of epinephrine; later, blood sugar falls due to a decline in liver glycogen.
Kidney function: decreased	Fall in plasma hydrostatic pressure reduces urinary filtration. Low blood pressure causes inadequate circulation of blood to the kidneys. Renal ischemia is the result of a lack of perfusion to the kidneys. Renal insufficiency follows prolonged hypotension. Systolic blood pressure must be 70 mm Hg and above to maintain kidney function. One of the body's compensatory mechanisms in shock is to shunt blood around the kidneys to maintain intravascular fluid. Deficient blood supply makes tubule cells of kidneys more susceptible to injury. Urine output of less than 30 ml/hr may be indicative of shock and/or decrease in renal function.

(continues)

Table 17-5 Types and Clinical Causes of Shock

Type of Shock	Clinical Causes	Rationale and Physiologic Results
Hypovolemic: Hematogenic (from hemorrhage)	Severe vomiting or diarrhea—acute dehydration Burns, intestinal obstruction, fluid shift to third space Hemorrhage that results from internal or external blood loss	Blood, plasma, and fluid loss from decreased circulating blood volume *Physiologic Results* 1. Decreased circulation 2. Decreased venous return 3. Reduced cardiac output 4. Increased afterload 5. Decreased preload 6. Decreased tissue perfusion
Cardiogenic	Myocardial infarction Severe arrhythmias Heart failure Cardiac tamponade Pulmonary embolism Blunt cardiac injury (formerly "cardiac contusion")	Because of these clinical problems, the pumping action of the heart is inadequate to maintain circulation (pump failure of myocardium). *Physiologic Results* 1. Decreased circulation 2. Decreased stroke volume 3. Decreased cardiac output 4. Increased preload 5. Increased afterload 6. Increased venous pressure 7. Decreased venous return 8. Decreased tissue perfusion

(continues)

Table 17-5 Types and Clinical Causes of Shock—*continued*

Type of Shock	Clinical Causes	Rationale and Physiologic Results
Septic: Endotoxic Vasogenic	Severe systemic infections Septic abortion Peritonitis Debilitated conditions Immunosuppressant therapy	Septic shock is characterized by increased capillary permeability that permits plasma and fluid to pass into surrounding tissue. Often caused by a gram-negative organism. *Physiologic Results* 1. Vasodilatation and peripheral pooling of blood 2. Decreased circulation 3. Decreased preload 4. Decreased afterload, early shock and increased afterload, late shock 5. Decreased tissue perfusion
Neurogenic	Mild to moderate neurogenic shock: Emotional stress Acute pain Drugs: narcotics, barbiturates, phenothiazines High spinal anesthesia Acute gastric dilation Severe neurogenic shock: Spinal cord injury	Neurogenic shock is caused by loss of vascular tone. *Physiologic Results* 1. Decreased circulation 2. Vasodilatation and peripheral pooling of blood 3. Decreased cardiac output 4. Decreased venous return 5. Decreased tissue perfusion

function, the systolic pressure should be at least 70 mmHg. Decreased central venous pressure (CVP), pulmonary artery pressure (PAP), and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP) are present in all types of shock except cardiogenic shock. These pressures may be increased in cardiogenic shock.

Table 17-6 lists the clinical signs and symptoms and rationales related to the four types of shock.

Table 17-6 Clinical Manifestations of Shock

Signs and Symptoms	Types of Shock	Rationale
Skin: pale and/or cold and moist (except when caused by a spinal cord injury)	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Neurogenic Septic (late)	Pale, cold, and/or moist skin results from increased sympathetic action. Peripheral vaso-constriction occurs and blood is shunted to vital organs. Skin is warm and flushed in early septic shock. Skin is warm and dry in neurogenic shock due to spinal cord injury.
Tachycardia (pulse fast and thready)	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Septic	Increased pulse rate is frequently one of the early signs, except in neurogenic shock, in which the pulse is often slower than normal. Norepinephrine and epinephrine, released by the adrenal medulla, increase the cardiac rate and myocardial contractibility. Tachycardia, pulse >100, generally occurs before arterial blood pressure falls.
Apprehension, restlessness	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Septic Neurogenic	Apprehension and restlessness, early signs of shock, result from cerebral hypoxia. As the state of shock progresses, disorientation and confusion occur.
Muscle weakness, fatigue	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Septic Neurogenic	Muscle weakness and fatigue, which occur early in shock, are the result of inadequate tissue perfusion.

(continues)

Table 17-6 Clinical Manifestations of Shock—*continued*

Signs and Symptoms	Types of Shock	Rationale
Arterial blood pressure: early, a rise in or normal BP; late, a fall in BP	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Septic Neurogenic	In early shock, blood pressure rises or is normal as a result of increased heart rate. As shock progresses, blood pressure falls because of a lack of cardiac and peripheral vasoconstriction compensation.
Pulse pressure: narrowed, <20 mmHg		Narrowing of pulse pressure occurs because the systolic BP falls more rapidly than the diastolic BP.
Pressures: CVP, PAP, PCWP—decreased in hypovolemic, septic, neurogenic; increased in cardiogenic	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Septic Neurogenic	Normal values: 1. Central venous pressure (CVP): 5–12 cm H_2O. With decreased blood volume, CVP <5 cm H_2O 2. Pulmonary artery pressure (PAP): 20–30 mmHg systolic, 10–15 mmHg diastolic. With blood volume depletion or pooling of blood, PAP in hypovolemic <10 mmHg, septic <10 mmHg, neurogenic <10 mmHg. In cardiogenic shock, PAP >30 mmHg. 3. Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP): 8–15 mmHg. With blood volume depletion or peripheral pooling, the PCWP in hypovolemic, septic, and neurogen <8 mmHg and incardiogenic >15 mmHg.
Respiration: increased rate and depth (tachypnea)	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Septic Neurogenic	Increased hydrogen ion concentration in the body stimulates the respiratory centers in the medulla, thus increasing the respiratory rate. Acid metabolites, e.g., lactic acid from anaerobic metabolism increases the rate and depth of respiration. Rapid respiration acts as a compensatory mechanism to decrease metabolic acidosis.

(continues)

Table 17-6 Clinical Manifestations of Shock—*continued*

Signs and Symptoms	Types of Shock	Rationale
Temperature: subnormal	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Neurogenic	Body temperature is subnormal in shock because of decreased circulation and decreased cellular function. In early septic shock, the temperature is elevated.
Urinary output: decreased	Hypovolemic Cardiogenic Septic Neurogenic	Oliguria (decreased urine output) occurs in shock because of decreased renal blood flow caused by renal vasoconstriction. Blood is shunted to the heart and brain. Urine output should be >25 ml/hr.

Clinical Management

Immediate action needs to be taken when shock occurs so that it can be reversed. To maintain body fluid volume and particularly the intravascular fluid, fluid replacement must begin immediately for patients who are in shock or impending shock. Improvement of blood volume is needed to maintain tissue perfusion and oxygen delivery. The types of solutions for fluid replacement include crystalloids or balanced electrolyte (salt) solutions, and colloid solutions.

Crystalloids

Crystalloids expand the volume of the intravascular fluid. The two common types of crystalloids used for fluid replacement are normal saline solution (0.9% sodium chloride) and lactated Ringer's solution. Lactated Ringer's solution contains the electrolytes: sodium, potassium, calcium, and chloride with milliequivalents similar to plasma values. Normal saline is a popular IV solution used for fluid replacement because it is with approximately the same milliosmoles as plasma. Excess use of normal saline can increase the serum sodium and chloride levels. The lactate in the lactated Ringer's solution acts as a buffer to increase the pH, thus decreasing the acidotic state. Large quantities of lactated Ringer's solution may cause metabolic alkalosis. If the patient has a liver disorder,

Table 17-7 Crystalloids

	mEq/L						
Crystalloids	**Na**	**K**	**Ca**	**Mg**	**Cl**	**Lactate**	**Gluconate**
0.9% NaCl	154	—	—	—	154	—	—
Lactated Ringer's	130	4	3	—	109	28	—

the lactate is not metabolized into bicarbonate and lactic acid can result. Alternating the crystalloid solutions, such as normal saline solution and lactated Ringer's solution, usually maintains the body's electrolyte and acid-base balance. Table 17-7 lists the content of the two crystalloids that are used to replace fluid loss during shock.

The crystalloid 5% dextrose and water (D_5W) should NEVER be ordered for fluid replacement during shock. D_5W is an iso-tonic solution; if it is used continuously in large volumes, the solution in the body becomes hypo-osmolar. This can lead to intracellular fluid volume excess (water intoxication) or cellular swelling.

Intravenous solutions containing calcium, such as lactated Ringer's, should NOT be administered with blood transfusions. The calcium in the solution precipitates when it comes in contact with transfused blood. Normal saline is the only solution used during blood transfusions.

Colloids

Colloids are substances that have a higher molecular weight than crystalloids and therefore cannot pass through the vascular membrane. Colloids increase intravascular fluid volume. When colloid therapy is used, less fluid is needed to reestablish the fluid volume in the vascular space. Table 17-8 lists the colloids that may be used for fluid replacement.

The colloids albumin 5%, plasma protein fraction (Plasmanate), and hetastarch increase the vascular volume to approximately the same amount that is infused. With low-molecular-weight dextran 40, the vascular fluid is expanded by one to two times the amount that is infused. With albumin 25%, the vascular volume is expanded four times the amount that is infused.

Table 17-8 Colloids

Colloids*	Brand Names	Comments
Blood products	Packed RBCs Whole blood	Used to replace blood loss.
Albumin, 5% or 25%	Albuminar Plasbumin	Not used in acute shock; 1–4 ml/min.
Plasma protein fraction, 5%	Plasmanate	Rapid infusion rate can decrease blood pressure.
Hetastarch	Hespan	Synthetic starch similar to human glycogen. Very expensive.
Dextran 40	Dextran	Low-molecular-weight dextran 40 may prolong bleeding time.

*Colloid therapy is more expensive than crystalloid therapy.

Crystalloids, Colloids, and Blood Products

Crystalloids are the first choice for treating hypovolemic shock. Crystalloids can restore fluid volume in the vascular and interstitial spaces and improve renal function; however, large quantities of crystalloids are needed. Excessive infusions of crystalloids might cause fluid overload in patients who are elderly or who have heart disease. Frequently, a combination of crystalloids and colloids is used for fluid replacement. If severe blood loss occurs, blood transfusions may be necessary after infusion of 1 to 2 L of crystalloids. Each fluid replacement situation differs and each individual situation must be evaluated separately.

There are suggested formulas for restoring fluid loss, especially for patients in hypovolemic shock who have had some blood loss, moderate blood loss, or massive amounts of blood and body fluid loss. The simplest formula for fluid replacement is the 3:1 rule; for every 1 ml of blood lost, 3 ml of crystalloid solution are necessary to restore fluid volume. If hypotension persists despite 2 L of crystalloid solution replacement, a blood transfusion should be considered. When administering normal saline or lactated Ringer's solution for hypovolemic shock, the IV solutions may be given rapidly at first to decrease the symptoms of shock. Later, the flow rate should be slowed. Table 17-9 lists the four

Table 17-9 Classes of Hypovolemic Shock and Appropriate Fluid Replacement

Characteristic Effects of Hypovolemic Shock	Class I Mild Shock	Class II Moderate Shock	Class III Severe Shock	Class IV Severe Shock
Blood loss	<750 ml or $1\frac{1}{2}$ units	750–1500 ml or $1\frac{1}{2}$–3 units	1500–2000 ml or 3–4 units 30–40%	>2000 ml or >4 units
Blood loss (% BV)	<15%	15–30%	>120	>40%
Heart rate (bpm)	<100	>100	Decreased	>140
Blood pressure	Normal	Normal to slightly decreased	Decreased	Decreased
Pulse pressure	Normal or increased	Decreased from normal	20–25 mm Hg	Decreased 20 mmHg or less
Urine output	>30 ml/h	20–30 ml/h	5–15 ml/h	0–5 ml/h
Fluid replacement (3:1 rule) 3 ml replaced for 1 ml of blood loss	Crystalloid*	Crystalloid*	Crystalloid* and blood	Crystalloid* and blood

*Normal saline or lactated Ringer's solution

classes of hypovolemic shock with their estimated amount of blood loss and percent of blood volume loss (% BV), changes in vital signs, pulse pressure, urine output, and types of fluid replacement.

Vasopressors

Years ago the first and foremost treatment of shock was to administer a vasopressor drug. The drug constricts the dilated blood vessels that occur with shock and raises the blood pressure. Vasopressors act as a temporary treatment for shock; if the cause of the shock is not alleviated, the progress of shock increases. Today, vasopressors are only used for severe shock or types of shock that do not respond to treatment. Note that vasopressors are *not* effective in the treatment of hypovolemic shock because constricting the blood vessels does not aid in the circulation of blood when the cause is most obvious, a lack of blood or fluid. Replacing blood or fluid volume loss should correct this type of shock. Table 17-10 outlines the clinical

Table 17-10 Clinical Management of Shock States

Hypovolemic Shock	Cardiogenic Shock	Septic Shock	Neurogenic Shock
1. O_2 2. IV fluids, such as a. Lactated Ringer's b. Normal saline c. Blood products 3. No vasopressors 4. Electrolyte replacement	1. O_2 2. IV therapy is limited when pulmonary congestion is present and venous pressure is elevated. Close monitoring of CVP and PCWP 3. Vasopressors, if necessary 4. Antiarrythmics Sodium nitroprusside/Nipride, nitroglycerin/NTG; (decrease preload and decrease afterload). Intropic drugs (e.g., dobutamine amrinone/Inocor) Sedatives Diuretics	1. O_2 2. IV therapy crystalloids 3. Vasopressors for nonresponsiveness 4. Blood cultures 5. IV antibiotics	1. O_2 2. IV therapy 3. Vasopressors, if necessary 4. Atropine for symptomatic bradycardia

Note: Examples of vasopressors are (1) levarterenol bitartrate/Levophed, (2) dopamine hydrochloride/Intropin, (3) epinephrine infusion.

management for alleviating four types of clinical shock: hypovolemic, cardiogenic, septic, and neurogenic.

When vasopressors are used, cardiac dysrhythmias may occur. Levarterenol bitartrate (Levophed) is norepinephrine, which is a strong vasopressor. It increases the blood pressure and cardiac output by constricting blood vessels. Epinephrine works in the same manner. Dopamine HCl (Intropin) is a catecholamine precursor of norepinephrine. It increases blood pressure and cardiac output. Levophed causes vasoconstriction, which affects the renal arteries and can decrease renal function. Vasopressors are titrated according to the blood pressure and should be continuously monitored. Dobutamine is an adrenergic drug that moderately increases blood pressure by increasing the heart rate and cardiac output. Dobutamine is effective in increasing myocardial contractility.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: TRAUMA AND SHOCK

1. In trauma and shock, Assess signs and symptoms that may indicate hypovolemia (FUD) and shock, such as restlessness, apprehension, confusion, tachycardia, narrowing of the pulse pressure (20 mmHg or less), tachypnea, and cool and clammy skin.
2. Urinary output may be decreased. Report if urine output is less than 30 ml per hour or 200 ml per 8 hours. If the serum creatinine is elevated, renal dysfunction may be present due to a lack of renal perfusion related to shock.
3. Recognize that the hemoglobin, hematocrit, and BUN may be elevated during a hypovolemic state. With a large amount of blood loss, the hemoglobin drops, but not immediately.
4. Monitor intravenous therapy. The choice crystalloids are normal saline and lactated Ringer's solution. Five percent dextrose and water should not be used to correct hypovolemia during shock.
5. Crystalloids are usually administered rapidly during early shock to increase blood pressure, hydrate the patient, and increase urine output. Check for fluid overload in the young, older adult, and debilitated person. Signs and symptoms of overhydration are chest crackles, constant irritated cough, neck and/or hand vein engorgement, and dyspnea.
6. A simple formula for fluid replacement is the 3:1 rule; for every 1 ml of blood loss, 3 ml of crystalloid solution are needed to restore fluid volume. If hypotension persists despite 2 L of rapidly administered crystalloid solutions, blood transfusion is probably needed.
7. Colloids are used to treat shock when less fluid is needed.

8. Vasopressors are seldom used except to treat progressive shock and non-responsiveness to treatment for shock
9. Metabolic acidosis (lactic acidosis) frequently results from cellular damage and lack of fluid and nutrients to cells associated with severe hypovolemia and shock. In acidosis, the pH is below 7.35, HCO_3 is below 24 mEq/L, and base excess (BE) is less than −2.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Assess vital signs and report signs and symptoms that may indicate hypovolemia and shock, such as tachycardia, narrowing of the pulse pressure (20 mmHg or less is an indicator of shock), tachypnea, and cool, clammy skin.
- Obtain a drug history. Report if the patient is taking insulin, potassium-wasting diuretics, digoxin, steroid preparations, beta blockers, or calcium channel blockers.
- Assess the behavioral and neurologic status of the injured patient and/or the patient in shock. Irritability, apprehension, restlessness, and confusion are symptoms of a fluid volume deficit. Apprehension and restlessness are early symptoms of shock.
- Check urinary output. Less than 30 ml per hour or 200 ml per 8 hours may indicate fluid volume deficit or renal insufficiency. In severe shock, severe oliguria or anuria may occur.
- Check laboratory results, especially hemoglobin, hematocrit, arterial blood gases (ABG), serum electrolytes, BUN, and serum creatinine. Report abnormal findings.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to traumatic injury and shock
- *Excess Fluid Volume,* related to massive infusions of crystalloids

- *Impaired Tissue Perfusion* (renal, cardiopulmonary, cerebral, and peripheral), related to decreased blood volume and circulation secondary to hypovolemia and shock
- *Impaired Urinary Elimination,* less than body requirement, related to fluid volume deficit and shock

Interventions

- Monitor vital signs. Compare the vital signs with those taken on admission and report differences immediately.
- Check skin color and turgor. Note changes; pallor; gray, cold, clammy skin; and poor skin turgor are symptoms of shock and fluid volume deficit.
- Monitor IV therapy. Crystalloids are usually administered rapidly initially to hydrate the patient, increase blood pressure, and increase urine output. Normal saline and lactated Ringer's solutions are the crystalloids of choice.
- Auscultate the lungs for crackles. Overhydration from excessive fluids and rapid administration of IV fluids can cause pulmonary edema.
- Check for neck vein engorgement when overhydration is suspected.
- Check for pitting edema in the feet and legs. Weigh the patient daily to determine if there is fluid retention.
- Monitor central venous pressure (CVP) and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP), which are needed to adjust fluid balance. The norm for CVP is 5–12 cm/H_2O or 2–4 mmHg (+ to −2), and for PCWP is 8–15 mmHg. Keeping PCWP between 12 and 15 mmHg in shock conditions provides the filling pressure required for adequate stroke volume and cardiac output. If PCWP drops below 8 mmHg, administration of fluid is usually needed. If PCWP is greater than 15 mmHg, fluid restriction may be necessary.
- Monitor urine output. Hourly urine should be measured and if less than 30 ml/hr, the IV fluid rate should be increased as ordered. Do not forget to check for overhydration when pushing fluids, IV or orally.

- Report systolic blood pressure of 80 mm Hg or less immediately. Kidney damage can occur due to poor renal perfusion during hypotensive states.
- Monitor laboratory results. Compare laboratory test results with those taken on admission.
- Monitor ECG readings and report arrhythmias (ST–T changes), which may be indicative of a potassium imbalance or cardiac ischemia.
- Monitor arterial blood gases (ABGs). Metabolic acidosis frequently results from cellular damage due to severe hypovolemia and shock. In acidosis, the pH is below 7.35, HCO_3 is below 24 mEq/L, and base excess (BE) is less than −2. Respiratory acidosis may also result due to the lungs' inability to excrete carbon dioxide.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the cause of the shock has been controlled or eliminated.
- Verify that the patient remains free of shocklike signs and symptoms.
- Evaluate that the urine output is within normal range (600 to 1400 ml/per 24 hours).
- Evaluate the effects of IV therapy in controlling or alleviating shock.
- Determine that the laboratory results are within normal ranges.

Burns and Burn Shock

CHAPTER

18

INTRODUCTION

An estimated 2.4 million Americans seek medical care for burn injuries every year. Of these, 75,000 are hospitalized and usually in an acute care setting that specializes in the care of burn victims. Care delivered in the first few hours after a burn injury is crucial to the patient's survival and functional recovery. Recovery from a major burn injury occurs over a lifetime.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The pathophysiologic responses to a moderate or major burn are multisystem and occur in phases. The emergent/resuscitative phase (shock phase) represents the first 48 hours after a burn injury and is characterized by burn shock and massive edema (fluid accumulation) at the site of the burn injury. The acute-wound coverage phase (stage of diuresis) of a burn injury begins with the reversal of the shock state and is characterized by diuresis (fluid remobilization). The acute-wound coverage phase ends with wound closure and represents the longest phase of a burn injury that is managed in the acute care setting. The rehabilitation phase (convalescent phase) of a burn injury begins on admission and continues throughout life. Table 18-1 summarizes the physiologic changes and the major lab findings associated with a major burn in the emergent/resuscitative phase of a burn injury.

Table 18-1 Multisystem Responses to Burn Injury in the Emergent/Resuscitative Phase (0–48 hours)

System	Physiologic Change	Lab Findings
Cardiovascular	Increased capillary permeability in area of burn injury due to inflammatory response; loss of plasma protein and electrolytes; increase in interstitial fluid → massive edema with decrease in intravascular volume → hypovolemia → decreased cardiac output, hypotension, tachycardia → burn shock.	Increased serum osmolality secondary to loss of vascular fluid and hemoconcentration. Elevated hematocrit secondary to dehydration and a greater loss of liquid blood components compared to hemolysis. Electrolytes: Decreased serum sodium and calcium secondary to movement of fluid from vascular space to interstitial space (edema). Increased serum potassium secondary to release of intracellular potassium from damaged tissues at burn site.
Respiratory	Edema and obstruction of the upper airway secondary to direct burn injury; direct damage to pulmonary tissue from inhalation of noxious gases → broncho-constriction, pulmonary edema, and respiratory distress; respiratory distress secondary to circumferential chest burns that limit chest excursion.	Decreased PaO_2 secondary to pulmonary damage and/or respiratory distress. Increased carboxyhemoglobin levels secondary to carbon monoxide (by-product of combustion) poisoning.

(continues)

Table 18-1 Multisystem Responses to Burn Injury in the Emergent/Resuscitative Phase (0–48 hours) *(continued)*

System	Physiologic Change	Lab Findings
Renal	Decreased urine output secondary to decreased renal blood flow, increased secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and aldosterone; acute renal failure secondary to burn shock; hemomyoglobinuria secondary to massive full-thickness burns or electrical burn injury → acute renal failure.	Elevated urine specific gravity secondary to hypovolemia. Elevated blood, urea, nitrogen (BUN), and creatinine secondary to acute renal failure. Hemoglobinuria secondary to release of free hemoglobin (from hemolysis at burn site) from massive burn injury. Myoglobinuria secondary to release of myoglobin from massive burn injury.
Gastrointestinal	Paralytic ileus secondary to burn shock; hypermetabolic state.	Metabolic acidosis secondary to the loss of bicarbonate ions that accompanies sodium loss. Elevated glucose secondary to release of catecholamines (stress response to burn injury). Decreased protein secondary to loss of protein at burn injury site.
Musculoskeletal	Development of compartment syndrome secondary to circumferential burns of the extremities.	Elevated creatine kinase enzymes due to massive tissue damage from burn injury.
Neurologic	Changes in level of consciousness, orientation; headache, seizures secondary to shock, hypoxia, elevated carboxyhemoglobin levels (smoke inhalation injury) and/or electrolyte imbalances.	

ETIOLOGY

Most burns are preventable. The very young and the very old are at greater risk for experiencing and dying from a burn injury compared to young and middle-aged adults. Thermal burns are the most common type of burn injury and occur because of fires (e.g., motor vehicle crash), scalds (e.g., bath water), contact (e.g., iron), or steam (e.g., cooking). Chemical burns occur as a result of the ingestion of, contact with, or inhalation of acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid), bases (e.g., bleach), desiccants (drying agents) or vesicants (e.g., blistering gases). Electrical burns can result from exposure to high voltage (e.g., lightning) or low voltage (e.g., electrical outlet) energy sources. At times, neglect or abuse may account for a burn injury. Public education aimed at prevention (e.g., "Stop, Drop, Roll, Cool"; smoke detectors) has contributed to a decrease in the incidence and severity of burn injuries.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Classification of Burns

Burns are classified according to the depth of tissue involved. The skin consists of three layers: the epidermis, which is the outermost layer of skin; the dermis, known as the true skin and the location of the hair follicles, nerves, blood vessels, and sweat glands; and the subcutaneous tissue, which consists primarily of fatty tissue and blood vessels. Beneath the subcutaneous tissue lie the muscles and bones. Table 18-2 presents the characteristics of burns of varying depths.

Determination of Burn Size: Percentage of Body Surface Area (BSA) Burned

There are several methods used in non-burn care settings to estimate percentage of BSA burned. The palmar method uses the patient's palm (excluding fingers) to represent 1% of the total BSA. It is a quick method for estimating the percentage of total BSA burned in adults and children. The rule of nines is another easy method used to estimate total BSA burned. This method uses 9% or multiples of 9 in calculating the burned surface area. Figure 18-1 describes the rule of nines. The rule of nines is not appropriate for estimating burn size

Table 18-2 **Classification and Defining Characteristics of Burns**

	Superficial (first degree)	Superficial Partial-Thickness (first to second degree)	Deep Partial-Thickness (second degree)	Full-Thickness (third degree)
Depth	Epidermal layer only	Epidermal layer and upper layers of dermis	Epidermis and most of dermis	Epidermis, dermis, subcutaneous tissue; may extend to muscle and bone
Physical Characteristics	Erythema, no blisters or edema; blanching with pressure	Blister formation; when blister erupts, wound is moist, bright cherry red or mottled in color; positive blanching with pressure	Slightly moist to dry; dark red to pale in color; may see blanching with pressure	Dry, leathery, firm; pearly white to waxy to charred; no blanching with pressure
Degree of Pain	Mild to moderate pain	Very painful	Very painful	Is sensitive to touch
Healing Time	3–5 days; injured epidermis peels away leaving healed tissue	10–21 days with minimal scarring	21–35 days with no infection; if infected, wound will convert to a full-thickness wound	Requires grafting, which may take months for wound to heal
Possible Causes	Sunburn, scald	Contact or flash burn	Chemical or flame burn	Flame or electrical burn

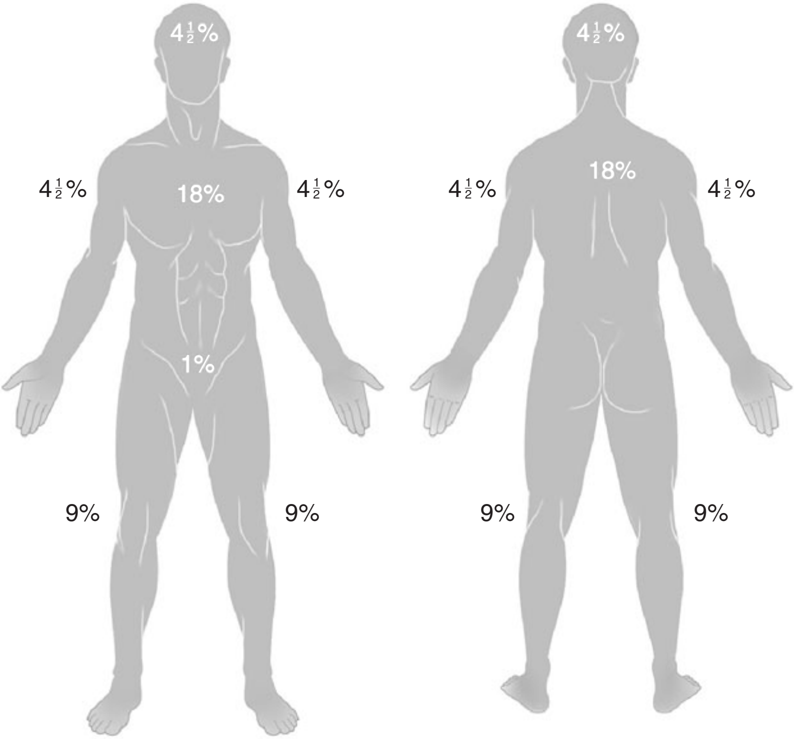


FIGURE 18-1 Rule of nines for estimation of body surface.

in children because a child's body has proportions that are different from an adult.

The Lund and Browder chart allows for the most accurate calculation of total BSA burned in children and adults. It accounts for changes in BSA across the life span as well as differences in burn severity (e.g., partial-thickness, full-thickness). This method is used to determine burn size in most burn care settings once the patient is stabilized.

Management of Burns

According to the American Burn Association (ABA), burn victims meeting any of the following criteria should be referred to a burn center for optimal care:

- Partial thickness burns covering >10% BSA
- Any third-degree burns

- Any patient with any percentage of burn having any of the following:
  - Potential or presence of airway or inhalation injury
  - Any percentage of burn involving the face, hands, feet, major joints, perineum, or genitalia
  - Any circumferential burn (e.g., burn surrounding an extremity)
  - Any chemical or electrical burn
  - Any patient with associated injuries (e.g., fractures) or pre-existing medical problems (e.g., diabetes) that would complicate care, prolong recovery, or endanger life
  - Any patient for whom neglect or abuse is suspected

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Patients with minor burns (e.g., superficial burns, partial-thickness burns <10% of BSA) are generally managed by a primary care provider or in the emergency department. These patients rarely require hospitalization. Management of these burn wounds is focused on cleanliness, prevention of infection, and comfort. The burn should be cleansed gently with soap and water 2–3 times a day and then covered with a topical agent (e.g., silver sulfadiazine). Patients should also receive tetanus toxoid. Finally, oral analgesics (e.g., acetaminophen, ibuprofen) may be used to control the pain or discomfort.

Patients sustaining a major burn are generally treated in a burn care center. Management of these patients involves a multidisciplinary team that includes physicians, nurses, physical/occupational therapists, respiratory therapists, social workers, nutritionists, and counselors.

In the emergent-resuscitative phase (0–48 hours) care is focused on the management of airway-breathing-circulation (ABCs), fluid resuscitation, maintenance of electrolyte balance, aggressive pain management, and early wound care. Management of the patient's airway and breathing may range from the application of supplemental oxygen via a nasal cannula to endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation. Circulation is maintained by appropriate fluid resuscitation to prevent and/or treat burn shock and maintain electrolyte balance. Fluid resuscitation begins for any patient who has sustained a second-degree burn >10% of BSA or any third-degree burn.

Several formulas have been developed for the initiation of fluid therapy in the emergent-resuscitative phase of burn care. The Parkland formula is the most common formula used in burn care centers. Table 18-3 describes how to calculate the intravenous fluid needs of a burn patient over the first 48 hours postburn. The end points of fluid resuscitation are urine output >1.0 ml/kg/hour and stable vital signs.

Pain management is achieved through the use of intravenous narcotics. Initial wound care includes washing the wound surface with mild soap or aseptic solutions. Next, the wound is debrided of all non-viable tissue and an antibacterial agent (e.g., mafenide acetate) is applied. Finally, the wound is covered with an occlusive dressing.

The onset of the acute-wound coverage phase is marked by diuresis (fluid remobilization). The edema that occurs in the first 48 hours of the burn injury begins to resolve as the fluid that has accumulated in the interstitial space shifts back into the intravascular space. Hemodilution (decreased

Table 18-3 Parkland Formula for Fluid Replacement during the Emergent-Resuscitative Phase of Burn Care

0–24 Hours	24–48 Hours
4 ml lactated Ringer's solution body weight in kilograms percentage of BSA burned = 24-h total fluid requirement 1. Administer $\frac{1}{2}$ of 24-h total over first 8 hrs postburn* 2. Administer $\frac{1}{4}$ of 24-h total over second 8 hrs 3. Administer $\frac{1}{4}$ of 24-h total over third 8 hrs	Dextrose and water Colloids (e.g., albumin) Titrate fluids down every 2 hrs to maintain urine output at >1 ml/kg/hour

*First hour of this time period starts at the time of burn injury, not time of admission. For example, if the patient arrived at the burn center 45 minutes after the burn injury, the initial fluids ($\frac{1}{2}$ of the 24-hour total) would need to be infused over $7\frac{1}{4}$ hours.

hematocrit) may occur as a result of this fluid shift. Anemia (decreased red blood cell count) from hemolysis (destruction of red blood cells) at the burn site may become evident at this time. Intravenous therapy is usually limited during this time as the patient may actually be at risk for overhydration (fluid overload).

The risk for infection and sepsis is greatest during this phase and wound care becomes paramount. Additional management goals during this phase include ongoing pain control, nutritional support, and psychosocial support. Wound care techniques vary based on the depth and location of the burn wound but generally includes wound debridement (excision of non-viable tissue) and the surgical grafting of donor skin or the placement of temporary wound coverings (e.g., Biobrane). Daily wound care involves wound assessment, and protection of the injured tissue, the granulation tissue, or new skin grafts. Antibiotics are ordered as needed and based on the results of wound cultures.

Wound care is often very painful and a source of great stress for patients. Patients are medicated before and during (as needed) wound care procedures with either intravenous or oral narcotics. Antianxiety, as well as complimentary therapies (e.g., music therapy) may be helpful in managing the patient's stress and pain.

Patients with major burns require a greater number of calories to compensate for the hypermetabolic state that accompanies the burn injury. Early enteral (preferred) or parenteral nutrition is initiated to assist with wound healing. Nutritional support is discontinued once patients are able to consume 80–90% of the required calories.

A major burn injury has a dramatic and permanent effect on the patient as well as the patient's family. Psychosocial support is critical and the patient and family will require assistance to deal with the complexities of the burn care and to adjust to the lifelong, psychological impact of the burn (e.g., change in appearance, inability to perform usual role functions).

The rehabilitation (convalescent) phase is the final phase of burn management and actually overlaps the first two phases. Starting at admission to the burn center, the goals for rehabilitation include the accomplishment of functional and cosmetic reconstruction, the achievement of the best functional status possible, and the return of the patient to a useful role in society. During this period, the patient is taught home exercises and may be fitted with pressure appliances (e.g., Jobst garment) to reduce scarring and/or splints to prevent contractures.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Obtain a thorough history of the burn injury, including time of injury, situation surrounding injury (e.g., child left alone in home), type of burn (e.g., thermal, electrical), and initial treatment measures.
- Obtain a complete health history from patient or patient's family.
- Complete a primary survey that includes an assessment of ABCs. Once ABCs are stabilized, obtain vital signs (blood pressure, pulse, respiratory rate, temperature) and a baseline weight.
- Perform a complete assessment of the burn injury including a determination of total BSA burned.
- Perform a complete head-to-toe assessment.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to fluid shift to the burn area
- *Risk for Imbalanced Fluid Volume,* related to fluid shift from burn area to vascular system and fluid resuscitation efforts
- *Acute Pain,* related to burn injury
- *Impaired Skin Integrity,* related to burn injury
- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to hypermetabolic state postburn injury
- *Risk for Impaired Gas Exchange,* related to inhalation injury, tracheal edema, bronchoconstriction
- *Risk for Infection,* related to burn wounds
- *Risk for Disturbed Body Image,* related to burn injury
- *Risk for Impaired Urinary Elimination,* related to hypovolemia

Interventions

Deficient Fluid Volume

- Monitor vital signs and level of consciousness every 15 minutes to every hour during the first 48 hours.
- Report signs of impending burn shock: tachycardia, hypotension, decreased peripheral pulses, altered level of consciousness, oliguria.
- Administer intravenous fluids using Parkland formula or as ordered by health provider.
- Monitor urine output every hour and urine specific gravity according to unit policy. Report urine output <1 ml/kg/hour.
- Monitor laboratory tests: electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, arterial blood gases, CBC and report abnormal findings or significant changes.
- Maintain strict intake and output, including daily weight.
- Replace electrolytes as ordered.
- Evaluate effectiveness of fluid resuscitation on tissue perfusion (e.g., urine output, mentation, peripheral pulses, blood pressure).

Risk for Imbalanced Fluid Volume

- Monitor vital signs every hour or more frequently if necessary.
- Monitor intake and output, including daily weight.
- Observe for signs of fluid overload: jugular vein distention, shortness of breath.
- Monitor breath sounds and report the presence of crackles and tachypnea.
- Monitor laboratory tests: electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, CBC, and report significant changes from baseline.
- Monitor urine output for increase or decrease in volume.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that fluid volume has been restored and maintained: vital signs are normal or at baseline for patient, positive skin turgor (in non-burn areas), urine output and urine specific gravity are within normal limits, mucous membranes are moist, laboratory values (e.g., electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, CBC) are within normal limits.
- Weight is stable.
- Breath sounds are clear or baseline for patient. Respiratory rate is within normal limits or baseline for patient.
- Patient is oriented to person, place, and time or at baseline orientation.

Gastrointestinal (GI) Surgical Interventions

CHAPTER

19

Erlinda Wheeler, DNS, RN

INTRODUCTION

Fluid and electrolyte changes may occur in a patient following a surgical procedure. Surgical interventions to correct gastrointestinal problems put the patient at greater risk for fluid and electrolyte disturbances than other types of surgical procedures. Diagnostic testing and preparation for gastrointestinal (GI) surgery may further increase the patient's risk for fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances. Postoperatively, the patient may be NPO (nothing by mouth), have a gastrointestinal drainage tube, and have delayed peristalsis, which further contribute to the imbalances. Pre-existing cardiopulmonary, endocrine, and renal conditions in conjunction with the use of diuretics, glucocorticoids, and insulin place the patient undergoing GI surgery at a high risk for fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances. Another high risk for fluid and electrolyte imbalance is a patient undergoing bariatric surgery. Assessment of these imbalances must begin preoperatively and continue postoperatively. Impairments in fluid volume status can occur rapidly; thus, astute assessment skills and timely interventions are essential to prevent or decrease potential complications. Accurate daily weight measurement is the easiest and most convenient way of determining fluid volume status.

ELECTROLYTE CONCENTRATION IN THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT

Electrolytes are most plentiful in the gastrointestinal tract. The concentration of sodium, potassium, and bicarbonate ions is higher in the intestines than in the stomach. Chloride ion concentration is approximately the same in the intestines and stomach. However, the hydrogen ion is in higher concentration in the stomach and the bicarbonate ion concentration is higher in the intestines. A decrease in the number of hydrogen ions in the stomach can cause metabolic alkalosis, while a loss of the number of bicarbonate ions in the intestines can result in metabolic acidosis. Table 19-1 lists the concentrations of electrolytes in the stomach and intestine.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY, ETIOLOGY, AND CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS RELATED TO GI PROBLEMS

Patients undergoing a minor surgical procedure usually do not experience fluid, electrolyte, and/or acid-base disturbances. Following a major surgical procedure, sodium and water may be retained and potassium may be lost. Many patients undergoing gastrointestinal surgery experience fluid and electrolyte imbalances prior to surgery that often put them in a debilitated state. Vomiting and/or diarrhea are common conditions that may indicate a gastrointestinal problem that calls for surgical intervention. When fluids are lost, important electrolytes such as sodium, chloride, potassium, bicarbonate (intestine), and hydrogen (stomach) are also lost. Treatment of these fluid and electrolyte imbalances must be considered both prior to surgery and in conjunction with the concurrent fluid losses during the procedure. Replacement of fluid and

Table 19-1 Concentration of Electrolytes in the Stomach and Intestine (mEq/L)

Area	Body Fluid	Na^+	K^+	Cl^-	HCO_3^-	
Stomach	Gastric juice	60.4	9.2	100*	0–14	H^{+}*
Small intestine	Intestinal juice	111.3*	20*	104.2*	31*	

*Electrolytes that are highly concentrated in these areas.

electrolyte losses is necessary before, during, and following surgery.

Prolonged vomiting and/or diarrhea results in severe fluid volume deficit. This condition can lead to decreased urine output, tachycardia, and hypertension. The fluid loss results in a hemoconcentration, causing the hemoglobin, hematocrit, and BUN levels to rise. Fluid balance and adequate urine output need to be restored prior to surgery. If a gastric tube is inserted prior to surgery, fluid and electrolytes are lost through GI suctioning. Serum sodium and potassium levels may be decreased, normal, or elevated. The sodium, chloride, and potassium are lost because of vomiting, diarrhea, or GI suctioning; however, if the fluid volume deficit is severe, the hemoconcentration causes elevated serum electrolyte levels. With GI disturbances, hydrogen and chloride ions are lost from the gastric juices, resulting in metabolic alkalosis. Frequently, potassium is also lost, so the imbalance is hypokalemic alkalosis. Table 19-2 lists the causes, pathophysiologic changes, and clinical manifestations related to GI disturbances.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Clinical management of fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances for GI surgical patients can occur both preoperatively and postoperatively. Preoperative and postoperative management are addressed separately.

Preoperative Management

Patients who are vomiting, have diarrhea, or are receiving gastric suctioning should be assessed for fluid and electrolyte imbalances. Fluid and electrolyte replacements are necessary prior to surgery to restore balance and maintain adequate urine output. Once signs, symptoms, and laboratory changes show fluid and electrolyte imbalances, identifying the sources of these imbalances is essential. Proper maintenance of body fluids and electrolytes decreases complications and promotes a speedy recovery period.

In healthy preoperative patients, long periods of being NPO prior to surgery are unnecessary. The usual practice is to keep the patient NPO after midnight prior to surgery to

Table 19-2 Pathophysiologic Changes and Clinical Manifestations Related to Gastrointestinal Problems

Etiology	Pathophysiologic Changes	Clinical Manifestations
Vomiting/Gastric suction	ICF and ECF loss Electrolyte loss (hydrogen, sodium, chloride, potassium, magnesium) Hypokalemic alkalosis (loss of hydrogen and potassium from the stomach)	Tachycardia, thready pulse, postural hypotension, dry mucous membrane, irritability, muscle weakness, fatigue *Laboratory changes:* Increased hemoglobin, hematocrit, and BUN Sodium, potassium may be increased, normal or decreased
Diarrhea	ICF and ICF loss Electrolytes loss (sodium, potassium, bicarbonate, magnesium) Metabolic acidosis (loss of bicarbonate)	Tachycardia, postural hypotension, muscle weakness, dry mucous membrane *Laboratory changes:* Increased hemoglobin, hematocrit, and BUN Sodium, potassium may be increased, normal or decreased

prevent pulmonary aspiration. As a result of modern anesthesia, vomiting and aspiration rarely occur. The newer recommendations by the American Society of Anesthesiology (ASA) is to allow clear liquids up to 2 hours before elective surgery, depending on the type of surgery and the institution's policies.

Postoperative Management

During surgery fluid loss due to bleeding and/or shifting of intravascular fluid to the surgical site (third-space fluid) can cause a decrease in the volume of circulating vascular fluid. A balanced electrolyte (salt) solution such as lactated Ringer's is usually administered during the intraoperative period. Administration of blood or blood products is dependent on the amount of blood loss and condition of the patient. Central venous pressure is monitored during the operative procedure in high-risk patients to determine fluid replacement.

Surgical procedures, anesthesia, trauma, and pain contribute to an increased release of the antidiuretic hormone (ADH). Excessive release of ADH is called the syndrome of inappropriate ADH or SIADH. Excess ADH release may persist for 12 to 24 hours after surgery. This causes fluid to be reabsorbed from the renal tubules decreasing urine output. Surgical procedures can also promote the increased secretion of aldosterone, resulting in sodium and fluid retention and potassium loss. Older adults and young children experiencing gastrointestinal surgical interventions are at the highest risk for the neuroendocrine response (ADH and aldosterone).

Gastric or intestinal intubation (tube passed into the stomach or intestines for suctioning purposes) is often performed before surgery. This alleviates vomiting due to an obstruction in the gastrointestinal tract or decompresses the stomach or bowel, or both, before and after the operative procedure.

Following abdominal surgery, a gastric or an intestinal tube is frequently inserted to remove secretions until peristalsis returns and to relieve abdominal distention. For gastric intubation, a Levine tube or Salem sump is inserted via the nose into the stomach. For an intestinal intubation, a Miller-Abbott tube or Cantor tube is inserted via the nose to the stomach and into the intestines. Intestinal tubes are longer than gastric tubes and they contain a small balloon filled with air or mercury that helps the tube move into the lower intestines. Urine output should be at least 30 ml/hr and preferably 30 to 50 ml/hr. Three liters or more of intravenous balanced salt solution are usually administered during the first 24 hours for fluid loss. Electrolytes are replaced according to the serum electrolyte levels.

Solid particles may accumulate and obstruct the gastrointestinal tubing. Irrigating the tube assures patency and proper drainage. Frequent irrigations using large amounts of water should be avoided to prevent electrolyte washout. Gastric tubes are irrigated at specific intervals with small amounts of normal saline solution to prevent electrolyte loss. Because suction removes fluids and electrolytes, oral fluid intake is restricted and parenteral therapy is initiated. Sips of water can alleviate the dryness in the mouth and lessen irritation in the throat, if allowed. However, one must be cautioned that water dilutes the electrolytes in the stomach and the suction then removes them.

A feeling of fullness, vomiting, and abdominal distention are signs and symptoms that peristalsis has not returned. Checking periodically for bowel sounds is necessary to determine when peristalsis has returned.

An H_2 receptor antagonist (H_2 blocker) such as cimetidine (Tagamet), ranitidine (Zantac), or famotidine (Pepcid) is commonly administered to patients with a gastric tube. This group of drugs suppresses hydrochloric acid (HCl) production, thus minimizing the amount of HCl removed by gastric suction.

Coughing and deep breathing help to keep the lungs inflated and promote effective gas exchange. Inadequate ventilation due to pain, narcotics, and anesthesia causes alveolar collapse and eventually leads to CO_2 retention (respiratory acidosis). Table 19-3 lists the clinical management for patients following GI surgery.

Table 19-3 Clinical Management for Pre- and Postoperative GI Surgery

Clinical Management	Rationale
Preoperative	
Fluid balance	Replace fluid loss. Three to five liters of balanced electrolyte solution (BES) may be necessary prior to surgery.
Electrolyte balance	Replace sodium and potassium as indicated by the serum electrolyte levels.
Urine output	Hourly urine output should be monitored. Urine output should not be less than 30 ml/hr.
Postoperative	
Fluid balance	Serum osmolality should be between 280 to 295 mOsm/kg. A decreased serum osmolality may indicate hemodilution and an elevated serum osmolality indicates hemoconcentration. At least 3 liters of BES daily is indicated. Check for overhydration if the IV solution runs too fast.

(continues)

Table 19-3 Clinical Management for Pre- and Postoperative GI Surgery —*continued*

Clinical Management	Rationale
Gastric or intestinal intubation	GI tubing should be patent. Plain water should not be used to maintain patency of tube; electrolytes are "washed out." Small amounts of saline solution or air may be indicated to maintain tube patency. After bariatric surgery, irrigating or manipulating the tube is not recommended because it can lead to disruption of the anastomosis or staple line.
Electrolyte balance	Sodium and potassium gains or losses can be determined by periodically checking the serum electrolyte levels. Signs and symptoms of electrolyte imbalance should be reported.
Acid-base balance	Deep breathing and coughing improve gas exchange and prevent CO_2 retention and respiratory acidosis. Metabolic alkalosis may result from gastric suctioning because of the loss of the hydrogen and chloride ions (hydrochloric acid).
Peristalsis	Bowel sounds in the four quadrants should be checked to determine if peristalsis has returned. The gastrointestinal tube is usually removed when peristalsis has returned.
Medications H_2 blockers	Cimetidine, ranitidine, or famotidine suppresses the production of hydrochloric acid. The amount of HCl removed by gastric suction is diminished.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS: GASTROINTESTINAL (GI) SURGICAL INTERVENTIONS

1. Check for fluid and electrolyte imbalances prior to any type of surgery, especially gastrointestinal surgery. Indicators of fluid volume deficit are tachycardia, postural hypotension, dry mucous membranes, and poor skin turgor.
2. Monitor urinary output per hour, every 8 hours, and per day prior to and following surgery. Urine output

may be decreased prior to surgery due to deficient fluid volume and may decrease following surgery because of SIADH.

3. Check laboratory test results for deficient fluid volume, i.e., increased hemoglobin, increased hematocrit, increased BUN (all caused by hemoconcentration), and increased/decreased serum potassium level, decreased/normal/elevated serum sodium level, decreased serum bicarbonate level (due to intestinal involvement).
4. Loss of hydrogen and chloride ions (hydrochloric acid) from gastric secretions causes metabolic alkalosis. Loss of bicarbonate from the intestinal secretions may cause metabolic acidosis.
5. The stomach and intestines are rich in electrolytes, especially sodium, chloride, potassium, hydrogen (stomach), and bicarbonate (intestine). Therefore, careful monitoring of electrolytes is essential.
6. Intravenous fluid replacements for fluid volume deficits are balanced electrolyte solutions (BES) such as lactated Ringer's or normal saline solution (0.9% NaCl).
7. Avoid administration of 5% dextrose and water continuously. This isotonic IV solution becomes hypotonic when dextrose is rapidly metabolized leaving only the water, which dilutes the electrolyte levels.
8. Following abdominal surgery, peristalsis is decreased or absent. GI intubation is usually prescribed. Bowel sounds should be monitored to determine the presence of peristalsis.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Prior to gastrointestinal surgery, assess for pre-existing health problems and medications that can further increase the potential risk for fluid and electrolyte disturbances. Uncorrected preoperative hypovolemia and anemia may increase the risk for fluid and electrolyte disturbances postoperatively.

- Assess the vital signs and use the results as a baseline for future comparisons. Deficient fluid volume may cause tachycardia, postural or orthostatic hypotension, and a decreased pulse pressure.
- Check intake, output, and weight. Urine output may decrease during a fluid volume deficit.
- Assess patient's bowel sounds. Note if peristalsis is present prior to surgery.
- Assess for deficient fluid volume. Check serum osmolality; deficient fluid volume is present if the level is elevated.
- Check laboratory test results. Note if hemoglobin, hematocrit, and BUN are elevated; these are indicators of deficient fluid volume.
- If a gastric tube is inserted, check that the tube is draining.
- In post–bariatric surgery patients, assess for possible anastomotic leak as manifested by increasing pain to back, shoulder, and abdomen; tachycardia; and restlessness.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to gastrointestinal loss, decreased fluid intake, and/or fluid volume shift
- *Pain,* related to trauma from abdominal surgery
- *Impaired Tissue Integrity,* related to surgery, decreased or absence of bowel sounds, and decreased GI motility (peristalsis)
- *Ineffective Airway Clearance,* related to pain, ineffective coughing, deep breathing, and viscous mucous secretions
- *Impaired Urinary Elimination,* related to deficient fluid volume secondary to gastrointestinal disturbance

Interventions

- Monitor vital signs every 4 hours or more frequently if the patient is unstable. Hypovolemia causes reflex tachycardia and postural hypotension.

- Assess mucous membranes and skin turgor. Poor skin turgor with dry, scaly skin and dry mucous membranes indicate deficient fluid volume.
- Monitor urinary output. Report if the output is less than 600 ml per day. Urine output of 750 ml plus per day is preferable.
- Monitor laboratory results. Note if the hemoglobin, hematocrit, and BUN are elevated, which is indicative of hemocentration resulting from, deficient fluid volume.
- Monitor serum electrolyte results. Serum potassium is usually decreased because of deficient fluid volume; however, potassium may be increased because of hemoconcentration due to deficient fluid volume.
- Encourage coughing and deep breathing to improve alveolar expansion and mobilize secretions.
- Monitor intravenous flow rate. IV solutions that run too fast or a health status that does not warrant a large volume of fluids may cause the patient to develop a fluid overload or overhydration.
- Monitor bowel sounds to determine the return of peristalsis.
- Check that the gastrointestinal tube is patent. Irrigate with normal saline solution or air according to the order.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the source of the ECFV problem has been eliminated or controlled.
- Evaluate the effectiveness of interventions (fluid and electrolyte replacement therapy, gastrointestinal intubation, medications, pain control measures, and so on) in balancing fluid needs and promoting comfort.
- Determine that the laboratory test results are within normal range.
- Monitor vital signs (particularly blood pressure and pulse rate) for stability.
- Evaluate renal function. Urine output is adequate and within normal volume.

CHAPTER 20

Neurotrauma: Increased Intracranial Pressure

Linda Laskowski-Jones, RN, MS, APRN, BC, CCRN, CEN

INTRODUCTION

Increased intracranial pressure (ICP) also called intracranial hypertension, is a life-threatening consequence of brain injury secondary to trauma as well as other causes (e.g., stroke, tumor, infection). Deleterious effects of increased ICP include permanent neurologic disability and death. The health professional is responsible for the ongoing monitoring of patients with neurological impairment to detect subtle changes in signs and symptoms that can foretell neurologic deterioration. Careful assessment and rapid intervention are essential to prevent adverse outcomes in this challenging patient population.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Intracranial pressure (ICP) is the pressure within the cranial cavity and comprises three components: brain tissue, cerebrospinal fluid, and blood. Because the normal skull is a rigid vault after the fontanels close in early childhood, any increase in one of these components without a decrease in another will cause ICP to rise. This relationship is known as the Monro-Kellie doctrine. The normal ICP range is 0–15 mm Hg. Monitoring devices allow for accurate measurement of ICP in hospitalized patients.

Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) is the pressure required to perfuse the brain and is equivalent to the mean arterial pressure (MAP) minus the intracranial pressure (ICP). The equation can be summarized as CPP = MAP – ICP. A normal CPP is 70–100 mm Hg; a CPP of less than 50 mm Hg is associated with cerebral ischemia and neuronal death. Interventions must address both MAP and ICP to preserve optimal cerebral blood flow.

Cerebral edema increases ICP. *Vasogenic edema*, an accumulation of *extracellular* fluid within the brain tissue, results from conditions that cause increased capillary permeability in cerebral vessels. There is a transudation of proteins and an influx of water from the extracellular space into the brain tissue. Causes of vasogenic edema include trauma, tumors, ischemia, and brain infections or abscesses.

Cytogenic edema results in increased *intracellular* water content from both increased capillary permeability and an inhibition of the sodium-potassium (Na-K) pump. This inhibition allows potassium to leave the cell and sodium chloride and water to enter the cell, causing the brain cells to swell. Causes of cytogenic edema include hypoxia from trauma or cerebral hemorrhage and hypo-osmolality.

Interstitial edema occurs from obstructive conditions such as hydrocephalus, brain tumors or infections that cause an excess of fluid to accumulate in the brain. Hydrocephalus occurs when there is a buildup of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in the ventricles from either an obstruction to flow (i.e., tumor or structural anomaly) or inadequate reabsorption. In subarachnoid hemorrhage, for example, blood cells block the arachnoid villi and prevent the reabsorption of CSF, leading to hydrocephalus and increased ICP.

Cerebral blood flow also affects ICP and is regulated by CO_2, hydrogen ion concentration, O_2, core body temperature and serum osmolality. Vasodilators and vasoconstrictors can increase or decrease blood flow to the brain and thus influence the concentration of fluids and electrolytes and their effects on vital body functions regulated by the brain. Hypercapnia (an increase in $PaCO_2$) is a potent cerebral vasodilator that increases ICP because more blood is held within the cerebral vasculature. Hyperventilation eliminates CO_2 and causes respiratory alkalosis (increased pH and decreased $PaCO_2$), which produces cerebral vasoconstriction and decreased ICP. However, prolonged or excessive hyperventilation is contraindicated since it leads to significant cerebral ischemia and can potentially worsen the patient's neurologic outcome. Conversely, hypoventilation causes excessive retention of CO_2 and respiratory acidosis (decreased pH and increased $PaCO_2$), which in turn causes ICP to rise.

Hypoxemia (a decrease in PaO_2) acts as a strong cerebral vasodilator and elevates ICP. Administering oxygen will produce mild vasoconstriction and can help lower ICP.

Fever, an elevation in core body temperature, raises ICP through an increase in cerebral metabolic rate. Similarly, a low core body temperature decreases cerebral metabolic rate and lowers ICP.

Serum osmolality refers to the number of formed particles in the serum and is indicative of serum concentration. Decreased serum osmolality indicates fluid overload and may result in increased ICP. Therefore, intravenous solutions that convert to hypotonic fluids such as dextrose and water are strictly avoided in the neurologically compromised patient. If dextrose and water are given intravenously, the dextrose is metabolized, and the free water that is left will be absorbed by the brain cells, leading to cerebral edema. Table 20-1 lists vasodilators and vasoconstrictors that influence blood flow to the brain.

Etiology

Typical causes of increased ICP include head trauma, intracranial tumor, intracranial hemorrhage or hematoma, stroke, infection and neurosurgery.

Table 20-1 **Factors That Affect Cerebral Blood Flow and ICP**

Vasodilators	Excess $CO_2 \rightarrow$ Increased $PaCO_2$ Hypoxemia Agitation Hypoventilation Excessive movement Pain Fever Shivering Hypotonic fluids Dextrose and water Medications: peripheral vasodilators
Vasoconstrictors	Low levels of CO_2 (potent vasoconstrictor) High levels of O_2 Medications: peripheral vasoconstrictors Hyperventilation

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Early signs of increased ICP include headache, restlessness, confusion, vomiting, visual disturbances, changes in pupillary size and response, and cranial nerve dysfunction. As ICP continues to rise, the patient can develop projectile vomiting, motor impairment (often unilateral), and further deterioration in level of consciousness.

Late signs and symptoms signify decompensation and loss of autoregulation (the compensatory alteration in the diameter of the intracranial blood vessels designed to maintain a constant blood flow during changes in cerebral perfusion pressure). These include decorticate (flexor) and decerebrate (extensor) posturing, and finally, total loss of responsiveness to pain. Vital sign abnormalities, known as Cushing's triad, occur when the patient exhibits bradycardia, a widened pulse pressure, and respiratory pattern abnormalities. Cushing's triad portends impending brain herniation. Systolic blood pressure is significantly elevated in an attempt to maintain cerebral perfusion in the presence of elevated ICP. If hypotension ensues at this juncture, blood flow to the brain ceases, and brain death can result if the condition is not rapidly reversed. Table 20-2 provides a summary of symptoms related to increasing intracranial pressure.

Table 20-2 Signs and Symptoms of Increasing Intracranial Pressure

Early Signs and Symptoms
- Headache
- Restlessness
- Confusion
- Nausea and vomiting
- Visual disturbances
- Pupillary changes (size and response)
- Localizes painful stimuli
- Cranial nerve dysfunction

Progressive Signs and Symptoms
- Projectile vomiting
- Muscle weakness (often unilateral)
- Increasing difficulty with arousal

Late Signs and Symptoms
- Decorticate and decerebrate posturing to painful stimuli
- Total loss of responsiveness
- Vital sign alterations
- Bradycardia
- Decreased pulse pressure
- Respiratory pattern changes
- Systolic pressure

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

Clinical management of intracranial hypertension includes promoting adequate ventilation, normal hemodynamic function, temperature control, and judicious fluid administration. Medication to control ICP or to support the function of other body systems is commonly prescribed. Activities which increase ICP, such as the Valsalva maneuver, must be prevented or limited. CSF fluid drainage devices may be inserted into the cranium by the neurosurgeon to remove excess CSF to lower ICP. In the case of a mass lesion (e.g., hematoma or tumor), surgery may be warranted as definitive treatment.

Maintenance of a clear airway, adequate ventilation, and normal hemodynamic function are top patient management priorities. Due to the deleterious vasodilator effects of high $PaCO_2$ as well as hypoxemia, patients are generally treated with mechanical ventilation to achieve a $PaCO_2$ target of 35 mm Hg and normal oxygenation (PaO_2). Excessive or prolonged hyperventilation is associated with cerebral vasoconstriction, ischemia, and potentially worsened outcomes. Hypotension decreases cerebral perfusion pressure and leads to cerebral ischemia and neuronal death. Interventions to support an adequate systemic blood pressure are critical.

Careful fluid and electrolyte management is essential. Fluids such as dextrose in water are contraindicated because they can cause cerebral edema. Isotonic fluids, such as normal saline, are administered to replace losses and preserve optimum organ function. Serum sodium (Na) and potassium (K) must be kept within their normal ranges to maintain normal serum osmolality.

One of the most common medications prescribed to lower ICP is mannitol. Mannitol is an osmotic diuretic given intravenously in typical doses of 0.5–1 g/kg of body weight through a filter needle. It acts by pulling intracellular fluid into the extracellular plasma to decrease ICP. Complications such as pulmonary edema, dehydration, and excessive hyperosmolality can result. In addition, as brain tissue shrinks from the osmotic diuretic effect, bleeding may recur when the hematoma becomes destabilized.

An essential component of the care plan is the prevention or limitation of activities and events that will raise ICP. Measures to relieve pain, control agitation, reduce fever, and avoid the Valsalva maneuver are key concepts in achieving this goal. Patients who can follow commands should be encouraged not to bend, stoop, lift, hold their breath, or strain during a bowel movement. The head of the bed should be elevated to 30–45 degrees, and the patient's head and neck should be midline with no flexion, extension, or rotation to promote venous outflow from the brain. Pharmacologic agents such as narcotic analgesics, sedatives, barbiturates, antipyretics, and stool softeners are typically prescribed. Patients with brain injuries are also prone to seizures which can further elevate ICP. Careful monitoring and anticonvulsant medications are indicated.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Assess neurological status frequently. A change in the patient's level of consciousness is considered a very significant sign of increased ICP.
- Assess vital signs frequently for bradycardia, alterations in respiratory rate or pattern, hyperthermia, systolic hypertension, and a widening pulse pressure.
- Assess fluid balance carefully by recording hourly intake and output and a daily patient weight; assess pulmonary sounds for crackles and heart sounds for an S3, as well as skin turgor for evidence of fluid retention.
- Assess serum osmolality, arterial blood gas, and serum electrolyte results. A decreased serum osmolality, an increased $PaCO_2$, and a decreased serum sodium all will produce an increase in ICP.
- Assess for the development of seizures as well as other sequelae of brain injury, including rhinorrhea, otorrhea, meningitis, and the potential for brain herniation.
- Assess the therapeutic effects of medications prescribed to reduce ICP.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Ineffective Tissue Perfusion (Cerebral),* related to increased ICP
- *Acute Confusion,* related to neurologic impairment
- *Ineffective Breathing Pattern,* related to increased ICP

- *Risk for Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to diuretic therapy
- *Risk for Injury,* related to potential for seizure activity.

Interventions

- Monitor for subtle changes in level of consciousness and vital signs. Compare with earlier findings to detect progression of increasing ICP.
- Assess motor, sensory, and cranial nerve function to evaluate the patient's improvement or deterioration in neurologic status.
- Monitor intake and output hourly; assess for dehydration and overhydration.
- Review laboratory results showing serum osmolality, urine specific gravity, electrolytes, and arterial blood gases for hydration status and factors that could exacerbate ICP.
- Maintain head of bed elevation of 30–45 degrees and keep head and body aligned to prevent cerebral venous congestion.
- Administer pharmacologic agents that help alleviate increases in ICP.
- Monitor for seizure activity. Administer anticonvulsants as prescribed.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Evaluate vital signs frequently for a return to a normal range.
- Monitor level of consciousness and cranial nerve function for a return to normal.
- Evaluate the effectiveness of interventions to reduce signs and symptoms of cerebral edema and increased ICP.
- Evaluate laboratory parameters indicative of fluid balance as well as intake and output for a return to a normal range.
- Evaluate the effectiveness of medications in reducing edema and promoting the desired fluid balance.
- Monitor blood gases for normal/stable range to ensure adequate oxygenation.

CHAPTER 21

Clinical Oncology

INTRODUCTION

Cancer is a disease caused by altered and uncontrolled cell growth. Cancer cells no longer look or function like normal cells and tissue. Cancer may occur in the form of a solid tumor (carcinoma or sarcoma) or may be present in the blood and bone marrow (leukemia) or in the lymph nodes (lymphoma). Solid tumor cells may spread from their original location to other tissue sites throughout the body. Fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances frequently occur due to the effects of the malignant cells and the side effects of cancer treatment. Chapter 21 discusses various fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base changes associated with cancer.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Cancer is a group of diseases characterized by abnormal and uncontrolled cell growth. Cancer cells are malignant (capable of invading normal tissues and spreading to distant sites). Fluid and electrolyte disturbances occur frequently in individuals with cancer because of the nature of the malignant cell growth and the effects of therapies used to control or eliminate cancer.

Cancer may begin as an individual solid tumor (carcinoma or sarcoma) or may arise throughout the body in the blood-forming cells of the bone marrow (leukemia) or in the lymph nodes and channels (lymphoma). Wherever the cancer begins, the malignant cells are more primitive (anaplastic) than normal cells. They may be undifferentiated, or may differentiate in abnormal and erratic ways.

This lack of normal differentiation causes some malignant cells to produce unusual proteins, antigens, hormones, enzymes, and other chemicals. In addition, because the malignant cells are abnormal, they do not respond to normal regulatory mechanisms such as hormonal and metabolic controls.

ETIOLOGY

The exact cause of cancer is not known. All cancers are believed to involve damage to one or more genes that control cell growth. This genetic damage may be caused by cigarette smoke, carcinogenic chemicals, radiation, viruses, diet, medications, and/or heredity. The cells with damaged growth control genes reproduce rapidly and independently, and further mutations occur as they reproduce. Sometimes the immune system recognizes and destroys the abnormal cells, but the cancer cells may evade or overwhelm the immune system and continue to grow and spread.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

One major consequence of the biochemical abnormalities seen in cancer cells is cachexia, a complex process manifested by anorexia, weight loss, wasting, weakness, anemia, fluid and electrolyte disturbances, and metabolism. Cachexia involves changes in the metabolism of proteins, lipids, and carbohydrates. For example, protein synthesis is diminished and insulin release is decreased. Glucose utilization is impaired also, and anaerobic metabolic pathways are used more often than the normal aerobic pathways. This produces higher than usual concentrations of lactic acid and may result in lactic acidosis.

Nitrogen transferred from body tissues to the tumor often leaves the patient in negative nitrogen balance. Similarly, cancer patients often retain sodium, with a total of 120% that of healthy individuals. Sodium, however, is concentrated in the tumor and the serum sodium may be low (hyponatremia). The patient with cancer may also experience a malabsorption syndrome, which involves inflammation, ulceration, decreased patency, and decreased secretions of the GI tract. These problems result in poor protein and fat absorption, which may compound fluid and electrolyte disturbances in cachexia.

A second major consequence of the primitive biochemical function of malignant cells is the abnormal secretion of hormones (ectopic hormone secretion). An example is bronchogenic cancer, which may secrete antidiuretic hormone (ADH), parathyroid hormone (PTH), insulin, or adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH). The resulting hormonal abnormalities may lead to fluid and electrolyte problems such as water intoxication (ICFVE), hyponatremia, hypokalemia, and hypophosphatemia. The most common of these hormonal abnormalities is the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of ADH (SIADH). This condition may develop gradually over weeks or months, or may be an acute development arising in days or even hours. Severe and/or acute instances of SIADH may be life threatening.

A third problem that commonly occurs in cancer patients in whom large numbers of malignant and normal cells are destroyed by radiotherapy or chemotherapy is tumor lysis syndrome. In this oncologic emergency, cell breakdown allows the intracellular contents to spill into the vascular space. Release of purine nucleic acids from cells results in an increase in serum uric acid (hyperuricemia), while release of electrolytes such as potassium and phosphorus causes several electrolyte imbalances. Uric acid is not easily dissolved in body fluids and is excreted primarily through the kidneys. Small increases above normal serum concentrations can cause uric acid precipitation in the renal tubules and collecting ducts and result in renal failure. This hyperuricemia, plus hyperkalemia, hyperphosphatemia, and hypocalcemia (because of the inverse relationship with phosphorus) may lead to life-threatening fluid and electrolyte complications.

A final major fluid and electrolyte problem that is frequently seen in patients with cancer is hypercalcemia. This metabolic disorder occurs when bone resorption (breakdown) exceeds bone formation, and the kidneys are unable to excrete the released calcium. Hypercalcemia is most common in patients with multiple myeloma, breast cancer, and lung cancer, usually occurring when tumors are advanced and difficult to treat. The majority of patients with cancer-related hypercalcemia have skeletal metastasis.

Less common fluid and electrolyte problems seen in cancer include lactic acidosis and hyperkalemia, which may occur during periods of uncontrolled malignant cell growth. Lactic acidosis is caused by rapidly growing malignant cells that metabolize excess glucose using anaerobic metabolism and produce lactic acid as a by-product. The resulting acidosis causes a compensatory shift of extracellular hydrogen ions and intracellular potassium. An even less common fluid balance problem can develop when cancer is treated with biologic therapy. This treatment causes increased vascular permeability leading to vascular leak syndrome. Severe edema and cardiovascular hypotension may result.

Table 21-1 lists the fluid and electrolyte disturbances commonly associated with cancer and cancer therapy. Also given are abnormal serum levels and the rationale for their occurrence.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

The fluid and electrolyte disturbances listed in Table 21-1 can develop in almost any individual with cancer at any time during diagnosis, treatment, recovery, or end stages of the disease. Fluid and electrolyte problems are *most common,* however, with the following clinical conditions:

1. *Cachexia.* Severe anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and/or diarrhea combine with metabolic changes to cause numerous fluid and electrolyte imbalances.
2. *Ectopic hormone production.* Abnormal hormones (most commonly ADH) are secreted ectopically by the tumors, resulting in sodium and fluid abnormalities.
3. *Tumor lysis syndrome.* Large numbers of cells are destroyed by chemotherapy and/or radiation, causing changes in potassium, phosphorus, and uric acid levels.
4. *Hypercalcemia.* Rapid, widespread cell growth, usually with skeletal metastasis, disrupts calcium balance.

Cachexia

Cachexia may occur because of the effects of the malignancy itself and/or be caused by chemotherapy, radiotherapy, biologic therapy, or hormonal therapy. Contributing problems include anorexia, nausea, diarrhea, draining wounds, and

Table 21-1 Fluid and Electrolyte Disturbance in Cancer and Cancer Therapy

Fluid/Electrolyte Disturbance	Commonly Associated Cancer and Cancer Therapy	Defining Characteristics	Rationale/Comments
Hypercalcemia	Breast cancer, multiple myeloma, ovarian cancer, pancreatic cancer, leukemia, lymphoma, lung cancer, bladder cancer, kidney cancer, head and neck cancer, and prostate cancer.	Serum calcium > 11 mg/dl	Hypercalcemia occurs in 10–20% of all cancer patients and in 40–50% of those with metastatic breast cancer or multiple myeloma. It is caused by bone destruction by metastatic tumors, elevated parathyroid hormone (PTH) levels related to some tumors, and elevated prostaglandin and osteoclast activating factor (OAF). Prolonged immobility is also a causative factor.
Hyponatremia (usually associated with dehydration)	Lung cancer, pancreatic cancer, multiple myeloma, head and neck cancer, stomach cancer, brain cancer, colon cancer, ovarian cancer, and prostate cancer, aggressive diuretic therapy.	Serum sodium < 135 mEq/L	Hyponatremia is caused by liver, thyroid, and adrenal insufficiencies; renal failure, and heart failure. A condition known as cerebral salt wasting is caused by some intracranial neoplasms. In this condition, the neural innervation to the brain is altered. The result is the kidneys' inability to conserve sodium.

Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH)	Lung cancer, pancreatic cancer, brain cancer, ovarian cancer, colon, cancer, sarcoma, leukemia, prostate cancer, Hodgkin's disease, and other lymphomas, high dose chemotherapy.	Serum sodium < 130 mEq/L, serum osmolality < 280 mOsm/kg	SIADH occurs because of increased release of ADH from posterior pituitary or ectopically from neoplastic tumors. The posterior pituitary then becomes non-receptive to the usual feedback control mechanism.
Hyperuricemia	Leukemias, lymphomas, multiple myeloma, any cancer treated aggressively with chemotherapy or radiation.	Serum uric acid > 8.0 mg/dl, uric acid crystals in urine	Breakdown of large numbers of cells causes release of uric acid into the bloodstream (tumor lysis syndrome). Precipitation of uric acid in the kidneys results in gouty nephropathy, acute hyperuricemic nephropathy, and eventual renal failure. First signs of hyperuricemic renal failure may be nausea, vomiting, and lethargy. This type of renal failure may or may not be reversible. Symptoms of hyperuricemia include hematuria, flank pain, nausea, vomiting, and symptoms of renal failure.
Hypokalemia	Colon cancer, multiple myeloma, Hodgkin's disease, pancreatic cancer, stomach cancer, thyroid cancer, adrenal adenoma, adrenal hyperplasia tumors, and cancers that secrete adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) ectopically.	Serum potassium < 3.5 mEq/L	Dietary intake of potassium is deficient when the patient is anorexic, vomiting, or NPO Excessive diarrhea that leads to rapid potassium depletion occurs with many GI tumors, chemotherapy, radiotherapy to the lower abdomen, and antibiotic therapy.

(continues)

Table 21-1 Fluid and Electrolyte Disturbance in Cancer and Cancer Therapy—*continued*

Fluid/Electrolyte Disturbance	Commonly Associated Cancer and Cancer Therapy	Defining Characteristics	Rationale/Comments
Hypokalemia *(continued)*			Excessive urinary excretion may be caused by diuretics, hypercalcemia, hypomagnesemia, antibiotic therapy, ectopic ACTH secretion, nephrotoxicity due to chemotherapy or radiotherapy, and renal tubular necrosis due to multiple myeloma, and acute blast crisis, Ileostomy, colostomy, fistulas, and the diuretic phase of renal failure also contribute to hypokalemia.
Hypomagnesemia	Lung cancer, especially oat cell, ovarian cancer, and testicular cancer, total parenteral nutrition (TPN), some chemotherapy	Serum magnesium < 1.5 mEq/L	Low magnesium level occurs most often in patients with severe diarrhea, vomiting, malabsorption syndrome, cachexia, ADH secretion, or renal disease.
Lactic acidosis	Hodgkin's disease, lymphoma, leukemia, lymphosarcoma, and lung cancer (especially oat cell with liver metastasis)	Arterial blood pH < 7.35, HCO_3 < 24 mEq/L, serum CO_2 < 22 mEq/L	Lactic acidosis (metabolic acidosis) occurs because rapidly growing malignant cells utilize large amounts of glucose. When the glucose is metabolized by the anaerobic pathway (glycolysis), pyruvic acid is the end product. When hypoxia exists, pyruvate is converted to lactic acid. Elevated serum lactic acid concentrations may exceed the liver's ability to metabolize and the kidneys' to excrete.

Lactic acidosis	Hodgkin’s disease, lymphoma, leukemia, lymphosarcoma, and lung cancer (especially oat cell with liver metastasis).	Arterial blood pH < 7.35, HCO_3 < 24 mEq/L, serum CO_2 < 22 mEq/L	Lactic acidosis (metabolic acidosis) occurs because rapidly growing malignant cells utilize large amounts of glucose. When the glucose is metabolized by the anaerobic pathway (glycolysis), pyruvic acid is the end product. When hypoxia exists, pyruvate is converted to lactic acid. Elevated serum lactic acid concentrations may exceed the liver’s ability to metabolize and the kidneys’ to excrete.
Hyperkalemia	Hodgkins’ disease, lymphoma, leukemia, lung cancer (especially oat cell), and liver metastasis, aggressive chemotherapy.	Serum potassium > 5.3 mEq/L	Intracellular-extracellular redistribution occurs during respiratory and metabolic acidosis (including lactic acidosis). Extracellular hydrogen ions shift into the cell in an attempt to raise serum pH. Intracellular potassium ions then shift out of the cell to compensate. Lysis of large numbers of malignant and normal cells during radiotherapy and chemotherapy causes the release of massive amounts of potassium from destroyed cells (tumor lysis syndrome). Renal failure and hypoaldosteronism can cause renal retention of potassium.

(continues)

Table 21-1 Fluid and Electrolyte Disturbance in Cancer and Cancer Therapy—*continued*

Fluid/Electrolyte Disturbance	Commonly Associated Cancer and Cancer Therapy	Defining Characteristics	Rationale/Comments
Hypophosphatemia	Leukemia, multiple myeloma, PTH-secreting tumors; total parenteral nutrition (TPN) (hyperalimentation).	Serum phosphorus < 2.5 mg/dl	Hypophosphatemia occurs with cancers that contain and secrete PTH (PTH normally regulates the rate of phosphorus reabsorption by the kidneys). Aggressive hyperalimentation/parenteral nutrition often induces hypophosphatemia because the phosphorus influx into cells is accelerated during carbohydrate metabolism. Malabsorption, sepsis, diuretics, corticosteroids, and thrombocytopenia are other contributing factors. Symptoms of hypophosphatemia are fatigue, weakness, anorexia, irritability, paresthesia, seizures, and coma.
Decreased vascular volume (shift to the third space)	Liver cancer, including liver metastasis, stomach cancer, pancreatic cancer, colon cancer, and head and neck cancer.	Serum albumin < 3.2 g/dl, decreased BP, increased H & H, increased BUN	Decreased vascular volume occurs when serum protein is decreased when tumor cells exude fluids, or when vascular permeability is increased by infection: Protein depletion occurs with anorexia/cachexia, nausea, and vomiting due to disease or therapy or to decreased protein synthesis in cancer patients. Some individuals with cancer have increased loss of protein via the GI tract,

			elevated basal metabolic rate due to disease or infection results in accelerated protein loss. Decreased serum protein leads to decreased blood volume and a drop in blood pressure. The patient may have ample or excess extracellular fluid but is unable to retain it within the vascular space. Without treatment, cardiovascular failure and death result.
Hypocalcemia/ hyperphosphatemia	Leukemia, lymphoma, and multiple myeloma; aggressive, chemotherapy and radiotherapy.	Serum calcium < 9 mg/dl, serum phosphorus > 4.5 mg/dl	Rapid cell lysis causes the release of large amounts of phosphate. Immature blast cells contain up to four times more phosphate than mature lymphocytes. The rise in serum phosphorus then causes a drop in serum calcium. Renal failure may result from precipitation of calcium phosphate in the kidneys. Symptoms include oliguria, anuria, azotemia, and tetany.

fistulas. The most frequently encountered fluid and electrolyte disturbances are hypomagnesemia, hypokalemia, and decreased vascular volume.

Anorexia, nausea, and vomiting, decreased protein intake, diarrhea, malabsorption syndrome, and wound drainage increase protein loss in the cancer patient. Low protein levels lead to decreased oncotic pressure (colloidal osmotic pressure) in the vascular system and result in decreased vascular volume. The basic goal of therapy in cancer patients with decreased vascular volume is to maintain blood pressure. Whole blood, packed red blood cells (RBCs), or albumin may be given to increase plasma oncotic pressure to restore fluid balance in the vascular space.

Hypomagnesemia may develop due to decreased intake caused by anorexia and vomiting or increased magnesium concentration in malignant cells. In addition, some pharmacologic agents cause renal magnesium wasting. Hypokalemia is produced by decreased intake due to nausea or anorexia and increased loss by vomiting. Carefully prescribed and monitored hyperalimentation (TPN) can correct hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia and improve vascular volume.

Ectopic Hormone Production

Any malignant cells may secrete hormones ectopically (abnormally). The most commonly involved cancers and hormones are those listed in Table 21-2. Acute complications caused by ectopic hormone secretions in cancer patients include fluid and electrolyte imbalances, which are often severe and may result in death. The primary goal of therapy in cancer patients with ectopic hormone secretion is the eradication or reduction of the hormone-secreting tumor. If surgery, radiotherapy, and/or chemotherapy do not eliminate the tumor and control the symptoms, long-term pharmacologic therapy may be ordered.

When malignant cells secrete antidiuretic hormone (ADH) ectopically, the cancer patient may develop the syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIADH). SIADH involves decreased ability to secrete dilute urine, fluid retention, and dilutional hyponatremia. SIADH may be caused or exacerbated by chemotherapeutic agents. Treatment of SIADH varies with the severity of the symptoms and the rapidity with which the condition develops.

Table 21-2 Hormones Commonly Secreted Ectopically by Malignant Cells

Hormones	Type of Cancer	Common Associated Problems
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	Lung (oat cell) Pancreas Hodgkin's disease Prostate gland Sarcoma	SIADH Hyponatremia Hypomagnesemia
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Lung Leukemia Multiple myeloma Breast	Hypercalcemia Hypophosphatemia Hypomagnesemia
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)	Lung (oat cell and non-oat cell)	Hypokalemia
Osteoclast activating factor (OAF)	Multiple myeloma Lymphoma	Hypercalcemia
Prostaglandins (E series)	Breast Kidney Pancreas	Hypercalcemia

Mild SIADH

- Restriction of water and fluid intake to 500–1000 ml/day.

Moderate to severe SIADH

- Saline infusion of 3–5% to restore serum sodium.
- Demeclocycline to interfere with the action of ADH on renal tubules.
- Surgical removal of tumor that is producing ADH.

Extreme care should be taken when hypertonic saline (3–5% saline solution) is administered because it can raise the serum sodium level too rapidly and cause shrinkage of CNS neurons and neurologic dysfunction.

Tumor Lysis Syndrome

Following the destruction of large numbers of cells by high-dose chemotherapy or radiotherapy, usually in leukemia or lymphoma, vast numbers of intracellular electrolytes enter the bloodstream. The cancer patient can develop hyperuricemia, hyperkalemia, hypophosphatemia, and/or hypocalcemia. Renal failure or cardiac arrest may result. Drugs used for the management of these fluid and electrolyte imbalances include:

- Intravenous hydration to maintain urine output at 100 ml/hour or more.
- Allopurinol to decrease uric acid.
- Calcium gluconate IV infusion for hypocalcemia.
- Sodium bicarbonate to alkalinize the urine in hyperuricemia (uric acid is less soluble in acid urine).
- Diuretics such as furosemide (Lasix) or mannitol to promote excretion of uric acid and phosphates and minimize fluid retention.

Hypercalcemia

Individuals with cancer may experience severe electrolyte disturbances whenever rapid and widespread malignant cell growth occurs. The uncontrolled cell growth is marked by metastatic lesions (in carcinomas or sarcomas) or by multiple organ infiltration (in leukemias and lymphomas).

Metastatic lesions of the bone frequently cause hypercalcemia, which may develop rapidly and become severe very quickly. When an acute hypercalcemic crisis occurs, the mortality rate is extremely high (up to 50%). Management of mild and moderate hypercalcemia (<13 mg/dl) involves IV normal saline (NaCl 0.9%) to achieve adequate hydration and promote calcium excretion. For severe hypercalcemia the following drugs may be used:

- Furosemide (Lasix) to decrease tubular reabsorption of calcium.
- Steroids to increase calcium excretion.
- Calcitonin to inhibit bone resorption.
- Mithramycin to inhibit bone resorption.
- Biphosphonates to inhibit calcium release from bone.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT

Assessment

- Fluid and electrolyte balance must be monitored carefully in patients with any type of cancer and at all stages during diagnosis and treatment. Assessment is particularly important in patients during and immediately after treatment with chemotherapy, radiation, surgery, biologic therapy, or bone marrow transplantation.
- Assess for anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, edema, weight loss or gain, neurological status, fatigue, and activity levels. Laboratory values of sodium, calcium, potassium, magnesium, and phosphorus should be checked and reported frequently. Arterial blood pH, serum albumin, and serum uric acid should also be assessed as indicated.
- Assessment of fluid and electrolyte disturbances are particularly difficult in individuals with cancer because symptoms of these disturbances (e.g., anorexia, vomiting, fatigue, diarrhea, and muscle weakness) mimic those of treatments, systemic effects of tumor growth, psychological responses to cancer, or general deterioration in advanced cancer.

Many fluid and electrolyte conditions in cancer patients can be prevented, reversed, or controlled. Table 21-3 provides an assessment guide for fluid and electrolyte imbalances in cancer patients. The blanks in the assessment column should be completed with the appropriate value, or checked to indicate presence of a sign or symptom. The comments column may be used for additional information or clarification.

Table 21-3 Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance

Type of Primary Cancer: ______________________________

Stage: Metastasis

Observation	Assessment	Comments
Vital signs	Temperature	________
	Pulse	________
	Respiration	________
	Blood pressure	________
		________
	Heart sounds	________
	Peripheral pulses	________
Intake	PO/NG	________
	IV infusions	________
	Amounts	________
Output	Amounts	________
	Specific gravity	________
	Urine osmolality	________
	Polyuria	________
	Oliguria	________
	Anuria	________
Weight and skin changes	Daily weight	________
	Skin turgor	________
	Skin temperature	________
	Edema	________
	Ascites	________
GI changes	Anorexia	________
	Nausea	________
	Vomiting	________
	Diarrhea	________
	Constipation	________
	Bowel sounds	________
	Abdominal distention	________
	Abdominal cramps	________
	Fistula	________
	GI suction	________
	Draining tube	________
Respiratory changes	Dyspnea	________
	Hyperpnea	________
	Chest crackles	________
	Sputum	________

(continues)

Table 21-3 Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance—*continued*

Type of Primary Cancer: ______________________________

Stage: Metastasis

Observation	**Assessment**	**Comments**
Neurologic changes	Headache	__________
	LOC changes	__________
	Irritability	__________
	Disorientation	__________
	Confusion	__________
	Paresthesia	__________
	Altered perception	__________
	Seizures	__________
	Coma	__________
State of being	Alert	__________
	Fatigue	__________
	Lethargic	__________
Muscular changes	Muscle weakness	__________
	Hyporeflexia	__________
	Hyperreflexia	__________
	Muscle cramps	__________
	Twitching	__________
	Tetany signs	__________
Body chemistry and hematology changes	Hemoglobin	__________
	Hematocrit	__________
	Platelets	__________
	WBCs	__________
	Differential	__________
	Electrolytes:	
	Potassium	__________
	Sodium	__________
	Calcium	__________
	Magnesium	__________
	Chloride	__________
	Phosphorus	__________
	Serum osmolality	__________
	Protein	__________
	Albumin	__________
	BUN	__________
	Creatinine	__________
	Uric acid	__________

(continues)

Table 21-3 Assessment of Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance—*continued*

Type of Primary Cancer: ____________________

Stage: Metastasis

Observation	Assessment	Comments
	Lactate	________
	ABGs:	
	pH	________
	PaO_2	________
	$PaCO_2$	________
	HCO_3	________
Chemotherapy	Drug	________
	Dose, route	________
	Side effects	________
Radiotherapy	Dose	________
	Times	________
	Target area	________
Biologic therapy	Type	________
	Dose	________
	Times	________

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to decreased serum protein, excessive sodium excretion, and/or decreased concentrating ability of renal tubules.
- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to anorexia, vomiting, diarrhea, wound drainage, and/or malabsorption.
- *Excess Fluid Volume,* related to dilutional hyponatremia and increased levels of ADH.
- *Risk for Injury*, related to bone demineralization or alterations in potassium balance.
- *Decreased Cardiac Output,* related to increased serum potassium or calcium.
- *Disturbed Thought Processes,* related to altered electrolyte balance.
- *Impaired Urinary Elimination,* related to cell lysis and buildup of uric acid in the nephron.

Interventions

Deficient Fluid Volume

- Check frequently for signs and symptoms of dehydration. Signs such as rapid pulse and dry mucous membranes may be the first indication of deficient fluid volume.
- Check BP in supine and standing positions. Report a fall of more than 10 mm Hg diastolic. A drop of this extent may signal marked dehydration.
- Monitor intake and output, weight, pulse rate, serum electrolytes, and serum protein. These signs may be early indicators of deficient fluid volume.
- Maintain adequate hydration, with oral fluids if appropriate or with IV fluids as ordered. Fluids are necessary to replace or maintain the serum volume.
- Administer albumin, packed cells, whole blood, or other blood products as ordered. Albumin helps to maintain the colloid osmotic pressure of the blood and increase plasma volume. Administration of blood products helps to raise blood pressure and improve renal flow.
- Maintain or improve nutritional status, especially protein intake. An adequate protein intake is essential to maintain normal colloidal pressure and retain fluid in the vascular space.

Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements

- Assess current and normal height and weight, diet history, caloric intake, anthropometric measurements, and physiologic factors such as difficulty swallowing or anorexia. This assessment facilitates identification of individuals with existing nutritional abnormalities or at high risk for nutritional problems. These data are also required to plan and monitor nutritional interventions.
- Monitor serum albumin, creatinine, lymphocyte count, and nitrogen balance. These values are the most likely to be affected in malnutrition related to cancer.
- Enhance oral nutrition by encouraging a high-protein, high-calorie diet fortified with commercial supplements. If adequate nutrition can be obtained orally, this route is safer and easier for the patient.

- Encourage small, frequent feedings of calorie-dense and nonacidic foods. Cancer patients often experience an early sensation of fullness, so feedings should be small and spaced apart and should avoid empty calories.
- Administer medications to control or reduce nausea, vomiting, mouth pain, and diarrhea as needed. Medications that reduce these symptoms increase the patient's potential intake and absorption of nutrients. Medications such as megestrol acetate or drabinol may be ordered to stimulate appetite.
- Ease swallowing by implementing measures to relieve dryness of mucous membranes and/or reduce severity of stomatitis, such as oral hygiene, mouth rinses, and lubricants.
- Compensate for taste alterations by substituting fish, chicken, eggs, and cheese for meats; adding extra sweetness or flavorings. Reduce exposure to cooking smells as much as possible.
- If oral nutrition is inadequate, administer tube feedings through nasogastric, gastrostomy, or jejunostomy tube. The enteral route for provision of nutrition is preferable to the parenteral route.
- Assist in administration and monitoring of total parenteral nutrition if needed. The parenteral route for administering nutritional support is the least preferable due to the risk of complications, expense, and potential difficulties.

Excess Fluid Volume

- Monitor intake and output, urine specific gravity, breath sounds, heart sounds, peripheral pulses, edema, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, weakness, and fatigue. Heart failure, weakness, nausea, and vomiting can occur due to hyponatremia and water toxicity.
- Monitor serum electrolytes and notify physician of Na <120 mEq/L, K <3.5 mEq/L, Ca <8.5 mg/dl, or serum osmolality <280 mOsm/kg. Symptoms of hyponatremia and water toxicity begin near these levels.
- Monitor and report changes in LOC. Irritability, restlessness, confusion, convulsions, and unresponsiveness can occur. Place on seizure precautions if Na <110–120 mEq/L.

- Report weight gain of greater than 2 kg/day. Sudden weight gain may indicate fluid retention.
- Restrict fluid intake as ordered. Mild cases of SIADH may be controlled simply by restricting fluid intake.
- Administer hypertonic saline (3–5%) IV and drugs (demeclocycline) as ordered.
- Careful attention must be paid to fluid balance if drugs such as vincristine or cyclophosphamide are prescribed. Fluid restrictions worsen the risk of side effects for these drugs. Decrease dosage or discontinue the vincristine and cyclophosphamide chemotherapy, if ordered.

Risk for Injury

- Check for fatigue, apathy, depression, confusion, and weakness. These are neuromuscular symptoms of hypercalcemia and hypokalemia.
- Institute safety precautions to prevent accidental falls. Fractures are more likely because of bone demineralization and mental changes.
- Report new or worsening metastasis, especially bone metastasis. Hypercalcemia is more likely in the presence of bony metastasis, and can result in pathologic fractures. Hypokalemia can be caused by vomiting, diarrhea, nephrotoxicity, and hypercalcemia.

Decreased Cardiac Output

- Monitor potassium levels frequently, especially during and after aggressive radiotherapy or chemotherapy, when hyperkalemia is most likely. Report potassium levels above 5.3 mEq/L. Cardiac dysrhythmias become more common as serum potassium increases above this level.
- Monitor serum calcium levels and notify the health care provider of calcium levels above 11 mg/dl. Elevated serum calcium is most common in the presence of skeletal metastasis and can lead to cardiac arrest.
- Carefully monitor cardiac rhythm and EKG pattern and report abnormalities. Peaked T waves are an early sign of hyperkalemia. Tachycardia, bradycardia, heart block, and cardiac arrest may follow. Calcium gluconate

IVP may be ordered if EKG changes are present in hyperkalemia.

- Administer furosemide (Lasix) or other diuretics to promote excretion of potassium or to decrease tubular reabsorption of calcium. Insulin may be ordered to shift potassium into the cells.
- Administer Kayexalate in sorbitol PO or by enema to correct hyperkalemia. These agents cause a sodium-potassium ion exchange resulting in the excretion of excess potassium.
- Give calcitonin, mithramycin, biphosphates, steroids, or other medications as ordered to reduce serum calcium levels.

Disturbed Thought Processes

- Assess fluid and electrolyte balance frequently, particularly during periods of uncontrolled cell growth, tumor lysis, cachexia, ectopic hormone secretion, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy. Fluid and electrolyte disturbances are most likely in cancer patients at these times, and many of these abnormalities (hypercalcemia, hypokalemia, hyponatremia, hypomagnesemia, etc.) can influence neuromuscular function.
- Administer agents to correct acidosis and/or electrolyte imbalance. Medicate for nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, or cardiac dysrhythmias as ordered. Control of these processes is necessary to prevent progression of neurological problems.
- Reorient to time, place, and person if confusion or disorientation is apparent. Impairment of thought processes can cause increased anxiety for the patient and family.
- Check LOC, respiratory status, cardiac rhythm, renal function, and blood gases and report changes. Changes in these parameters may signal worsening of the fluid and electrolyte disturbance.

Impaired Urinary Elimination

- Administer intravenous hydration beginning 24 to 48 hours before treatment and at least 72 hours after treatment is completed. D_5 W/0.45 NS with $NaHCO_3$ mEq/L is usually recommended to alkalinize the urine. A pH of greater than 6 increases the solubility of uric acid.

- Monitor urinary output and urine color, clarity, hematuria, and specific gravity. It is particularly important to monitor these factors during and after chemotherapy, particularly in leukemia and lymphoma.
- Check for flank pain and medicate appropriately. Uric acid renal stones may cause acute, severe pain.
- Report signs of renal failure. Obstruction of urine flow by renal calculi can cause kidney damage and eventual renal failure.
- Report serum uric acid >8.0 mg/dl, urinary output <30 ml per hour, BUN >25 mg/dl, creatinine >1.2 mg/dl, or sudden weight gain with elevated BP, lung congestion, or edema.
- Administer allopurinol 100 mg/m^2 every 8 hours PO. Allopurinol reduces uric acid concentration by blocking conversion of uric acid precursors into uric acid.
- Teach the patient and family dietary modifications to increase the alkalinity of the urine. Uric acid is more likely to precipitate in acidic urine.

Evaluation/Outcome

- Evaluate whether fluid balance has been restored/maintained through intake and output measures.
- Determine electrolyte balance by monitoring serum electrolyte tests.
- Monitor for signs and symptoms of fluid and electrolyte imbalances during anticancer therapy.
- Monitor weight frequently (losses can be common in patient with cancer).
- Evaluate effectiveness of interventions through laboratory test findings and patient’s physical and mental status.
- Determine and document patient’s understanding of relevant signs, symptoms, and self-care.

CHAPTER

22

Chronic Diseases with Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalances: Heart Failure, Diabetic Ketoacidosis, and Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

Erlinda Wheeler, DNS, RN
Judith Herrman, PhD, RN
Kathleen Schell, DNS, RN

INTRODUCTION

A chronic disease, as defined by the U.S. National Center for Health Statistics, is a chronic condition that has a duration of three months or longer. Chronic conditions usually progress slowly over a long period of time. Chronic illnesses frequently do not occur as a single health problem, but are associated with multiple chronic health problems, e.g., a person with uncontrolled diabetes mellitus or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) often develops heart failure. This chapter addresses three common chronic diseases: (1) heart failure, (2) diabetes mellitus (ketoacidosis), and (3) chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).

HEART FAILURE

Heart failure is a condition in which the heart is unable to adequately supply blood to meet the metabolic needs of the body, and a systemic response attempting to compensate for this inadequacy. Left ventricular failure (heart failure) is the result of systolic or diastolic ventricular dysfunction. Right ventricular failure can be secondary to left ventricular failure or can result from pulmonary disease (cor pulmonale).

Pathophysiology

Heart failure is usually classified as left ventricular failure or right ventricular failure. Heart failure is most commonly caused by dysfunction of the left ventricle (systolic or diastolic dysfunction, or both). Systolic dysfunction can result from inadequate pumping of blood from the ventricle (pump failure) leading to decreased cardiac output. The left ventricle is unable to eject the normal stroke volume. Any condition that decreases myocardial contractility or increases afterload can cause systolic dysfunction (CAD, hypertension, dilated cardiomyopathy).

Diastolic dysfunction happens when there is inadequate filling of the ventricle during diastole, causing decreased blood volume in the ventricle and, therefore, decreased cardiac output. Inadequate filling of the ventricles is due to a decrease in ventricular compliance. Conditions causing diastolic dysfunction are ventricular hypertrophy, myocarditis, restrictive cardiomyopathy, and CAD.

Right ventricular failure can be secondary to left ventricular failure or pulmonary disease. Impairment of the right heart causes blood to back up in the systemic venous system, causing edema and eventually weight gain. Long-term heart failure usually involves both the right and the left ventricles. Table 22-1 lists the pathophysiologic factors associated with heart failure.

Etiology

Reasons that the heart fails include: (1) increased preload due to increased blood volume, (2) increased afterload because of increased pump resistance, and (3) decreased heart contractility. Causes of increased preload are mitral and/or aortic regurgitation and ventricular septal defects. Aortic stenosis and systemic hypertension cause pump resistance or increased afterload. Myocardial infarction and cardiomyopathy can cause decreased heart contractility. Table 22-2 lists the causes of left and right heart failure.

Table 22-1 Physiologic and Neurohormonal Changes Associated with Heart Failure

Physiologic Changes	Rationale
Cardiac output, CO (decreased)	Factors that influence CO are preload, afterload, myocardial contractility, and heart rate. Diseases (hypertension, CAD, ventricular hypertrophy, etc.) that adversely affect these factors decrease CO. Decrease in CO causes an increase in preload, afterload, contractility, and the heart rate to compensate for the failing heart.
Preload or left ventricular end-diastolic volume (LVEDV) (increased)	Increased volume in the ventricles after diastole will initially increase CO but can eventually lead to overstretching of the myocardium (ventricular dilatation) and cause contractility to decrease.
Afterload (increased)	Increased systemic vascular resistance is due to activation of the sympathetic nervous system stimulated by decreased CO and peripheral vascular resistance (PVR). Increased PVR leads to increased work for the heart to eject blood into the systemic circulation, leading to hypertrophy of the myocardium.
Myocardial contractility (decreased)	Contractility is affected by diseases (MI, myocarditis, cardiomyopathy) that affect myocyte activity, causing inefficient contraction of the ventricles. Increased preload and afterload will also affect contractility.
Heart rate (increased)	Tachycardia develops to compensate for decreased CO. Initially, cardiac output increases, but eventually it causes less ventricular filling time.
Renal perfusion (decreased)	Decreased CO causes decreased renal blood flow.
Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system activated	Decreased renal blood flow activates this system, causing vasoconstriction and sodium and fluid to be retained, leading to increased preload and afterload. Excess fluid dilutes sodium and can cause hyponatremia. Aldosterone can also cause loss of potassium in the urine, leading to hypokalemia.

(continues)

Table 22-1 Physiologic and Neurohormonal Changes Associated with Heart Failure—*continued*

Physiologic Changes	Rationale
Sympathetic nervous system (SNS) stimulated	Stimulation of SNS due to decreased CO causes tachycardia and increases systemic vascular resistance (BP) and the release of norepinephrine.
Left heart failure	Can be caused by either systolic or diastolic dysfunction or both. **Systolic dysfunction** is the inability of the left ventricle to pump enough blood to perfuse body tissues. **Diastolic dysfunction** is due to decreased compliance of the left ventricles leading to increased left ventricular end-diastolic pressure. Diseases affecting myocardial contractility, preload, and afterload lead to heart failure.
Right heart failure	Can result from left heart failure as a result of increased pressure on the left side. Pulmonary disease is also a cause of right heart failure.

Clinical Manifestations

The heart compensates for inadequate cardiac output by increasing the heart rate; thus, the blood pressure and respirations increase. The respiratory rate increases to improve the oxygen intake. Table 22-3 lists the clinical manifestations with rationales associated with heart failure. As the compensatory mechanisms fail to adequately control, left ventricular failure and/or pulmonary edema occurs, resulting in signs and symptoms similar to ECFVE or overhydration (constant, irritating cough, chest crackles, neck vein engorgement, and dyspnea). Right ventricular heart failure may also result. Symptoms include pitting edema in the extremities. Serum sodium and potassium levels may be normal or low due to hemodilution related to an excess of extracellular fluid. The serum osmolality may also reflect a low normal reading or decreased reading due to the ECFVE.

Table 22-2 Etiology of Heart Failure

Factors Affecting Heart Failure	Causes
Left Ventricular Failure (systolic and diastolic dysfunction)	
Increased preload	Mitral regurgitation Aortic regurgitation Ventricular septal defects Hypervolemia
Increased afterload	Systemic hypertension Aortic stenosis Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
Myocardial dysfunction	Myocardial infarction Myocarditis Cardiomyopathy Coronary artery disease Dysrhythmias
Right Ventricular Failure	Pulmonary hypertension Left ventricular failure Myocardial infarction (right ventricular area)

Clinical Management

The main goals in the management of heart failure patients are to decrease oxygen demand of the body (promote rest) and to increase cardiac output. Increasing cardiac output involves decreasing preload, increasing myocardial contractility, and decreasing afterload. A low-sodium diet and fluid restriction are usually prescribed. The degree of sodium and fluid restriction is dependent on the severity of the heart failure.

The most common drug used to increase myocardial contractility and decrease tachycardia is digoxin. Digoxin is given for the first day or more in loading doses. Digoxin has a half-life of 36 hours, so digitalization (increased doses of digoxin) is needed to achieve a desired physiologic response. Digoxin is a cardiac glycoside (cardiotonic), which slows the ventricular contractions and increases the forcefulness of the contractions, thus increasing cardiac output. The heart has to

Table 22-3 Clinical Manifestations Associated with Heart Failure

Clinical Manifestations	Rationale
Vital Signs (VS)	
Increased pulse rate (tachycardia)	Increased heart rate is a compensatory mechanism to improve circulation of the blood.
Increased respiration (tachypnea)	Respirations increase to increase oxygen intake for tissue oxygenation.
Increased blood pressure (hypertension)	When hypertension occurs, it is usually because of atherosclerosis. Non-circulating vascular fluid can also increase blood pressure.
Dyspnea	Difficulty breathing due to inadequate cardiac output and oxygen to the tissues, leading to increased breathing difficulty.
Fatigue with exertion or at rest	Inadequate blood flow and oxygen to the tissues.
Blood-tinged sputum; cough	Increased pulmonary capillary pressure causes blood from capillaries to enter the alveoli, leading to pulmonary edema.
Abnormal lung sounds (crackles)	Caused by fluid in the lungs; pulmonary edema.
Decreased urinary output	Decreased renal perfusion.
Jugular venous distention	Hepatic congestion leading to venous distention.
Edema	
Pulmonary	Caused by left ventricular heart failure. (Because of pump failure, fluid “backs up” in the pulmonary system, causing fluid congestion in the lung tissues.) Fluid inhibits adequate gas exchange (O_2 and CO_2). Signs and symptoms of pulmonary edema are similar to the signs and symptoms of overhydration.
Peripheral	May result from right ventricular heart failure. Fluids accumulate in the extremities due to the fluid back-up in the venous circulation.
Cyanosis	Cyanosis is a sign of hypoxia due to inadequate blood flow to body tissues.

(continues)

Table 22-3 Clinical Manifestations Associated with Heart Failure—*continued*

Clinical Manifestations	Rationale
Laboratory Results	
Plasma/serum sodium: increased (hypernatremia) or normal	Sodium retention in the extracellular fluid (ECF) usually occurs even when the serum sodium is within normal range or lower. Hemodilution can cause a normal or slightly lower serum sodium level.
Plasma/serum potassium: normal or decreased (hypokalemia)	The serum potassium level can be decreased with the use of potassium-wasting diuretics and due to hemodilution from fluid volume excess.
Plasma/serum magnesium: normal or decreased (hypomagnesemia)	Long-term use of potassium-wasting diuretics can cause both hypomagnesemia and hypokalemia.
Serum osmolality: < 280 mOsm/kg	Due to hemodilution. If the serum sodium level is increased, the serum osmolality increases.

work harder to pump the blood against an increased vascular resistance (afterload). Diuretics decrease preload. Decreasing afterload and preload increases cardiac output. Diuretics are used to excrete sodium and water. Furosemide (Lasix) is a diuretic commonly administered intravenously and orally. This diuretic (a potassium-wasting diuretic) not only excretes sodium, but excretes potassium, calcium, and magnesium as well. When the serum potassium level decreases because of the use of potent potassium-wasting diuretics, ventricular dysrhythmias result from hypokalemia (K <3.2 mEq/L). Hypokalemia is one of the most common causes of digitalis toxicity. Serum potassium and sodium levels need to be closely monitored. Serum digoxin levels have a narrow therapeutic range (0.5–2.0 mg/ml).

Other drug therapy used to control heart failure includes beta-adrenergic agonists, Ca^{++} channel blockers, phosphodiesterase inhibitors, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, and vasodilators. Both beta-adrenergic agonists and ACE inhibitors increase cardiac output. Cardiac glycosides, sympathomimetics (beta-adrenergic agonists), and phosphodiesterase (PDE) inhibitors are three positive inotropic group agents that exert an effect on the heart by increasing myocardial contractility. Table 22-4 lists the drug categories and doses used to manage heart failure.

Table 22-4 Medications for the Control of Heart Failure

Drug	Rationale
Digitalis Preparation	
Digoxin	Digoxin exerts a positive inotropic action on the heart, increasing the contractility of the myocardium. To increase the blood level of digoxin when first used, a digitalization program over 24 h is prescribed; e.g., 1.0–1.5 mg dose divided over 24 h, then maintenance doses of 0.125–0.25 mg are prescribed daily. A serum digoxin level of >2.0 mg/ml causes digitalis toxicity; therefore, the serum level needs to be closely monitored. Hypokalemia can cause digitalis toxicity. Signs and symptoms of digitalis toxicity include anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, bradycardia (pulse rate <60), and visual disturbances.
Diuretics	
Loop or High-Ceiling Furosemide (Lasix)	Diuretics increase urine output, which decreases fluid volume. A loop diuretic is usually prescribed for severe heart failure. Furosemide moves large volumes of fluid for excretion. It is effective even when the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is low.
Thiazide Hydrochlorothiazide (HydroDiuril)	Thiazide diuretics are prescribed for mild to moderate heart failure. Thiazides are not effective when the GFR is low. Loop and thiazide diuretics cause potassium (K) loss; thus, potassium supplements should be given and the serum potassium levels should be closely monitored. Hypokalemia causes ventricular dysrhythmias.
Sympathomimetics (Beta-Adrenergic Agonists)	
Dopamine Dobutamine	Beta adrenergics stimulate the beta cells in the heart, increasing myocardial contractility and cardiac output. Dopamine and dobutamine have a strong positive inotropic effect (increase contractility) and can decrease afterload.

(continues)

Table 22-4 Medications for the Control of Heart Failure—*continued*

Drug	Rationale
Sympathomimetics (Beta-Adrenergic Agonists) (continued)	These agents dilate renal blood vessels; thus, urine output is increased. However, high doses of dopamine can stimulate the alpha$_1$-adrenergic receptors, which can cause an increase in vascular resistance and an increase in afterload, which decreases cardiac output. Dobutamine does not activate the alpha$_1$ receptors. Both agents are used for short-term treatment of acute heart failure.
Phosphodiesterase Inhibitors	
Amrinone lactate (Inocor) Milrinone (Primacor)	These agents exert a positive inotropic effect on the heart. They increase myocardial contractility and promote vasodilation, thus decreasing afterload. They are used primarily for short-term (<24 h) drug therapy for severe heart failure.
Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme (ACE) Inhibitors	
Captopril (Capoten) Enalapril (Vasotec)	ACE inhibitors promote vasodilation by inhibiting angiotensin II, a potent vasoconstrictor that stimulates the release of aldosterone, causing sodium and water retention. By blocking angiotensin II, cardiac output, stroke volume, and renal blood flow are increased. Adverse effects include hypotension, hyperkalemia due to a decrease in aldosterone, and a cough of unknown origin. ACE inhibitors should not be used with potassium supplements.
Vasodilators	
Nitroglycerin Sodium nitroprusside Prazosin HCL (Minipress)	Vasodilators are helpful for short-term treatment of HF. Nitrates such as nitroglycerin affect the veins, thus decreasing pooling of blood and pulmonary congestion. With nitrates, hypotension and reflex tachycardia may result. Sodium nitroprusside and prazosin can cause venous and arterial dilation. These agents decrease both preload and afterload. With use of vasodilators, the blood pressure needs to be monitored closely.

Clinical Considerations: Heart Failure

1. Know the signs and symptoms of heart failure. The more common clinical manifestations are dyspnea, crackles, edema, tachycardia, neck vein engorgement, and weight gain of 2–3 pounds in 24 hours.
2. For quick assessment of overhydration because of heart failure, check for hand vein engorgement. Lower the hand below the heart level until the hand veins are engorged; then raise the hand above the heart level. If the hand veins remain engorged above the heart level for 10 to 15 seconds, fluid volume excess is likely to be present.
3. Serum sodium and potassium should be monitored. If the patient is taking digoxin and a potassium-wasting diuretic such as furosemide (Lasix), daily potassium supplements should be administered. If the patient is taking digoxin and furosemide or hydrochlorothiazide, hypokalemia (serum potassium loss) is likely to occur. Hypokalemia enhances the action of digoxin and can cause digitalis toxicity (slow, irregular pulse, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and visual disturbances).
4. Check for signs and symptoms of hypokalemia; e.g., dizziness, muscular weakness, abdominal distention, diminished peristalsis, and dysrhythmia.
5. Monitor vital signs and ECG for changes during clinical management. Note if the patient is having difficulty breathing.
6. For patients having difficulty breathing, elevate the head of the bed. This position lowers the diaphragm and increases the air space.
7. The patient with heart failure should not use table salt unless otherwise indicated.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT FOR HEART FAILURE

Assessment

- Obtain baseline vital signs and ECG to determine abnormal changes and for comparison with future vital signs and ECG readings.
- Assess for signs and symptoms of left ventricular heart failure (overhydration or pulmonary edema), i.e., constant,

irritating cough, dyspnea, neck and/or hand vein engorgement, chest crackles.

- Check serum electrolyte levels, especially potassium and sodium. Use baseline electrolyte results for comparison with future serum electrolytes.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Excess Fluid Volume,* related to decreased cardiac output related to impaired excretion of Na and H_2O
- *Impaired Breathing Patterns,* related to transudation of fluid into the lung tissues
- *Impaired Tissue Integrity,* related to fluid accumulation in the extremities and buttocks
- *Decreased Cardiac Output,* related to cardiopulmonary insufficiency

Interventions

- Auscultate lung areas to detect abnormal breath sounds, such as crackles due to lung congestion (pulmonary edema).
- Monitor vein engorgement by checking hand veins for fluid overload. Lower the hand below the heart level until the hand veins are engorged, then raise the hand above the heart level. If the hand veins remain engorged above the heart level after 15 seconds, fluid volume excess is most likely present.
- Check the feet and ankles daily in the early morning before the patient rises. If edema is present, the reason is probably due to cardiac and/or renal dysfunction.
- Instruct the patient not to use table salt to season foods. Salt contains sodium, which can cause water retention. Suggest other ways to enhance flavor of foods.
- Instruct the patient to eat foods rich in potassium (fruits, vegetables) if the patient is taking a potassium-wasting diuretic and digoxin. Hypokalemia enhances the action of digoxin and can cause digitalis toxicity (slow, irregular pulse, anorexia, nausea, vomiting).
- Assess for signs and symptoms of hypokalemia.

- Monitor breathing patterns. Note the presence of dyspnea, shortness of breath, rapid breathing, and wheezing.
- Elevate the head of the bed 30 to 75 degrees to lower the diaphragm and increase alveoli spaces for gas exchange.
- Encourage the patient to change positions frequently. Edematous tissue can break down due to hypoxia and constant pressure on skin surface.
- Provide skin care, especially to edematous areas, at least twice daily.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm the therapeutic effect of interventions to correct the underlying cause of heart failure.
- Remain free of signs and symptoms of heart failure.
- Evaluate the effectiveness of medications in reducing pulmonary and/or peripheral edema, and cardiac symptoms.
- Evaluate the dietary intake, and fluid intake and output.
- Evaluate that a support system is available for the patient.

DIABETES MELLITUS (DM) AND DIABETIC KETOACIDOSIS (DKA)

The pathophysiological changes and the signs and symptoms of diabetes mellitus (DM) result from an absolute or relative deficiency of insulin. Insulin is used by the body to transport glucose into the cells to be used in metabolism. Destruction of the beta cells of the pancreas, the cells responsible for the production of insulin, from either autoimmune or other processes, results in the insulin insufficiency. Over 23.6 million people in the United States are affected by some form of diabetes mellitus. Two of the most common types of diabetes mellitus are Type 1 diabetes mellitus, resulting from an absolute insulin deficiency; and Type 2 diabetes mellitus, resulting from a relative lack of insulin. Type 1, previously known as insulin-dependent or juvenile onset diabetes mellitus, and Type 2, previously referred to as non-insulin-dependent or adult onset diabetes mellitus require very different methods of treatment. The cornerstones of treatment of Type 1 DM are insulin, diet, exercise, and stress management; for Type 2 DM management includes diet/weight control, oral hypoglycemic agents, exercise, and, in rare cases, insulin supplementation.

Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) is often associated with Type 1 diabetes mellitus, and results from a severe or complete deficit of insulin secretion. DKA is characterized by a blood sugar exceeding 300 mg/dl, ketosis, a blood pH <7.30, and a bicarbonate level <14 mEq/L. Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS) is characterized by a blood sugar >500 mg/dl, dehydration, and a serum osmolality <300 mOsm/kg despite normal pH and lack of measurable ketones.

Pathophysiology

A cessation or deficit of insulin secretions limits the body's utilization of glucose. With an insulin deficit, the cells are starved of important nutrients. Fat and protein catabolism (breakdown) occurs to provide the body with needed energy. Fatty acids are released from the breakdown of adipose (fat) tissue. Acids are further broken down into ketonic acids (ketones) and acetoacetate (acetone). Because the liver cannot oxidize the excess ketones, the ketone bodies accumulate in the blood. The acetone is excreted by the lungs.

Table 22-5 describes the pathophysiologic factors associated with diabetic ketoacidosis.

Etiology

Many patients with diabetes mellitus are undiagnosed. Their first presentation with the disease is in acute diabetic ketoacidosis. Untreated diabetes mellitus can lead to diabetic ketoacidosis as a result of the high blood sugar levels and lack of nutrients to the cells. Ketosis due to cellular breakdown causes the blood pH and bicarbonate levels to decrease, resulting in ketoacidosis. Selected acute stressors such as trauma, infection, major surgical interventions, myocardial infarction, some medications, and select medical conditions can trigger the occurrence of diabetic ketoacidosis.

Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS) develops in middle-age or older individuals. It is usually associated with Type 2 diabetes. HHS develops more slowly than DKA. The blood sugar levels and BUN are usually greater than those

Table 22-5 Pathophysiologic Changes Associated with Diabetic Ketoacidosis

Pathophysiologic Changes	Rationale
Ketosis	Failure to metabolize glucose leads to an increase in fat catabolism and ketone bodies. Ketosis occurs when there is an excess of ketone bodies (ketonic acids) in the blood. Ketosis leads to diabetic ketoacidosis. Ketones (strong acids) combine with the sodium, causing sodium depletion. Ketone bodies are excreted as ketonuria.
Increased lactic acid	Cellular breakdown due to a lack of nutrients to the cells causes the release of lactic acid from the cells.
Increased hydrogen ions	Hydrogen ions are reabsorbed from the kidney tubules back into circulation as the bicarbonate ions are excreted. An increase in hydrogen ion concentration increases the acidotic state.
Hyperosmolality	An elevated blood sugar increases the hyperosmolality of the extracellular fluid. Because of hyperosmolality, osmotic diuresis occurs, causing the kidneys to excrete bicarbonate, potassium, and phosphorus. Also, hyperosmolality leads to the withdrawal of cellular fluid and cellular dehydration occurs.
Glycosuria	An elevation of the blood sugar >180 mg/dl, increases the glucose concentration in the glomeruli of the kidneys. When the concentration of glucose in the glomeruli exceeds the renal threshold for tubular reabsorption, glycosuria results. Increased glucose concentration acts as an osmotic diuretic, causing diuresis.
Dehydration (cellular and extracellular)	Cellular dehydration occurs due to increased glucose concentration in the blood. Extracellular fluid increases because of the cellular fluid shift and then decreases due to osmotic diuresis. With a cellular fluid shift, potassium is lost from the cells; the extracellular potassium level may be within normal range or elevated.

Table 22-6 Causes of Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Hyperosmolar Hyperglycemic State

Categories	Causes
Diabetic Ketoacidosis	
Insulin deficiency	Undiagnosed DM, Type I
	Omission of prescribed insulin
Acute incidence	Infection
	Trauma
	Major surgical interventions
	Pancreatitis
	Gastroenteritis
Miscellaneous	Hyperthyroidism
	Steroids (glucocorticoids)
	Adrenergic agonists
Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS)	
Insulin deficiency	Undiagnosed DM, Type 2
Incidences	Stress
	Infection
	Renal or cardiovascular disease
Miscellaneous	Continuous use of total parenteral nutrition (TPN)
	Steroids

with DKA. Patients with HHS usually do not develop ketosis and the pH is within normal limits; the reason for this is unknown. Stress or injury can precipitate a hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state. Table 22-6 indicates the causes of DKA and HHS.

Clinical Manifestations

The most common symptoms of DKA are extreme thirst, polyuria, weakness, and fatigue. Hyperglycemia induces osmotic diuresis. Dehydration results from diuresis; the skin is dry with poor skin turgor, and the lips are parched.

Potassium, sodium, magnesium, phosphorus, and bicarbonate imbalances usually result from DKA. As cells break down because of a lack of nutrients, excess potassium moves from the cells into the extracellular compartments.

When the acidotic state is corrected, potassium re-enters the cells and hypokalemia may result. During early fluid loss, the sodium level may be elevated because of an increase in the aldosterone secretion (sodium-retaining hormone) response. However, with continuous diuresis, the serum sodium level is decreased. The hemoglobin and hematocrit elevate in response to the fluid volume deficit (hemoconcentration). Table 22-7 describes the signs and symptoms and laboratory results related to DKA.

Classic signs and symptoms of a hypoglycemic reaction (insulin shock) include nervousness; dizziness; cold, clammy

Table 22-7 Clinical Manifestations of DKA

Signs and Symptoms	Rationale
Extreme Thirst *Polyuria*	Elevated blood sugar and ketones increase the serum osmolality, causing thirst and osmotic diuresis.
Weakness, Fatigue	Reduced cellular metabolism results in low energy levels.
Nausea, Vomiting	Continuous vomiting causes a loss of body fluids and electrolytes. The body attempts to compensate for acidosis with the vomiting of acidic gastric contents. Dehydration results.
Vital Signs	
Temperature elevated or N	Infection causes an elevated temperature; dehydration can cause a slightly elevated temperature.
Pulse rapid	With a loss of body fluid, the heart beats faster to compensate in order to maintain circulation. Tachycardia of greater than 140 bpm denotes a severe fluid loss.
Blood pressure slightly to severely decreased	With early fluid loss from diuresis, the blood pressure decreases by 10–15 mm Hg.
Respiration rapid, vigorous breathing	Kussmaul breathing is a compensatory mechanism to decrease H_2CO_2 (acid) by blowing off CO_2.

(continues)

Table 22-7 Clinical Manifestations of DKA—*continued*

Signs and Symptoms	Rationale
Poor Skin Turgor; Dry, Parched Lips; Disorientation, Confusion	Dehydration frequently results in these symptoms: poor skin turgor; dry, parched lips; and confusion.
Abdominal Pain with Tenderness	Abdominal pain usually indicates severe ketoacidosis.
Laboratory Test Results	
Blood sugar 300–800 mg/dl	Blood sugar level is high; at times, it is not as high as hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS). Sugar is not metabolized and utilized by the cells.
Electrolytes	
Potassium N, ↓, ↑	Potassium in the cells is low, but the serum potassium level may be high due to a hemoconcentration. Normal or low levels can also occur.
Sodium N, ↓, ↑	Sodium is lost because of diuresis. Serum levels can be elevated due to dehydration.
Magnesium N, ↓, ↑ Chloride N, ↓ Phosphorus low N or ↓	Magnesium and phosphorus react the same as potassium. Chloride is excreted with sodium and water.
CO_2 ↓	The serum CO_2 is a bicarbonate determinant. With the loss of bicarbonate, the serum CO_2 is greatly decreased (<14 mEq/L).
Serum osmolality 300–350 mOsm/kg	Fluid loss (dehydration) increases the serum osmolality.
Hematology	
Hemoglobin, hematocrit ↑ WBC ↑	Because of fluid loss, hemoconcentration results, increasing hematocrit levels. Hemoglobin levels may be increased or decreased dependent upon concurrent anemia and hemoconcentration. Elevated white blood cells can indicate an infection.

(continues)

Table 22-7 Clinical Manifestations of DKA—*continued*

Signs and Symptoms	Rationale
Arterial Blood Gases (ABGs)	
pH ↓ $PaCO_2$ ↓ HCO_3 ↓	The pH is low in the acidotic state. The $PaCO_2$ may be decreased as the lungs are expelling CO_2 (compensatory mechanism). The bicarbonate is lost through diuresis with an increase in hydrogen and ketone (acid) levels.
Urine	
Glycosuria Ketonuria	Glucose and ketones spill into the urine.

Note: N = normal; ↑ = elevated; ↓ = decreased; bpm = beats per minute

skin; headache; irritability; visual changes; diaphoresis; fatigue; hunger; tachycardia; and slurred speech. These symptoms occur when the blood sugar is 50 mg/dl or lower.

Clinical Management

Treatment modalities for DKA include: (1) vigorous fluid replacement, (2) insulin replacement, and (3) electrolyte correction. Osmotic diuresis can cause dehydration (FVD) with a fluid loss of 4 to 8 liters of body fluid. In such a case, immediate restoration of fluid loss is essential.

Fluid Replacement

In the first 24 hours, 80% of the total water and salt deficit should be replaced. There is less urgency for the other electrolytes because the rate of assimilation of the intracellular electrolytes is limited during the acidotic state. Administration of potassium must be included, but *not in early treatment* (unless indicated), because an elevated serum potassium can be toxic.

For the first hour, 1 to 2 liters of crystalloid (normal saline solution [0.9% NaCl] or lactated Ringer's solution) may be rapidly infused to re-establish the fluid volume balance. This may be followed by 1 liter every hour for the next two hours or as indicated. Rapid fluid replacement decreases the hyperglycemic state by causing hemodilution. Extracellular fluid volume (ECF) is restored directly through intravenous therapy; however, a fluid overload in the ECF space should be avoided. Rapid replacement of fluids must be vigilantly monitored to avoid overhydration. Cerebral edema in children and pulmonary edema in older adults must be carefully monitored and treated soon after detection. ICF replacement occurs over approximately two days.

Insulin Replacement

Many years ago, massive doses of insulin were administered for the treatment of DKA. Today, less insulin is used when correcting DKA. Preferably, regular insulin is given through an intravenous line with a bolus dose followed with a continuous infusion. A standard guideline for IV insulin replacement is an insulin bolus of 0.10 units/kg, followed by 0.1 units/kg per hour continuous IV infusion until blood sugar reaches 200 mg/dl. The insulin bolus may not be given with children and adolescents. If the blood sugar does not fall, the infusion can be increased to 0.2 units/kg per hour. It is important to monitor patient's hydration status throughout insulin infusion. Refer to the accompanying box for an example of this guideline.

A patient weighs 154 pounds or 70 kg. The order reads regular insulin bolus of 0.10 units/kg and 0.1 unit/kg/hour in continuous normal saline solution. Using the standard guideline for an insulin bolus (0.15 × weight in kgs):

0.10 units × 70 kg = 10.5 units

Followed by the standard guideline for IV continuous infusion (0.1 units × 70 kg = 7 units/hr). The patient would receive 7 units of insulin in a bolus followed by 7 units of insulin per hour in an IV of normal saline solution. When the blood sugar level reaches 200 mg/dl, the IV solution is generally changed to 5% dextrose in water. This prevents the possible occurrence of a hypoglycemic reaction. As the acidosis state is corrected, insulin is utilized more rapidly by the body for metabolizing sugar (glucose).

The longer the acidosis persists, the more resistant the person is likely to be to insulin, and more insulin administration may be required.

Electrolyte Correction

Potassium (K) replacement should start approximately six to eight hours after the first dose of insulin has been administered (intravenously or intramuscularly) and as the acidotic state is being corrected. Potassium replacement is dependent upon adequate renal function, and, therefore, the patient must have voided in order to begin replacement. Serum potassium levels should be taken frequently. Potassium moves back into cells as the fluid imbalance and the acidotic state are corrected.

Magnesium, phosphate, and bicarbonate serum levels should be closely monitored. If the serum magnesium level is low, hypokalemia is not fully corrected until the magnesium level is corrected.

There is some controversy related to phosphate replacement when treating DKA. Phosphates are needed for neuromuscular function; thus, serum phosphorus should be monitored along with the other electrolytes.

Another controversial issue is the use of bicarbonate therapy in the treatment of DKA. Generally, replacement of fluids and insulin corrects the acidotic state. If the pH falls below 7.0, bicarbonate replacement is usually prescribed.

A summary of the clinical management of diabetic ketoacidosis is presented in Table 22-8.

Table 22-8 Treatment Modalities for Diabetic Ketoacidosis

Categories	Treatment Modalities
Fluid replacement	First 24 h: 80% water and salt deficit replacement. First hour: 1 to 2 liters of crystalloid (normal saline solution [0.9% NaCl] or lactated Ringer's). Second and third hour: 1 liter per hour as indicated. Avoid fluid overload. Blood sugar reaches 250 mg/dl; IV fluids are switched to D_5W to avoid a possible hypoglycemic reaction. ICF replacement occurs in about two days.

(continues)

Table 22-8 Treatment Modalities for Diabetic Ketoacidosis—*continued*

Categories	Treatment Modalities
Insulin replacement	Suggested replacement: initial bolus of regular insulin: 0.15 units/kg. Hourly in IV fluids: 0.1 units/kg until the blood sugar level reaches 250 mg/dl. If acidosis persists, insulin resistance is occurring: More insulin administration may be needed.
Electrolyte replacement	Potassium: Replacement is initiated about six to eight hours after the first dose of insulin, and when adequate renal function has been confirmed. Monitor serum K levels frequently. Magnesium, phosphate, and bicarbonate: Monitor serum levels closely. Replace as indicated. Bicarbonate replacement is usually not indicated unless the pH is <7.1. Replacement of fluids and insulin normally corrects the acidotic state.

Clinical Considerations: Diabetes Mellitus (DM) and Diabetic Ketoacidosis (DKA)

1. Check for signs and symptoms of hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia. With hyperglycemia and DKA, extreme thirst, polyuria, weakness, and fatigue usually occur. The common signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia are cold, clammy skin; nervousness; weakness; dizziness; tachycardia; slurred speech; headache; irritability; diaphoresis; visual changes; fatigue; hunger; and decreased blood pressure.
2. Assess urine output. Polyuria occurs in uncontrolled diabetes mellitus and diabetic ketoacidosis.
3. Check the serum osmolality. If the serum osmolality is >296 mOsm/kg, hemoconcentration or fluid loss is occurring due to polyuria.
4. Check for signs and symptoms of fluid loss, i.e., poor skin turgor; dry, parched lips; dry, warm skin; dry

mucous membranes; increased pulse rate; and decreased blood pressure.

5. Monitor blood sugar levels. A patient with diabetes mellitus should check blood sugar level before each meal and before bed, or 4–7 times per day using a glucometer. Blood sugar should also be checked when patient feels symptomatic, prior to exercise, and more often during times of illness. Daily insulin dose(s) may need to be increased or decreased according to blood sugar levels. Patients should also check ketones when blood glucose levels exceed 300 mg/dl. This may be done by checking urine ketones, or preferably, using a blood ketone meter.
6. Monitor arterial blood gases (ABGs), particularly pH and HCO_3, when diabetic ketoacidosis is suspected. Diabetic acidosis or metabolic acidosis can occur in severely uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, Type 1. A decrease in arterial pH and HCO_3 determines the severity of the acidotic state.
7. When correcting DKA, large volumes of intravenous fluids are administered. Check that overhydration (FVE) or hypervolemia is not occurring. Signs and symptoms of hypervolemia include constant, irritating cough, dyspnea, chest crackles, and vein engorgement.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT FOR DKA

Assessment

- Obtain the patient's history of diabetes mellitus.
- Assess for abnormal vital signs such as tachycardia, slightly decreased blood pressure, deep rapid breathing (Kussmaul respirations), and slightly elevated or high temperature. These can indicate dehydration and a possible acidotic state.
- Check blood for glucose and ketones on an hourly basis during acute illness, then 4–6 times per day when the patient achieves normoglycemia.
- Assess urine output. Polyuria is an indicator of hyperglycemia and osmotic diuresis.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Deficient Fluid Volume,* related to hyperglycemia and osmotic diuresis (polyuria)
- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to insufficient utilization of glucose and nutrients
- *Ineffective Tissue Perfusion (renal, cardiopulmonary, peripheral),* related to deficient fluid volume and lack of glucose utilization
- *Excess Fluid Volume,* related to excessive administration of IV fluids
- Risk for unstable glucose levels related to omitted insulin dose, infection, or excessive insulin administration
- Risk for injury, cells and tissues, related to glucose intolerance and infections secondary to DKA

Interventions

- Monitor vital signs. Changes that can be indicative of fluid loss or dehydration and acidosis include rapid, thready pulse rate; slightly decreased systolic blood pressure; rapid and deep breathing (Kussmaul respiration); and a slightly elevated temperature. During acute illness, vital signs and other assessments should be monitored hourly or as warranted by patient status.
- Check for other signs and symptoms of fluid loss such as poor skin turgor; dry, parched lips; dry, warm skin; and dry mucous membranes.
- Check the serum osmolality. Serum osmolality >296 mOsm/kg can indicate hemoconcentration due to fluid loss.
- Monitor blood sugar level. Levels greater than 200 mg/dl indicate hyperglycemia. Increased blood sugar levels can cause osmotic diuresis.
- Monitor serum ketone levels when blood glucose levels exceed 300 mg/dl.

- Observe for signs and symptoms of hypokalemia and hyperkalemia (see Chapter 5).
- Instruct patients to monitor their blood sugar level and/or urine to detect glycosuria. For testing blood sugars, use a glucometer.
- Administer normal saline solution and/or a Ringer's solution as prescribed to reestablish ECF.
- Administer regular insulin intravenously as prescribed in a bolus and in IV fluids to correct insulin deficiency (see suggested guidelines in Table 22-8).
- Observe for signs and symptoms of a hypoglycemic reaction (insulin reaction or shock) from possible overcorrection of hyperglycemia. The symptoms include cold, clammy skin; diaphoresis; nervousness; weakness; dizziness; tachycardia; low blood pressure; headache; irritability; visual changes; fatigue; hunger; and slurred speech.
- Monitor urine output, heart rate, blood pressure, and chest sounds for abnormalities. Dehydration limits tissue perfusion and decreases circulatory volume and nutrients available to the vital organs.
- Monitor arterial blood gases (ABGs), particularly the pH, $PaCO_2$, and HCO_3. A decrease in arterial pH and HCO_3 determines the severity of the acidotic state.

Evaluation/Outcomes

- Confirm that the therapeutic effect of interventions in correcting diabetic ketoacidosis. Serum osmolality, serum electrolytes, and the arterial blood gases are within normal ranges.
- The patient remains free of signs and symptoms related to diabetic ketoacidosis.
- Evaluate the effectiveness of fluid, insulin, and electrolyte replacements.
- Determine that the urine output has returned to normal daily range.

CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE (COPD)

As the fifth leading cause of death in the world, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is a group of respiratory disorders characterized by airflow limitation that is not fully reversible. It is typically progressive and is considered an inflammatory pulmonary disease. The American Thoracic Society (ATS), European Respiratory Society (ERS), and the Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) have de-emphasized the existence of two distinct COPD categories, emphysema and chronic bronchitis. Emphysema was associated with destruction of alveoli, while chronic bronchitis described the presence of cough with sputum production for at least 3 months in 2 consecutive years. Asthma is reversible so is no longer considered a type of COPD; however, asthmatics may develop COPD over time. COPD leads to systemic effects such as skeletal muscle dysfunction, wasting, osteoporosis, sexual dysfunction, and cardiovascular diseases. It is considered a significant comorbidity of myocardial infarction.

Pathophysiology

In COPD, an abnormal inflammatory response is triggered by inhalation exposures, particularly tobacco smoking. Macrophages and lymphocytes increase, releasing cytokines and inflammatory mediators. There is an imbalance of proteinase and antiproteinase, causing lung parenchymal destruction. Remodeling of the peripheral airways and pulmonary vascular changes also occur. These mechanisms produce several pathophysiologic changes including mucus hypersecretion and ciliary dysfunction, airflow limitation and hyperinflation. Gas exchange abnormalities and pulmonary hypertension develop later in the course of the disease. Table 22-9 lists the pathophysiologic changes and rationale associated with COPD conditions.

Etiology

COPD is a preventable and treatable disease. Yet unlike other major diseases in the United States, incidence of COPD continues to rise, resulting in significant social and economic

Table 22-9 Major Pathophysiologic Changes in COPD

Pathophysiologic Changes	Rationale
Mucus hypersecretion	Inflammation results in increased numbers and enlargement of goblet cells; inflammatory exudates form in airway lumens.
Ciliary dysfunction	Release of proteinases during inflammation causes epithelial damage and reduced ciliary beat frequency.
Airflow limitation particularly on expiration	Repeated cycles of injury and repair of peripheral airways cause lung remodeling; increased collagen and scar tissue in bronchial walls result in fibrosis; breakdown of intra-alveolar elastic fibers cause loss of elastic recoil; loss of alveolar attachments as a result of septal destruction.
Hyperinflation	Supporting structures of lung destroyed; lack of traction on bronchiole walls; bronchioles collapse on expiration, trapping air in distal alveoli.
Gas exchange abnormalities:*	
Hypercapnia	Accumulation of carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the blood due to chronic alveolar hypoventilation; decreased surface area for gas diffusion as a result of alveolar wall and capillary loss; and inspiratory muscle weakness and airway obstruction (normal CO_2 35–45 mm Hg; hypercapnia $>$ 45 mm Hg)
Respiratory acidosis	Retained CO_2 combines with water to produce carbonic acid ($H_2O + CO_2 = H_2CO_3$); arterial blood gases reflect pH $<$ 7.35 and PCO_2 $>$45 mm Hg; may compensate with increased serum bicarbonate (HCO_3^-)
Hypoxemia	Reduced oxygen in the arterial blood (PaO_2 $<$60 mm Hg, $SaO_2 <$ 88%) caused by chronic alveolar hypoventilation; decreased surface area for gas diffusion and airway obstruction (normal PO_2 is 80–100 mm Hg; normal SaO_2 is 94–100%)

(continues)

Table 22-9 Major Pathophysiologic Changes in COPD—*continued*

Pathophysiologic Changes	Rationale
Pulmonary hypertension*	Defined as elevated pulmonary pressures from increased pulmonary vascular resistance; due to inflammatory cells invading vessel smooth muscle, collagen deposited in vessels destroy capillary bed and decreased oxygen diffusion following alveolar wall loss.
Cor pulmonale*	Pulmonary hypertension causes right ventricular hypertrophy and may cause right-sided heart failure.
Secondary polycythemia*	Increased red blood cell count (RBC) occurs to compensate for chronic hypoxemia; hemoglobin concentration will also increase.

*late changes

burden. The most common risk factor for COPD is cigarette smoking, and its prevalence in various countries is associated with time of introduction of tobacco smoking and total pack-years smoked. Other risk factors for COPD include alpha$_1$-antitrypsin (AAT) deficiency (genetic trait), occupational dusts and chemicals, indoor and outdoor air pollution, and severe recurring respiratory tract infections. AAT deficiency results in COPD because, without AAT, proteolytic enzymes (released in the lungs from bacteria or phagoctyic cells) damage lung tissue. See Table 22-9 for further explanation.

Clinical Manifestations

COPD develops slowly and may go undetected for decades. Its onset is typically in midlife. One of the earliest symptoms of

COPD is an intermittent but chronic morning cough. These patients frequently produce small amounts of tenacious sputum with coughing. However, dyspnea, considered the hallmark of COPD, is often the reason why patients initially seek medical attention. This progressive dyspnea typically interferes with activities of daily living and may be associated with an acute respiratory infection. These symptoms in addition to the history of exposure to risk factors should prompt healthcare providers to consider a diagnosis of COPD. In 2006, GOLD proposed four stages of COPD. See Table 22-10. Patients commonly seek medical attention when they are considered Stage II.

Table 22-10 2006 GOLD Classification of COPD Severity

Stage	FEV_1/FVC Ratio	FEV_1 (% Predicted)	Symptoms
I Mild	< 0.7	$< 80\%$	With or without symptoms (cough, sputum)
II Moderate	< 0.7	$50\% \leqslant \text{FEV}_1 < 80\%$	With or without chronic symptoms (cough, sputum dyspnea on exertion)
III Severe	< 0.7	$30\% \leqslant \text{FEV}_1 < 50\%$	With or without chronic symptoms (cough, sputum, dyspnea)
IV Very severe	< 0.7	$\text{FEV}_1 < 30\%$ or $< 50\%$	Respiratory failure or clinical signs of heart failure

FEV_1: forced expiratory volume in one second
FVC: forced vital capacity
% predicted: using person's sex, age, and height

Table 22-11 Risk Factors for COPD

Risk Factors	Possible Sources
Alpha$_1$-antitrypsin (AAT) deficiency	Without AAT, proteolytic enzymes (released in the lungs from bacteria or phagoctyic cells) damage lung tissue
Tobacco smoke	Cigarette, pipe, cigar smoking; environmental tobacco smoke
Occupational dusts	Prolonged and/or intense exposure to vapors, irritants, fumes, and chemicals
Indoor air pollution	Biomass fuel used for cooking and heating poorly vented dwellings (especially women in developing countries)
Outdoor air pollution	Not considered a significant contributor, but adds to total lung burden of inhaled particles
Factors affecting lung growth during gestation and childhood	Low birth weight, respiratory infections

Table 22-12 Major Clinical Manifestations of COPD

Signs and Symptoms	Description/Explanation
Dyspnea	Difficulty breathing due to airflow obstruction; patients report shortness of breath, gasping for air, heaviness, air hunger; prompted by exertion or infection but occurs at rest as disease progresses; ↑ respiratory rate (tachypnea)
Cough	Initially intermittent, typically earlier in the day; eventually occurs on a daily basis; may be non-productive but often is productive as disease progresses

(continues)

Table 22-12 Major Clinical Manifestations of COPD—*continued*

Signs and Symptoms	Description/Explanation
Sputum	Clear or white, often tenacious; green or purulent with infection; amounts vary but will increase with infection
Prolonged expiration	Inspiration to exhalation ratio > 1:2 due to loss of lung elasticity
Accessory muscle use	Use of muscles not typically used for breathing, including the sternocleidomastoid, spinal, and neck muscles when patient is dyspneic/hypoxemic
Intercostal retractions	Muscles between ribs draw in during inspiration when patient is dyspneic/hypoxemic
Tripod position	While sitting, patient leans forward with hands resting on knees or with arms and elbows supported with table in order to relieve respiratory distress
Barrel-shaped chest (A-P diameter = lateral diameter)	Distended alveoli trap air, flattening the diaphragm and increasing anterior-posterior diameter
Abnormal breath sounds	Decreased sounds because of reduced airflow; wheezes due to air passing through narrow airways; crackles due to air passing through airway fluid. Also, heart sounds may be distant.
Cyanosis	Bluish color of skin, lips suggesting poor tissue perfusion, hypoxemia and/or hemoglobin <5 g/dl
Nail clubbing	Soft tissue thickening beneath the proximal nail plate that results in sponginess; cause poorly understood

Table 22-13 Diagnostic and Laboratory Studies Used with COPD Patients

Test	Explanation/Rationale
Spirometry	Forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV_1) – $FEV_1/FVC < 70\%$ following bronchodilator confirms COPD.
Arterial blood gases	Obtain baseline and for patients with $FEV_1 < 40\%$ or with COPD exacerbations; abnormalities usually develop late in the disease
pH ↓ (< 7.35)	As a result of hypercapnia; retained CO_2 combines with water to produce carbonic acid
PCO_2 ↑ (> 45 mm Hg)	Decreased pH and increased PCO_2 indicate respiratory acidosis
HCO_3^- ↑ $>$ (26 mEq/L)	An increased bicarbonate level indicates metabolic compensation to neutralize or decrease acidosis. A normal HCO_3^- (22–26 mEq/L) indicates no compensation.
PaO_2 ↓ (< 70 mm Hg)	Hypoxemia develops as disease progresses
SaO_2 ↓ ($< 88\%$)	Decreased saturation of hemoglobin with oxygen; Often measured using pulse oximetry during evaluation of patient tolerance of activities
Base excess ↓ (< -2)	Indicates acidemia; Reflects body's attempt to neutralize metabolically-produced acids by using buffering compounds such as HCO_3, RBC proteins, phospates, etc. Normal base excess values are between -2 and $+2$ mmol^{-1}
Pulse oximetry	Reflects oxygen saturation through measurement of the proportion of light transmitted by oxygenated forms of hemoglobin using finger/earlobe/toe sensor; ABG analysis is recommended when $SaO_2 < 80\%$
Chest X-ray	Used to rule out other etiology, to evaluate presence of cardiac disease; will reveal flattened diaphragm, hyperinflation; may detect blebs and bullae

(continues)

Table 22-13 Diagnostic and Laboratory Studies Used with COPD Patients—*continued*

Test	Explanation/Rationale
Red blood cells (RBCs) ↑	Erythropoiesis stimulated by chronic hypoxemia;
Hemoglobin (Hb) ↑	More Hb carries more oxygen
Hematocrit (Hct) ↑	
Alpha$_1$-antitrypsin deficiency screening	Performed when COPD develops in patients <45 years old, of Caucasian descent, with strong family history of COPD

Clinical Management

Overall goals of the management of COPD are to improve quality of life and functional status. According to 2006 GOLD guidelines for healthcare professionals, four components of a management program include assessment and monitoring of the disease, reduction of risk factors, management of stable COPD, and treatment of exacerbations. Table 22-14 describes the clinical management of COPD.

The single most clinically- and cost-effective intervention to reduce the risk of COPD is smoking cessation. Identifying tobacco users, urging them to quit, assessing their willingness to quit, providing smoking cessation counseling and pharmacotherapy, and providing follow-up visits or communication are key strategies in this initiative. Healthcare providers are encouraged to be politically active by working with government officials to pass legislation promoting smoke-free buildings and work environments.

Exacerbations are usually caused by infection, air pollution, and other un-identified factors. Exacerbations accompanied by intense symptoms, particularly resting dyspnea and new onset of cyanosis, peripheral edema, or dysrhythmias are indicators for hospital admission. Other characteristics such as failure of the patient to respond to treatment, increased frequency of exacerbations, presence of comorbidities, particularly in the frail elderly or in patients who lack home/family support, are also considered in this decision.

Table 22-14 Clinical Management of COPD

Management Methods	Rationale
Smoking Cessation	Smoking cessation will slow the rate of decline in FEV_1 and decrease the production of coughing and sputum.
Oxygen (O_2) if PaO_2 55 mm Hg or less or evidence of tissue hypoxia, cor pulmonale, or altered mental status	Low-flow with a nasal cannula, transtracheal catheter, or other devices that focus on O_2 with delivery on inspiration. Non-invasive and invasive mechanical ventilation may be indicated during exacerbations of COPD. Provide enough oxygen to increase PaO_2 to at least 60 mm Hg and SaO_2 to at least 90%. Combivent (ipratropium with albuterol).
Hydration	Fluid intake should be increased to 2–3 L/day to thin secretions and ease expectoration unless cor pulmonale and/or heart failure is present.
Bronchodilators $Beta_2$ agonists (e.g., albuterol, terbutaline) Anticholinergics (e.g., ipratropium) Methlxanthines (e.g., theophylline)	These agents dilate bronchioles, enhance mucociliary clearance, and improve ventilation. Depending on the agent, bronchodilators can be administered orally, intravenously, and through inhalers (with or without spacers) and nebulizers. Side effects may include tachycardia, cardiac dysrhythmias, changes in BP, tremor, agitation, insomnia, and nausea/vomiting.
Glucocorticosteroids Prednisolone, Solu-Medrol} systemic Beclomethasone, triamcinolone} inhaled	These agents may improve airflow and gas exchange and may decrease dyspnea. They are typically reserved for COPD exacerbations. Long-term therapy not recommended due to (1) lack of evidence of benefits; (2) side effects such as steroid myopathy, decreased overall function, and respiratory failure

(continues)

Table 22-14 Clinical Management of COPD—*continued*

Management Methods	Rationale
Antibiotics	When a respiratory infection is present, antibiotics are usually given, orally or intravenously. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Haemophilus influenzae* are common bacteria in this patient population.
Vaccinations	A one-time pneumococcal and an annual or biannual influenza vaccine decrease the incidence of serious illnesses and death.
Breathing Retraining	Pursed-lip breathing prevents airway collapse so that trapped air in the alveoli can be expelled.
Coughing techniques	Huffing, a forced expiratory technique, is one to two forced expirations without glottis closure starting from mid-lung to low lung volume, followed by relaxed breathing.
Chest physiotherapy	Routine chest percussion therapy (CPT), vibration, and postural drainage have not proven beneficial for COPD patients. These techniques may be used in patients who cannot clear excess bronchial secretions. Automatic CPT vests and hand-held devices are available.
Exercise	Exercises that are muscle group specific are used to strengthen respiratory muscle, arm, and leg strength. Improves respiratory status, endurance, and state of well-being.
Complementary and Alternative Therapies	Practicing relaxation techniques, biofeedback, and/or undergoing hypnosis helps to decrease anxiety, fear, and panic. Decreased dyspnea can result.
Nutritional Support with Attention to Electrolytes	Malnutrition is associated with wasting of respiratory muscles. Diaphragmatic functioning decreases with hypophosphatemia, hyperkalemia, hypocalcemia, and hypomagnesemia.

(continues)

Table 22-14 Clinical Management of COPD—*continued*

Management Methods	Rationale
Pulmonary Rehabilitation Program	A multidisciplinary approach to exercise training, nutrition counseling, patient education, and psychosocial support. These programs improve survival and quality of life, reduce respiratory symptoms, increase exercise tolerance, decrease need for hospitalizations, and increase psychological functioning. At least 6 weeks of pulmonary rehabilitation are recommended.

Long-term oxygen therapy (>15 hours daily) is indicated for patients with severe, stage IV COPD who have $PaO_2 < 55$ mm Hg and/or an $SaO_2 \leqslant 88\%$, with or without hypercarbia. Studies have shown that patients with chronic respiratory failure have increased survival with long-term oxygen therapy. Surgical treatments such as bullectomy, lung volume reduction surgery (LVRS), and lung transplantation may be considered in some stage IV patients, but their efficacy has not been convincing.

A pharmacologic stepped approach is recommended for COPD patients. $Beta_2$ agonists are used for mild symptoms. If symptoms become moderate, a cholinergic antagonist is added. Inhaled therapy is recommended, and a combination of bronchodilators is suggested to reduce risk of side effects. If symptoms persist, methylxanthines are also given. For worsening symptoms unresponsive to current therapy and for severe exacerbations, corticosteroids (oral, inhaler, or intravenous) are added to the regimen. Antibiotics are indicated for infection.

Clinical Considerations: Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD)

1. Recognize signs and symptoms of COPD, such as dyspnea, prolonged expiration, wheezing, diminished breath sounds, use of accessory muscles, barrel-shaped chest, cough, and chronic fatigue.

2. Monitor arterial blood gases (ABGs). A decreased pH (<7.35) and an increased $PaCO_2$ (>45 mm Hg) are indicative of the acid-base imbalance respiratory acidosis. The compensatory (metabolic) mechanism that brings the pH close to normal value is the HCO_3.

   Hypoxemia with a PaO_2 less than or equal to 55 mm Hg or $SaO_2 < 88\%$ are indications for low-flow oxygen therapy.
3. Chest physiotherapy is helpful to mobilize secretions and improve ventilation. Types of chest physiotherapy include: chest clapping or percursion and postural drainage (loosens thick, tenacious mucous secretions). Pursed-lip breathing prevents airway collapse.
4. Overuse of pressurized bronchodilator aerosols can cause a rebound effect.
5. COPD patients should avoid people with respiratory infections, air pollution, excess dust, pollen, and extreme hot or cold weather, all of which could cause breathlessness and exacerbations.
6. Hydration is important to liquify tenacious mucous secretions. Small feedings for COPD patients help prevent breathlessness that could occur when consuming large feedings.
7. Low-flow oxygen (with a nasal O_2 cannula, transtracheal catheter, or ventimask with 24 or 28%) is suggested. Oxygen administration should maintain $SaO_2 \geq 90\%$. Non-invasive and invasive mechanical ventilators may be needed to decrease CO_2 retention and aid in ventilation during exacerbations. Routine use is not recommended.

PATIENT MANAGEMENT OF COPD

Assessment

- Obtain a patient history of respiratory-related problems such as dyspnea at rest and on exertion, increasing shortness of breath, wheezing, fatigue, and activity intolerance.
- Assess for history of risk factors such as exposure to tobacco smoke, occupational dusts, gases and fumes, and air pollution. Consider duration and intensity of exposure. Determine if patient has a

history of numerous respiratory infections, asthma, allergies, COPD, or a family history of AAT deficiency.

- Inspect for use of accessory muscles, barrel-shaped chest, clubbing, and cyanosis.
- Percuss and auscultate the lung areas noting decreased fremitus, hyperresonance, decreased lung expansion, diminished breath sounds, crackles, and wheezing.
- Assess vital signs for baseline reading to compare with future vital sign readings.
- Check the arterial blood gas (ABG) report. Compare results with the norms: pH 7.35 to 7.45, $PaCO_2$ 35 to 45 mm Hg, HCO_3 24 to 28 mEq/L, BE −2 to +2, PaO_2 80–100 mm Hg. Consider the COPD patient's normal PaO_2 level.

Nursing Diagnoses

- *Impaired Gas Exchange,* related to alveolar damage, the collapse of the bronchial tubes, particularly the bronchioles, and excessive mucous production
- *Ineffective Airway Clearance,* related to excess mucous secretions and the constriction of the bronchial tubes, fatigue, and ineffective cough secondary to COPD
- *Ineffective Breathing Patterns,* related to airway obstruction, diaphragm flattening, and fatigue
- *Ineffective Tissue Perfusion,* related to hypoxemia
- *Activity Intolerance,* related to breathlessness and fatigue
- *Imbalanced Nutrition, less than body requirements,* related to breathlessness and poor appetite
- *Risk for Infection*
- *Anxiety,* related to breathlessness, dependence on others and the treatment regime
- *Self-Care Deficit,* related to the inability to take part in ADL because of dyspnea or breathlessness
- *Ineffective Coping*, related to breathlessness and lifestyle changes
- *Risk for Injury,* lungs, related to smoking and respiratory infections

- *Knowledge Deficient,* regarding disease process, treatment, and lifestyle changes, related to unfamiliarity with information sources
- *Sleep Deprivation,* related to dyspnea
- *Fatigue,* related to change in metabolic energy or hypoxemia
- *Disturbed Thought Processes* related to hypoxemia, hypercarbia, or sleep deprivation
- *Ineffective Sexuality Pattern,* related to extreme fatigue
- *Risk for Hopelessness*

Interventions

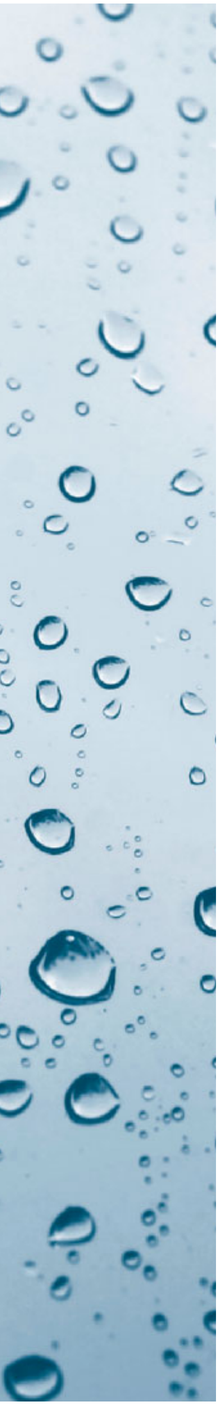
- Monitor ABG and pulse oximetry. A marked decrease in pH and a marked increase in $PaCO_2$ indicates respiratory acidosis. A decrease in PaO_2 ($<$ 55 mm Hg) and O_2 saturation ($<$ 89%) indicates severe hypoxemia. Supplemental oxygen therapy may be necessary.
- Monitor vital signs. Report increase in pulse rate and changes in the rate of respiration. Labored breathing is a common sign of a respiratory problem.
- Check the electrolytes and hematology findings. Phosphorous, potassium, magnesium, and calcium play a role in respiratory muscle functioning. Elevated hemoglobin and hematocrit indicate hypoxemia.
- Monitor breath sounds and lung expansion by auscultating and percussing lung fields.
- Assist with the use of aerosol bronchodilators. Check breath sounds before and after use of aerosol treatments. Overuse of pressurized bronchodilator aerosol can cause a rebound effect.
- Assess breath sounds for fine and coarse crackles and wheezes. Provide chest physiotherapy (chest clapping) for excessive secretions. Teach patient to use huff coughing technique to clear secretions.
- Instruct the patient on how to do pursed-lip breathing to prevent airway collapse.
- Monitor fluid and food intake. Hydration is important to liquify tenacious mucous secretions. Frequent small feedings may be necessary. Encourage high calorie foods.

- Instruct the patient to recognize early signs of respiratory infections, e.g., color change in sputum, elevated temperature, and coughing. Recommend annual influenza vaccinations.
- Encourage the patient to limit activities that increase the body's need for oxygen.
- Instruct patient exercises that increase respiratory muscle, arm, and leg strength.
- Encourage the patient to try mild exercises in the afternoon or when breathlessness is not severe. Avoid exercise in early mornings when mucous secretions are increased and after meals when energy is needed for digestion.
- Teach patient energy conservation principles. Encourage patient to pace activities, alternating low- and high-energy tasks. Intersperse activities with adequate rest. Instruct patient to minimize talking and avoid breath-holding during activities. Organize living space so that items used most often are within easy reach.
- Encourage smoking cessation.
- Refer to support groups, a pulmonary rehabilitation program, community agencies, and/or assistance programs.

Evaluation/Outcome

- Confirm that the therapeutic effects of interventions (breathing exercises, chest clapping, rest, bronchodilators, oxygen therapy, etc.) to correct or control COPD.
- Evaluate that the laboratory findings and other diagnostics indicative of COPD have improved or stabilized.
- Patient demonstrates a stabilization of COPD signs and symptoms; patient experiences few or no exacerbations of the disease.
- Patient maintains adequate nutrition.
- Patient uses breathing exercises and energy conservation techniques in daily life.

- Patient verbalizes knowledge of medication actions and side effects; patient demonstrates correct technique for medication via nebulizers or inhalers.
- Patient accesses appropriate resources to maintain health and well-being.



Appendix A

Common Laboratory Tests and Values for Adults and Children

Hematology	Color-Top Tube	Reference Values	
		Adult	*Child*
Bleeding time		Ivy's method: 3–7 minutes Average: 8 min	
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)	Lavender	<50 years old (Westergren) Male: 0–15 mm/hr Female: 0–20 mm/hr >50 years old (Westergren) Male: 0–20 mm/hr Female: 0–30 mm/hr Wintrobe method: Male: 0–9 mm/hr Female: 0–15 mm/hr	Newborn: 0–2 mm/hr 4–14 years old: 0–10 mm/hr
Factor assay	Blue		
I Fibrinogen		200–400 mg/dL Minimum for clotting: 75–100 mg/dL	Same as adult
II Prothrombin		Minimum hemostatic level: 10%–15% concentration	
III Thromboplastin		Variety of substances	
IV Calcium		4.5–5.5 mEq/L or 9–11 mg/dL	
V Proaccelerin labile factor		Minimum hemostatic level: 50%–150% activity; 5%–10% concentration	Same as adult
VI		Not used	

(continues)

Hematology	Color-Top Tube	Reference Values	
		Adult	*Child*
VII Proconvertin stable factor		Minimum hemostatic level: 65%–135% activity; 5%–15% concentration	
VIII Antihemophilic factor (AHF)		Minimum hemostatic level: 55%–145% activity; 30%–35% concentration	
IX Plasma thromboplastin component (PTC Christmas factor)		Minimum hemostatic level: 60%–140% activity; 30% concentration	
X Stuart factor, Prower factor		Minimum hemostatic level: 45%–150% activity; 7%–10% concentration	
XI Plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA)		Minimum hemostatic level: 65%–135% activity; 20%–30% concentration	
XII Hageman factor		0% concentration	
XIII Fibrinase, fibrin stabilizing factor (FSF)		Minimum hemostatic level: 1% concentration	
Fibrinogen	Blue	200–400 mg/dL	Newborn: 150–300 mg/dL Child: same as adult
Hematocrit (Hct)	Lavender	Male: 40%–54%; 0.40–0.54 SI units Female: 36%–46%; 0.36–0.46 SI units	Newborn: 44%–65% 1–3 years old: 29%–40% 4–10 years old: 31%–43%
Hemoglobin (Hb or Hgb)	Lavender	Male: 13.5–17 g/dL Female: 12–15 g/dL	Newborn: 14–24 g/dL Infant: 10–17 g/dL Child: 11–16 g/dL

Lymphocytes (T & B) assay	Lavender (2 tubes)	T cells: 60%–80%, 600–2400 cells/μL B cells: 4%–16%, 50–250 cells/μL	
Partial thromboplastin time (PTT)	Blue	PPT: 60–70 seconds APTT: 25–40 seconds	
Plasminogen	Blue	2.5–5.2 U/mL 3.8–8.4 CTA	
Platelet aggregation and adhesion	Blue	Aggregation in 3–5 minutes	
Platelet count (thrombocytes)	Lavender	150,000–400,000 μL (mean, 250,000 μL) SI units: 0.15–0.4 × 10^{12}/L	Premature: 100,000–300,000 μL Newborn: 150,000–300,000 μL Infant: 200,000–475,000 μL Same as adult
Prothrombin time (PT)	Blue or black	11–15 seconds or 70%–100% Anticoagulant therapy: 2–2.5 times the control in seconds or 20%–30%	

(continues)

Hematology	**Color-Top Tube**	**Reference Values**	
		Adult	***Child***
RBC indices (mil/μL)	Lavender	Male: 4.6–6.0 Female: 4.0–5.0	Newborn: 4.8–7.2 Child: 3.8–5.5
MCV (cuμ)		80–98	Newborn: 96–108 Child: 82–92
MCH (pg)		27–31	Newborn: 32–34 Child: 27–31
MCHC (%)		32–36	Newborn: 32–33
RDW (Coulter S)		11.5–14.5	Child: 32–36
Reticulocyte count	Lavender	0.5%–1.5% of all RBCs	Newborn: 2.5%–6.5% of all RBCs
		25,000–75,000 μL (absolute count)	Infant: 0.5%–3.5% of all RBCs Child: 0.5%–2.0% of all RBCs
Sickle cell screening	Lavender	0	0
White blood cells (WBC)	Lavender	4,500–10,000 μL	Newborn: 9,000–30,000 μL 2 years old: 6,000–17,000 μL 10 years: 4,500–13,500 μL

White blood cell differential	Lavender		
Neutrophils		50%–70% of total WBCs	29%–47%
Segments		50%–65%	
Bands		0%–5%	
Eosinophils		0%–3%	0%–3%
Basophils		1%–3%	1%–3%
Lymphocytes		25%–35%	38%–63%
Monocytes		2%–6%	4%–9%
Immunohematology (Blood Bank)			
Coombs direct	Lavender	Negative	Negative
Coombs indirect	Red	Negative	Negative
Cross matching	Red	Absence of agglutination (clumping)	Same as adult
Rh typing	Red	Rh+ and Rh−	Same as adult

		Reference Values	
Chemistry	**Color-Top Tube**	***Adult***	***Child***
Acetone (ketone bodies)	Red	Acetone: 0.3–2.0 mg/dL; 51.6–344 μmol/L (SI units) Ketones: 2–4 mg/dL	Newborn: slightly higher than adult Infant and child: same as adult
Acid phosphatase (ACP)	Red	0.0–0.8 U/L at 37°C (SI units)	6.4–15.2 U/L
Adrenocorticotropic Hormone (ACTH)	Lavender	7–10 AM: 15–80 pg/mL; 4 PM: 5–30 pg/mL, 10 PM to Midnight: <10 pg/mL	

(continues)

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Chemistry</th><th rowspan="2">Color-Top Tube</th><th colspan="2">Reference Values</th></tr>
<tr><th>Adult</th><th>Child</th></tr>
<tr><td>Alanine aminotransferase (ALT, SGPT)</td><td>Red</td><td>10–35 U/L
4–36 U/L at 37°C (SI units)</td><td>Same as adult
Infant: could be twice as high</td></tr>
<tr><td>Albumin</td><td>Red</td><td>3.5–5 g/dL</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Aldosterone</td><td>Red or green</td><td>Fast: <16 mg/dL; 4–30 mg/dL (sitting position)</td><td>3–11 years: 5–70 mg/dL</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alkaline phosphatase (ALP)</td><td>Red</td><td>42–136 U/L</td><td>Infant: 40–300 U/L</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP)</td><td>Red</td><td>
<table>
<tr><th>Weeks of Gestation</th><th>Serum (ng/ml)</th><th>Amniotic Fluid (µg/ml)</th></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td>7–50</td><td>11.0–32.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>7–60</td><td>5.5–31.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td>10–72</td><td>5.7–31.5</td></tr>
<tr><td>17</td><td>11–90</td><td>3.8–32.5</td></tr>
<tr><td>18</td><td>14–94</td><td>3.6–28.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>19</td><td>24–112</td><td>3.7–24.5</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>31–122</td><td>2.2–15.0</td></tr>
</table>
</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Ammonia</td><td>Green</td><td>Toxic level: >500 ng/mL
15–45 µg/dL</td><td>Newborn: 64–107 µg/dL
Child: 21–50 µg/dL</td></tr>
</table>

Amylase		11–35 μmol/L (SI units) 30–170 μ/L Isoenzymes: S: 45–70% P: 30–55%	
Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE)	Red or green	11–67 U/L	Not usually performed
Anion gap		10–17 mEq/L	
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	Lavender	1–5 pg/mL 1–5 ng/L	
Arterial blood gases (See *Others*)			
Aspartate aminotransferase	Red	0–35 U/L	Newborn: four times normal level
(AST, SGOT)		Average 8–38 U/L	Child: same as adult
Bilirubin (indirect)	Red	0.1–1.0 mg/dL 1.7–17.1 μmol/L (SI units)	
Bilirubin (total and direct)	Red	Total: 0.1–1.2 mg/dL; 1.7–20.5 μmol/L (SI units)	Newborn, total: 1–12 mg/dL; 17.1–205 μmol/L (SI units)
		Direct (conjugated): 0.1–0.3 mg/dL; 1.7–5.1 μmol/L (SI units)	Child, total: 0.2–0.8 mg/dL
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)	Red	5–25 mg/dL	Infant: 5–15 mg/dL Child: 5–20 mg/dL

(continues)

Chemistry	**Color-Top Tube**	**Reference Values**	
		Adult	***Child***
BUN/creatinine ratio	Red	10:1 to 20:1	
Calcitonin	Green or lavender	Male: <40 pg/mL	Newborn: usually higher
		Female: <25 pg/ml	Child: <70 pg/mL
Calcium (Ca)	Red	4.5–5.5 mEq/L	Newborn: 3.7–7.0 mEq/L; 7.4–14 mg/dL
		9–11 mg/dL	Infant: 5.0–6.0 mEq/L; 10–12 mg/dL
		2.3–2.8 mmol/L (SI units)	Child: 4.5–5.8 mEq/L; 9–11.5 mg/dL
Ionized calcium (iCa)		4.4–5.9 mg/dL 2.2–2.5 mEq/L 1.1–1.24 mmol/L	
Carbon dioxide combining power (CO_2)	Green	22–30 mEq/L	20–28 mEq/L
		22–30 mmol/L (SI units)	
Carbon monoxide (CO)	Lavender	< 2.5% saturation of Hb	Same as adult
Carboxyhemoglobin (may be done in hematology)		2%– 9% saturation of Hb (smokers)	
		180–450 mg/L (SI units)	Child: 30–65 mg/dL

Chloride (Cl)	Red	95–105 mEq/L 95–105 mmol/L (SI units)	Newborn: 94–112 mEq/L Infant: 95–110 mEq/L Child: 98–105 mEq/L
Cholesterol	Red	Desirable level: < 200 mg/dL Moderate risk: 200–240 mg/dL High risk: > 240 mg/dL	Infant: 90–130 mg/dL 2–19 years: Desirable level: 130–170 mg/dL; Moderate risk: 171–84 mg/dL; High risk: > 185 mg/dL
Cortisol	Green	8 AM–10 AM: 5–23 μg/dL; 138–635 nmol/L (SI units) 4 PM–6 PM: 3–13 μg/dL; 83–359 nmol/L (SI units)	8 AM–10 AM: 15–25 μg/dL 4 PM–6 PM: 5–10 μg/dL
Creatinine phosphokinase (CPK)	Red	Male: 5–35 μg/mL; 30–180 IU/L, 55–170 U/L at 37°C (SI units) Female: 5–25 μg/mL; 25–150 IU/L; 30–135 U/L at 37°C (SI units)	Newborn: 65–580 IU/L at 30°C Child: Male: 0–70 IU/L at 30°C Female: 0–50 IU/L at 30°C
Creatinine	Red	0.5–1.5 mg/dL 45–132.3 μmol/L (SI units)	Newborn: 0.8–1.4 mg/dL Infant: 0.7–1.7 mg/dL 2–6 years: 0.3–0.6 mg/dL, 24–54 μmol/L (SI units) 7–18 years: 0.4–1.2 mg/dL, 36–106 μmol/L (SI units)

(continues)

Chemistry	Color-Top Tube	Reference Values	
		Adult	*Child*
Digoxin	Red	Therapeutic: 0.5–2 ng/mL; 0.5–2 nmol/L (SI units) Toxic: > 2 ng/mL; > 2.6 nmol/L (SI units)	Therapeutic: Infant: 1–3 ng/mL; 1–3 nmol/L (SI units) Toxic: > 3.5 ng/mL
D-xylose absorption	Red	25–40 mg/dL/2 hr Older adult same as adult	30 mg/dL/1 hr
Estrogen	Red	Male: 10–50 pg/mL Female: Early menstrual cycle: 60–200 pg/mL Midcycle: 120–440 pg/mL	 1–6 years: 3–10 pg/mL 8–12 years: <30 pg/mL
Fasting blood sugar (FBS)	Gray or red	Male: 40–155 pg/mL 70–110 mg/dL (serum)	 Newborn: 30–80 mg/dL
Feasting blood sugar (See *Postprandial blood sugar, P. TK.*)		60–100 mg/dL (blood)	Child: 60–100 mg/dL
Ferritin	Red	Female: 10–125 ng/mL 10–125 µg/L (SI units) Male: 35–300 ng/mL 35–300 µg/L (SI units)	Newborn: 20–200 ng/mL Infant: 30–200 ng/mL 1–16 years: 8–140 ng/mL

Folate (folic acid) (may be done by nuclear medicine)	Red	3–16 ng/mL (bioassay) >2.5 ng/mL (RIA; serum) 200–700 ng/mL (RBC)	Same as adult
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Red	Pre/postovulation: 4–30 mU/mL Midcycle: 10–90 mU/mL Postmenopausal: 40–170 mU/mL Male: 4–25 mU/mL	5–12 mU/mL
Gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT)	Red	Male: 4–23 IU/l Female: 3–13 IU/L; 4–33 U/L at 37°C (SI units)	
Glucose—fasting blood sugar (*See Fasting blood sugar, P. TK.*)			
Glucose tolerance test (GTT)	Gray or red		

Time	Serum (mg/dL)	Blood (mg/dL)	Child (6 years or older)
Fasting	70–110	60–100	Same as adult
0.5 hour	<160	<150	
1 hour	<170	<160	
2 hour	<125	<115	
3 hour	Fasting level	Fasting level	

(continues)

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Chemistry</th><th rowspan="2">Color-Top Tube</th><th colspan="2">Reference Values</th></tr>
<tr><th>Adult</th><th>Child</th></tr>
<tr><td>Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG)</td><td>Red</td><td>Non-pregnant female: <0.01 IU/mL
<table>
<tr><th>Pregnant (Weeks)</th><th>Values</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0.01–0.04 IU/mL</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>0.03–0.10 IU/mL</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>0.10–1.0 IU/mL</td></tr>
<tr><td>5–12</td><td>10–100 IU/mL</td></tr>
<tr><td>13–25</td><td>10–30 IU/mL</td></tr>
<tr><td>26–40</td><td>5–15 IU/mL</td></tr>
</table></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Human immunosuppressive virus (HIV)</td><td>Red</td><td>Negative</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Human leukocyte antigen (HLA)</td><td>Green</td><td>Histocompatibility match</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Immunoglobulins</td><td>Red</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Insulin</td><td>Red</td><td>5–25 μU/mL</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Iron</td><td>Red</td><td>50–150 μg/dL; 10–27 μmol/L (SI units)</td><td>Infant (6 months–2 years): 40–100 μg/dL
Newborn: 100–270 μg/dL</td></tr>
<tr><td>Iron-binding capacity (IBC, TIBC)</td><td>Red</td><td>250–450 μg/dL</td><td>Infant (6 months–2 years): 100–350 μg/dL
Child: same as adult</td></tr>
</table>

Lactic acid	Green	Arterial blood: 0.5–2.0 mEq/L; <11.3 mg/dL Venous blood: 0.5–1.5 mEq/L; 8.1–15.3 mg/dL Critical: >5 mEq/L; >45 mg/dL	
Lactic dehydrogenase (LDH/LD)	Red	100–190 IU/L; 70–250 U/L	Newborn: 300–1500 IU/L Child: 50–150 IU/L
Lead	Lavender or green	10–20 µg/dL 20–40 µg/dL (acceptable)	10–20 mg/dL 20–30 µg/dL (acceptable)
Lipase	Red	20–180 IU/L 14–280 mU/mL 14–280 U/L (SI units)	Infant: 9–105 IU/L at 37°C Child: 20–136 IU/L at 37°C
Lipoproteins (*See Cholesterol, P. TK; Phospholipids, P. TK; and Triglycerides, P. TK.*)			
Luteinizing hormone (LH)	Red or lavender	Pre/postovulation: 5–30 mIU/mL Midcycle: 50–150 mIU/mL Postmenopause: >35 mIU/mL Male: 5–25 mIU/mL	6–12 years: <10 mIU/mL 13–18 years: <20 mIU/mL
Magnesium (Mg)	Red	1.5–2.5 mEq/L; 1.8–3.0 mg/dL	Newborn: 1.4–2.9 mEq/L Child: 1.6–2.6 mEq/L
Osmolality	Red	280–300 mOsm/kg	270–290 mOsm/kg
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Red	PTH: 11–54 pg/mL C-Terminal PTH: 50–330 pg/mL; N-Terminal PTH: 8–24 pg/mL	

(continues)

Chemistry	Color-Top Tube	Reference Values	
		Adult	*Child*
Phosphorus (P) (inorganic)	Red	1.7–2.6 mEq/L 2.5–4.5 mg/dL	Newborn: 3.5–8.6 mg/dL Infant: 4.5–6.7 mg/dL Child: 4.5–5.5 mg/dL
Postprandial blood sugar (feasting: PPBS)	Gray Blood/ Plasma Serum Red	Adult: serum and plasma: <140 mg/dL/2 hr; <7.8 mmol/L (SI units) Whole blood: <120 mg/dL/2 hr; <6.7 mmol/L (SI units) Elderly: Serum: <160 mg/dL; <8.9 mmol/L (SI units) Whole blood: <140 mg/dL; <7.8 mmol/L (SI units) Serum: <140 mg/dL; <6.7 mmol/L (SI units)	Same as adult
Potassium (K)	Red	3.5–5.3 mEq/L 3.5–5.3 mmol/L (SI units)	Infant: 3.6–5.8 mEq/L Child: 3.5–5.5 mEq/L
Progesterone	Red	Female: Follicular phase: 0.1–1.5 ng/mL Luteal: 2–28 ng/mL Pregnancy: First trimester: 9–50 ng/mL Second trimester: 18–150 ng/mL Third trimester: 60–260 ng/mL Male: <1.0 ng/mL	

Prostate-specific antigen (PSA)	Red	Normal: 0–4 ng/mL BPH: 4–19 ng/mL Prostate cancer: 10–120 ng/mL	
Protein	Red	6.0–8.0 g/dL	Premature: 4.2–7.6 g/dL Newborn: 4.6–7.4 g/dL Infant: 6.0–6.7 g/dL Child: 6.2–8.0 g/dL
Protein electrophoresis	Red	Albumin: 3.5–5.0 g/dL; 52%–68% of total protein	Premature: 3.0–4.2 g/dL Newborn: 3.5–5.4 g/dL Infant: 4.4–5.4 g/dL Child: 4.0–5.8 g/dL
		Globulin: 1.5–3.5 g/dL; 32%–48% of total protein	
Renin	Lavender	Normal sodium diet: supine: 0.2–2.3 ng/mL; upright: 1.6–4.3 ng/mL. Restricted salt diet: upright: 4.1–10.8 ng/mL	3–5 years: 1.0–6.5 ng/mL 5–10 years: 0.5–6.0 ng/mL
Serotonin	Lavender	50–175 ng/mL; 10–30 μg/dL; 0.29–1.15 μmol/L (SI units)	
Sodium (Na)	Red	135–145 mEq/L 135–142 nmol/L (SI units)	Infant: 134–150 mEq/L Child: 135–145 mEq/L
T_3	Red	80–200 ng/dL	Newborn: 90–170 ng/dL Child, 6–12 years: 115–190 ng/dL

(continues)

Chemistry	Color-Top Tube	Reference Values	
		Adult	*Child*
Thyroxine (T_2)	Red	4.5–11.5 µg/dL (T_4 by column) 5–12 µg/dL (T_4 RIA) 1.0–2.3 ng/dL (Thyroxine iodine)	Newborn: 11–23 µg/dL 1–4 months: 7.5–16.5 µg/dL 4–12 months: 5.5–14.5 µg/dL 1–6 years: 5.5–13.5 µg/dL 6–10 years: 5–12.5 µg/dL
Triglycerides	Red	10–150 mg/dL 0.11–2.09 mmol/L (SI units)	Infant: 5–40 mg/dL Child: 10–135 mg/dL
Uric acid	Red	Male: 3.5–8.0 mg/dL Female: 2.8–6.8 mg/dL	2.5–5.5 mg/dL
Zinc	Navy-blue	60–150 µg/dL 11–23 µmol/L (SI units)	
Aldosterone		6–25 µg/24 hr	Not usually done
Amylase		4–37 U/L/2 hr	Not usually done
Bilirubin and bile		Negative to 0.02 mg/dL	Same as adult
Calcium (Ca)		100–250 mg/24 hr (average calcium diet) 2.50–6.25 mmol/24 hr	Same as adult

	Reference Values	
Urine Chemistry	***Adult***	***Child***
Cortisol	24–105 µg/24 hr	
Creatinine clearance	85–135 mL/min	Similar to adult
Creatinine	Male: 20–26 mg/kg/24 hr; 0.18–0.23 mmol/kg/24 hr (SI units) Female: 14–22 mg/kg/24 hr; 0.12–0.19 mmol/kg/24 hr (SI units)	
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Follicular: 2–15 IU/24 hr Luteal phase: 4–20 IU/24 hr Menopause: >50 IU/24 hr	<10 mUU/24 hr (prepubertal)
Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG)	Positive for pregnancy: no agglutination Negative for pregnancy: agglutination	Not usually performed
Ketone bodies (acetone)	Negative	Negative

(continues)

	Reference Values	
Urine Chemistry	***Adult***	***Child***
17-Ketosteroids (17-KS)	Male: 5–25 mg/24 hr Female: 5–15 mg/24 hr >65 years: 4–8 mg/24 hr	Infant: 1 mg/24 hr 1–3 years: <2 mg/24 hr 3–6 years: <3 mg/24 hr 7–10 years: <4 mg/24 hr 10–12 years: Male: <6 mg/24 hr Female: <5 mg/24 hr Adolescent: Male: <3–15 mg/24 hr Female: <3–12 mg/24 hr
Myoglobin	None detected	
Osmolality	50–1200 mOsm/kg Average: 200–800 mOsm/kg	Newborn: 100–600 mOsm/kg Child: same as adult
Phenylketonuria (PKU)	Not usually done	PKU: negative (positive when serum phenylalanine is 12–15 mg/dL) Guthrie: negative (positive when serum phenylalanine is 4 mg/dL)
Potassium (K)	25–120 mEq/24 hr 25–120 mmol/24 hr (SI units)	17–57 mEq/24 hr

Protein	0–5 µg/24 hr	
Sodium (Na)	40–220 mEq/24 hr	Same as adult
Uric acid	250–500 mg/24 hr (low-purine diet)	Same as adult
Urinalysis		
pH	4.5–8.0	Newborn: 5–7 Child: 4.5–8
Specific gravity	1.005–1.030	Newborn: 1.001–1.020 Child: Same as adult
Protein	Negative	Negative
Glucose	Negative	Negative
Ketones	Negative	Negative
RBC	1–2/low-power field	Rare
WBC	3–4	0–4
Casts	Occasional hyaline	Rare

	Reference Values	
Others	***Adult***	***Child***
Urobilinogen	Random: 0.3–3.5 mg/dL 0.05–2.5 mg/24 hr 0.5–4.0 Ehrlich units/24 hr 0.09–4.23 µmol/24 hr (SI units)	Same as adult

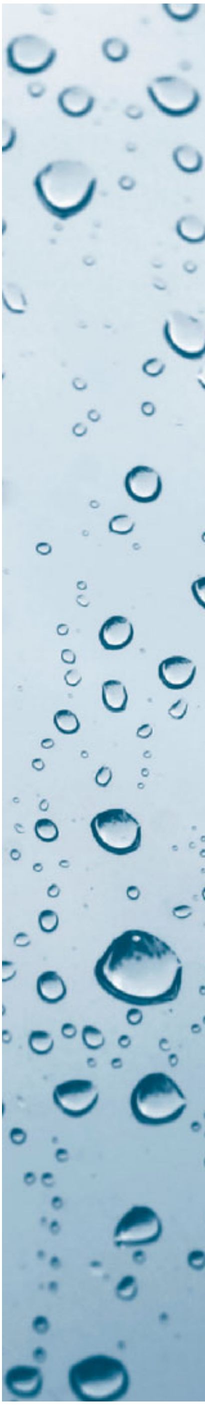
(continues)

	Reference Values	
Others	***Adult***	***Child***
Arterial blood gases (ABGs)		
pH	7.35–7.45	7.36–7.44
$PaCO_2$	35–45 mm Hg	Same as adult
PaO_2	75–100 mm Hg	Same as adult
HCO_3	24–28 mEq/L	Same as adult
BE	+2 to –2 (∓2 mEq/L)	Same as adult
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)		
Pressure	75–175 mm H_2O	50–100 mm H_2O
Cell count	0–8 mm^3	0–8 mm^3
Protein	15–45 mg/dL	15–45 mg/dL
Chloride	118–132 mEq/L	120–128 mEq/L
Glucose	40–80 mg/dL	35–75 mg/dL
Culture	No organism	No organism

Adapted from *Laboratory and Diagnostic Tests with Nursing Implications* (7th ed.), by J. L. Kee, 2002, East Rutherford, NJ., Prentice Hall Health. Reprinted with permission.

Appendix B

Foods Rich in Potassium, Sodium, Calcium, Magnesium, Chloride, and Phosphorus



Classes	Potassium	Sodium	Calcium	Magnesium	Chloride	Phosphorus
Daily requirements	3–4 g	2–4 g	800 mg	300–350 mg	3–9 g	800–200 mg
Beverages	Cocoa, Coca-Cola, coffee, wines, orange juice, tomato juice	Pepsi-Cola, tea, decaffeinated coffee		Cocoa		
Fruit and fruit juices	Citrus fruits: oranges, grapefruit juices: grapefruit (canned), orange (canned), prune (canned), tomato (canned)		Fruit drink with added calcium	Bananas		
	Fruits: apricots (dry), bananas, cherries, cantaloupe, dates, figs, raisins (dry), strawberries watermelon, prunes, peaches		Figs	Average	High only in dates and banana	
Bread products and cereal	Average to low amount	White bread, soda crackers, and wheat flakes		Cereals with oats Whole grain cereal		Whole grain cereal

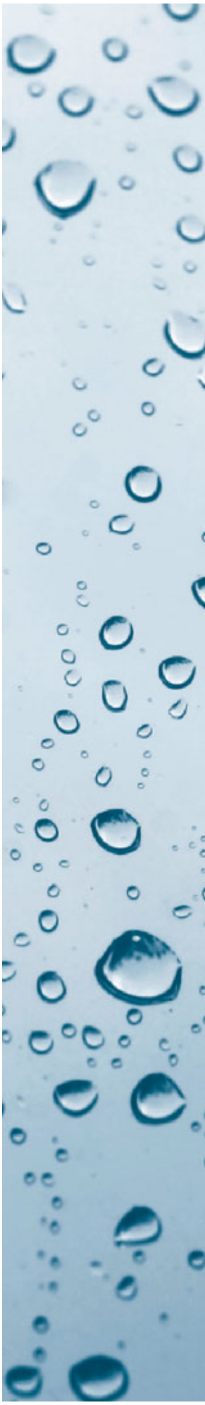
Dairy products	Average to low—milk, buttermilk	Butter, cheese, and margarine	Milk, cheese	Milk (average)	Cheese, milk	Cheese, milk, eggs
Nuts	Almonds, Brazil nuts, cashews, and peanuts	Low, except if salted	Brazil nuts (moderate)	Almonds, Brazil nuts, peanuts, and walnuts		Peanuts
Vegetables	Baked beans, carrots (raw), celery (raw), dandelion greens, lima beans (canned), mustard greens, tomatoes, spinach *Note*: Nearly all vegetables are rich in potassium when raw; but K will be lost if water used in cooking is discarded	Average to low Celery (high average)	Baked beans, kale, mustard and turnip greens, broccoli, tofu	Leafy green’s sag	Spinach celery	Dry beans
Meat, fish, and poultry	Average—meats High average—sardines, codfish, scallops	Corned beef, bacon, ham, crab, tuna fish, sausage (pork) Low in poultry	Salmon, meats, chicken, egg yolks	Fish, shrimp Low in poultry Low in meats Egg, average	Eggs, crabs, fish (average), turkey	Beef, pork, fish, chicken, turkey

(continues)

Classes	Potassium	Sodium	Calcium	Magnesium	Chloride	Phosphorus
Miscellaneous	Catsup (average), spices, potato chips, and peanut butter	Catsup, mayonnaise, potato chips, pretzels, pickles, dill, olives, mustard, Worcestershire sauce, celery salt, salad dressing—French and Italian	Molasses	Chocolate and chocolate bars, chocolate syrup Molasses Table salt		

Appendix C

The Joint Commission's (TJC) List of Accepted Abbreviations



ABBREVIATIONS: DRUG MEASUREMENTS AND DRUG FORMS RECOMMENDED BY TJC

In 2005, The Joint Commission (TJC) (formerly known as the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations [JCAHO]) issued a new list of abbreviations that should not be used, but rather written out to avoid misinterpretation.

Below is the "Do Not Use" abbreviation list, followed by a list of abbreviations that could possibly be included in future "Do Not Use" lists.

Abbreviation	Preferred
q.d., Q.D.	Write "daily" or "every day."
q.o.d., Q.O.D.	Write "every other day."
U	Write "unit."
IU	Write "international unit."
MS, $MS0_4$	Write "morphine sulfate."
$MgS0_4$	Write "magnesium sulfate."
.5 mg	Use zero before a decimal point when the dose is less than a whole.
1.0 mg	Do not use a decimal point or zero after a whole number.

The following abbreviations could possibly be included in future Joint Commissions "Do Not Use" lists.

Abbreviation	Preferred
c.c.	Use "mL" (milliliter).
µg	Use "mcg."
>	Write "greater than."
<	Write "less than."
drug name abbreviations	Write out the full name of the drug.
apothecary units	Use metric units instead.
@	Write "at."

TJC lists of acceptable abbreviations follow in three categories:

- Drug measurements and drug forms
- Routes of drug administration
- Times of administration.

Selected abbreviations are listed below. These are frequently used in drug therapy and must be known by the nurse.

Drug Measurements and Drug Forms

Abbreviation	Meaning
cap	capsule
dr	dram
elix	elixir
g, gm., G, GM	gram
gr	grain
gtt	drops
kg	kilogram
l, L	liter
m^2	square meter
mcg	microgram
mEq	milliequivalent
mg	milligram
mL, ml	milliliter
m, min	minimum
oz	ounce
pt	pint
qt	quart
SR	sustained release
ss	one half
supp	suppository
susp	suspension
T.O.	telephone order
T, tbsp	tablespoon
t, tsp	teaspoon
V.O.	verbal order

Routes of Drug Administration

Abbreviations	Meaning
A.D., ad	right ear
A.S., as	left ear
A.U., au	both ears
ID	intradermal
IM	intramuscular
IV	intravenous

(continues)

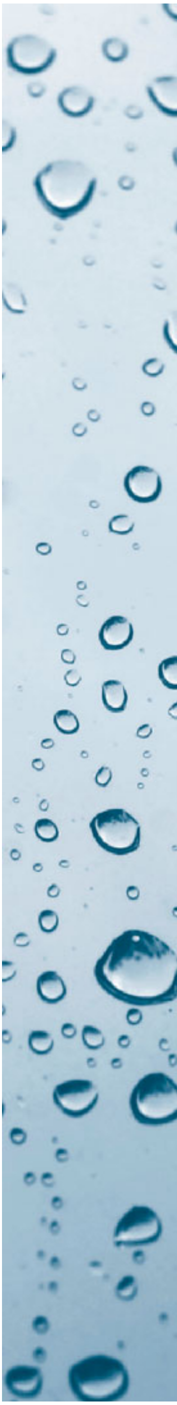
Abbreviations	Meaning
IVPB	intravenous piggyback
KVO	keep vein open
L	left
NGT	nasogastric tube
O.D., od	right eye
O.S., os	left eye
O.U., ou	both eyes
PO, po, os	by mouth
®	right
SC, subc, sc, SQ, subQ	subcutaneous
SL, sl, subl	sublingual
TKO	to keep open
Vag	vaginal

Times of Administration

Abbreviations	Meaning
AC, ac	before meals
ad lib	as desired
B.i.d., b.i.d.	twice a day
c	with
hs	hour of sleep
NPO	nothing by mouth
PC, pc	after meals
PRN, p.r.n.	whenever necessary, as needed
q	every
qAM	every morning
qh	every hour
q2h	every 2 hours
q4h	every 4 hours
q6h	every 6 hours
q8h	every 8 hours
s	without
SOS	once if necessary: if there is a need
Stat	immediately
T.I.D., t.i.d.	three times a day

Please refer to the Joint Commission Web site at *www.jointcommission.org* and that of the Institute for Safe Medication practices at *www.ismp.org* for more detailed safety information.

References/ Bibliography



Acid-base tutorial. Tulane University School of Medicine, Department of Anesthesiology. (2006). Available at http://www.acid-base.com.

Adams, M., & Pelter, M. (2004). Electrolyte imbalances. *American Journal of Critical Care, 13*(1), 85–86.

Adroque, H. J., & Madias, N. E. (2000). Hyponatremia. *New England Journal of Medicine, 342*(21), 1581–1589.

Ahrns, K. S., & Harkins, D. R. (1999). Initial resuscitation after burn injury: Therapies, strategies, and controversies. *AACN Clinical Issues in Advanced Practice and Critical Care Nursing, 10*(1), 46–60.

Allen, L., & O'Connor, C. (2007). Management of acute decompensated heart failure. *Canadian Medical Association Journal, 176*(6), 797–805.

Allison, S., & Lobo, D. (2004). Fluid and electrolytes in the elderly. *Current Opinion in Clinical Nutrition and Metabolic Care, 7*, 27–33.

American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) & American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG). (2002). *Guidelines for perinatal care* (5th ed.). Washington, D.C.: Author.

American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma. (1997). *Advanced trauma life support course.* Chicago: Author.

American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma. (1999). *Resources for optimal care of the injured patient.* Chicago: Author.

American Diabetes Association. (2002). Hyperglycemic crises in patients with diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care, 25*(1), S100–S108.

American Nurses Association. (1991). *Standards of clinical nursing practice.* Kansas City: Author.

American Thoracic Society (2007). *Standards for the diagnosis and treatment of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.* Retrieved August 7, 2007 from http://www.thoracic.org/sections/copd/for-health-professionals/introduction/index.html.

American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society. *Statement on pulmonary rehabilitation* (2005). Retrieved August 7, 2007 http://www.thoracic.org/sections/publications/statements/pages/respiratory-disease-adults/atserspr0606.html.

Aminoff, M. J. (2001). Nervous system. In L. M. Tierney, S. J. McPhee, & M. A. Papadakis (Eds.), *Current medical diagnosis and treatment* (pp. 969–1027). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Balasubramanyam, A., Garza, G., Rodriguez, L, Hampe, C. S., Gaur, L., Lernmark, A., & Maldonado, M.R. (2006). Accuracy and predictive value of classification schemes for ketosis-prone diabetes. *Diabetes Care, 29*, 2575–2579.

Barnett, M. L. (1999). Hypercalcemia. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing, 15*(3), 190–201.

Barth, M., & Jensen, C. (2006). Postoperative nursing care of gastric bypass patients. *American Journal of Critical Care, 15*(4), 378–387.

Bartley, M. K., & Laskowski-Jones, L. (1995). Postsplenectomy sepsis syndrome. *American Journal of Nursing, 95*(1), 56A–56D.

Bayley, E., & Turke, S. (1999). *A comprehensive curriculum for trauma nursing.* Boston: Jones & Bartlett.

Behrman, R. E., Kliegman, R. M., & Arvin, A. M. (2000). *Nelson textbook of pediatrics* (16th ed.). Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders.

Black, J. M., & Matassarin-Jacobs, E. (2002). *Medical-surgical nursing* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders.

Body, J. J. (2000). Current and future directions in medical therapy: Hypercalcemia. *Cancer, 88* (Supple. 12), 3054–3058.

Bordow, R. A., Ries, A. L., & Morris, T. A. (2005). *Manual of clinical problems in pulmonary medicine* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

Bove, L. A. (1994). How fluids and electrolytes shift after surgery. *Nursing 1994, 24*(8), 34–39.

Braman, S. S. (2006). Chronic cough due to chronic bronchitis: ACCP evidence-based clinical practice guideline. *Chest, 129,* 104S–115S.

Brownie, S. (2006). Why are elderly individuals at risk of nutritional deficiency? *International Journal of Nursing Practice, 12,* 110–118.

Burger, C. (2004). Emergency: hypokalemia. *American Journal of Nursing*, *104*(11), 61–65.

Burn Foundation. (2006). *Nursing care of the patient with a burn injury: An introductory seminar for student nurses.* Symposium conducted at the Crozier-Chester Burn Center, Chester, PA.

Carlstedt, F., & Lind, L. (2001). Hypocalcemic syndromes. *Critical Care Clinics, 17*(1), 139–153.

Carpentito, L. J. (2005). *Nursing diagnosis application to clinical practice* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott.

Cawley, M. J. (2007). Hypernatremia: current treatment strategies and the role of vasopressin antagonists. *Annual Pharmacotherapy, 41*(5), 840–850.

Celli, B. R., MacNee, W. American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society Task Force. (2004). Standards for the diagnosis and treatment of patients with COPD: A summary of the ATS/ERS position paper. *European Respiratory Journal, 23,* 932–946.

Clark, B. A., & Brown, R. S. (1995). Potassium homeostasis and hyperkalemic syndromes. *Endocrinology and Metabolism Clinics of North America, 24*(3), 573–591.

Cohn, J. N., Kowey, P. R., Whelton, P. K., & Prisant, M. (2000, Sept. 11). New guidelines for potassium replacement in clinical practice. *Archives of Internal Medicine, 160,* 2429–2436.

Copstead, L. C., & Banasik, J. L. (2005). *Pathophysiology.* Philadelphia: Saunders.

Cornell, S. (1997). Maintaining a fluid balance. *Advances for Nurse Practitioners, 5*(12), 43–44.

Crensaw, J., & Winslow, E. (2002). Preoperative fasting: Old habits die hard. *American Journal of Nursing, 102*(5), 36–43.

Cummins, R. O. (Ed.). (2005). *ACLS: Principles and practice.* Dallas: American Heart Association.

Daun, L. (2005). Don’t assume dehydrated children always need IVs. *ED Nursing, 8*(6).

D’Avella, D., & Tomei, G. (2001). Guidelines for medical and surgical management in head trauma patients in the United States and Europe. In L. P. Miller & R. L. Hayes (Eds.), *Head trauma: Basic, preclinical and clinical directions* (pp. 385–415). New York: Wiley-Liss.

Davidhizar, R., Dunn, C., & Hart, A. (2004). A review of the literature on how important water is to the world’s elderly population. *International Nursing Review, 51,* 159–166.

Davis, K. D., & Attie, M. F. (1991). Management of severe hypercalcemia. *Critical Care Clinics, 7*(1), 175–189.

Decaux, Guy (2006). Is asymptomatic hyponatremia really asymptomatic? *The Journal of Medicine, 119*(7A), S79–S82.

Dechman, G., & Wilson, C. R. (2004). Evidence underlying breathing retraining in people with stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Physical Therapy*, *84*, 1189–1197.

Des Jardins, T., & Burton, G. G. (2000). *Clinical manifestations and assessment of respiratory diseases* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Doran, A. (1992). S.I.A.D.D.: Is your patient at risk? *Nursing 1992, 22*(6); 60–63.

Dunbar, S., Jacobson, L., & Deaton, C. (1998). Heart failure: Strategies to enhance patient self management. *AACN Clinical Issues in Advanced Practice and Critical Care Nursing, 9*(2), 244–256.

Ellis, D. A., Cunningham, P. B., Podolski, C. L., & Cakan, N. (2007). Multisystemic therapy for adolescents with poorly-controlled type 1 diabetes: Stability of treatment effects in a randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 73,* 168–175.

Emergency Nurses Association. (2000). *Trauma nursing core course* (5th ed.). Park Ridge, IL: Author.

Ezzone, S. A. (1999). Tumor lysis syndrome. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing, 15*(3), 202–208.

Fall, P. J. (2000). Hyponatremia and hypernatremia. *Postgraduate Medicine, 107*(5), 75–82.

Figueroa, M. & Peters, J. (2006). Congestive heart failure: Diagnosis, pathophysiology, therapy, and implications for respiratory care. *Respiratory Care, 51*(4), 403–412.

Francis, J. (2001). ECG challenge-hypocalcemia. *Emergency Medicine, 3*(8), 41–42.

Gennan, F. J. (1998). Hypokalemia. *New England Journal of Medicine, 352,* 135–140.

Ginde, A. A., Pelletier, A. J., & Camargo, C. A. (2006). National study of U.S. emergency department visits with diabetic ketoacidosis, 1993–2003. *Diabetes Care, 29,* 2117–2119.

Glebisch, G., Krapf, R., and Wagner, C. (2007). Renal and extrarenal regulation of potassium. *Kidney International, 72*, 397–410.

Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (2006). *Pocket guide to COPD diagnosis, management, and prevention: A guide for health care professionals*. Retrieved August 7, 2007 from http://www.goldcopd.com/Guidelineitem.asp?l1=2&l2=1&intId=1116.

Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. (2001). NHLBI/WHO workshop report. Retrieved on March 29, 2002, from http://www.goldcopd.com/exec_summary/summary_2001.

Gross, P. (2001). Correction of hyponatremia. *Seminars in Nephrology, 21*(3), 269–272.

Guell, R., Casan, P., Belda, J., Sangenis, M., Morante, F., Guyatt, G. H., et al. (2000). Long-term effects of outpatient rehabilitation of COPD: A randomized trial. *Chest, 117,* 976–983.

Gura, M. (2001). Heart failure: Pathophysiology, therapeutic strategies, and assessment of treatment outcomes. *Medscape Nursing.* Retrieved November 19, 2001, from http://nurses.medscape.com/Medscape/nurse/journal/2001/v01.no3/mns1105.01.gura.html.

Guyton, A. C., & Hall, J. (1995). *Textbook of medical physiology* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Harding, L., Bellemare, S., Wiebe, N., Russell, K., Klassen, T. P., & Craig, W. (2007). Oral versus intravenous rehydration for treating dehydration due to gastroenteritis in children (review). *Evidence-based child health: A Cochrane review journal, 2,* 163–218.

Held, J. L. (1995). Correcting fluid and electrolyte imbalance. *Nursing 1995, 25*(4), 71.

Hilton, G. (2001). Emergency: Thermal burns. *American Journal of Nursing, 101*(11), 32–34.

Hockenberry, M. (2005). *Wong's nursing care of children.* St. Louis: Mosby.

Hockenberry, M. J., Wilson, D., Winkelstein, M. L., & Kline, N. E. (2003). *Wong's nursing care of infants and children* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Hogg, J. (2004). Pathophysiology of airflow limitation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *The Lancet, 364,* 703–721.

Iggulden, H. (1999). Dehydration and electrolyte disturbance. *Nursing Standard, 12*(19), 48–54.

Ignatavicius, D. D., & Workman, M. L. (2002). *Medical-surgical nursing: Critical thinking for collaborative care* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders.

Innerarity, S., & Stark, J. (1997). *Fluid and electrolytes.* Springhouse, PA: Springhouse.

Intravenous Nursing Society. (2000). Intravenous standards. *Infusion Nursing 23*(65).

Jones, A. M., Moseley, M. J., Halfmann, S. J., Health, A. H., & Henkelman, N. J. (1991). Fluid volume dynamics. *Critical Care Nurse, 11*(4), 74–76.

Jones, A., & Rowe, B. (2000). Bronchopulmonary hygiene physical therapy and chronic obstructive lung disease: A systematic review. *Heart and Lung, 29,* 125–135.

Josephson, D. L. (1999). *Intravenous infusion therapy for nurses: Principles and practice.* Clifton Park, NY: Delmar Learning.

Kamel, K. S., Ethier, J. H., & Richardson, M. A. (1990). Urine electrolytes and osmolality: When and how to use them. *American Journal of Nephrology, 10*(2), 89–102.

Kapoor, M., & Chan, G. Z. (2001). Fluid and electrolyte abnormalities. *Critical Care Clinics, 17*(3), 503–529.

Kaufman, J. S. (2007). Nursing management: Obstructive pulmonary diseases. In S. L. Lewis, M. M. Heitkemper, S. R. Dirksen, P. G. O'Brien, & L. Bucher (Eds.). *Medical-surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems* (7th ed., pp. 607–663). Philadelphia: Mosby-Elsevier.

Kee, J. L. (2002). *Laboratory and diagnostic tests with nursing implications* (6th ed.) East Rutherford: Prentice Hall Health.

King, C. K., Glass, R., Bresee, J. S., & Duggan, C. (2003). Managing acute gastroenteritis among children. *Centers for Disease Control-Morbidity and Mortality Weekly, 52* (RR16), 7–16.

Kitabchi, A. E., Umpierrez, G. E., Murphy, M. B., & Kreisberg, R. A. (2006). Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes: A consensus statement from the American Diabetes Association. *Diabetes Care, 29,* 2739–2748.

Knebel, A. R., Bentz, E., & Barnes, P. (2000). Brief report. Dyspnea management of alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency: Effect of oxygen administration. *Nursing Research, 49,* 333–338.

Kokko, J. P., & Tanner, R. L. (1995). *Fluids and electrolytes* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Kugler, J. P., & Hustead, T. (2000, June 15). Hyponatremia and hypernatremia in the elderly. *American Family Physician, 61,* 3623–3634.

Langfeldt, L. A., & Cooley, M. E. (2003). Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion in malignancy: Review and implications for nursing management. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing, 7*(4), 425–430.

Laskowski-Jones, L. (2006a). Adult and pediatric emergency drugs. In J. Kee, E. Hayes, & L. E. McCuistion (Eds.), *Pharmacology: A nursing process approach* (5th ed., pp. 906–923). St. Louis, MO: Saunders-Elsevier.

Laskowski-Jones, L. (2006b). Emergency! Responding to trauma—your priorities in the first hour. *Nursing 2006, 36*(9), 52–59.

Laskowski-Jones, L., (2006c). First aid for bleeding wounds. *Nursing 2006, 36*(9), 50–51.

Laskowski-Jones, L. (2007a). Nursing management: Acute intracranial problems. In S. L. Lewis, M. M. Heitkemper, S. R. Dirksen, P. G. O'Brien, & L. Bucher (Eds), *Medical-surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems* (7th ed., pp. 1467–1501). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.

Laskowski-Jones, L. (2007b). Nursing management: Peripheral nerve and spinal cord problems. In S. L. Lewis, M. M. Heitkemper, S. R. Dirksen, P. G. O'Brien, & L. Bucher (Eds.). *Medical-surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems* (7th ed., pp. 1580–1613). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.

Laskowski-Jones, L., & Toulson, K. (2006). Emergency and mass casualty nursing. In D. Ignatavicius & L. Workman (Eds.), *Medical-surgical nursing: Critical thinking for collaborative care* (5th ed., pp. 156 – 172). Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders.

Latifi, R., & Merrell, R. C. (Eds.). (2002). *Nutritional support of cancer and transplant patients.* Austin, TX: Eurekah.com.

Lewis, S., Heitkemper, M., & Dirksen, S. (2000). *Medical-surgical nursing assessment and management of clinical practice* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby.

Lewis, S. L., Heitkemper, M. M., Dirksen, S. R., O'Brien, P. G., & Bucher, L. (2007). *Medical = surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems.* (7th ed.). ST. Louis: Mosby.

London, M., Ladewig, P. W., Ball, J. W., & Bindler, R. (2003). *Maternal and child nursing care*. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall.

Luckey, A., & Parsa, C. (2003). Fluid and electrolytes in the aged. *Archives of Surgery, 138,* 1055–1060.

Mago, R., Bilker, W., Have, T., Harralson, T., Streim, J., Parmalee, P., & Katz, I. (2000). Clinical laboratory measures in relation to depression, disability, and cognitive impairment in elderly patients. *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 4*(4), 327–332.

Mandal, A. K. (1997). Hypokalemia and hyperkalemia. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America, 81,* 611–639.

Mange, K., Matsuura, D., Cizman, B., Soto, H., Ziyadeh, F., Goldfarb, S., et al. (1997). Language guiding therapy: The case of dehydration versus volume depletion. *Annals of Internal Medicine, 127*(9), 848–853.

March, K. (1999). Acute head injury. In L. Bucher & S. Melander (Eds.), *Critical care nursing* (pp. 843–867). Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders.

Marik, P. E. (2001). *Handbook of evidence-based critical care.* New York: Springer.

Martin, R. Y., & Schrier, R. W. (1995). Renal sodium excretion and edematous disorders. *Endocrinology and Metabolism Clinics of North America, 24*(3), 459–475.

Matheny, N. (1996). *Fluid and electrolyte balance* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott.

Matheny, N., Wehrle, M., Wierssema, L., & Clark, J. (1998). Testing feeding tube placement: Auscultation vs. pH method. *American Journal of Nursing, 98*(5), 37–42.

Mattox, K., Feliciano, D., & Moore, E. (2000). *Trauma* (4th ed.). Stamford, CT: Appleton & Lange.

McCool, F. D., & Rosen, M. J. (2006). Nonpharmacologic airway clearance therapies: ACCP evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest, 129,* 250S–259S.

Meighan-Davies, J., & Parnell, H. (2000). Management of COPD. *Journal of Community Nursing, 14,* 10, 22, 24.

Merrill, P. (2000). Oncologic emergencies. *Primary Care Practitioner, 4*(4), 400–409.

Munger, M. A. (2007). New agents for managing hyponatremia in hospitalized patients. *American Journal of Health System Pharmacy, 64*(3), 253–265.

Murphy, R., Driscoll, P., & O'Driscoll, R. (2001). Emergency oxygen therapy for the COPD patient. *Emergency Medical Journal, 18,* 333–339.

NANDA. (2007). *Nursing diagnoses: Definitions and classification 2007–2008*. Philadelphia: North American Nursing Diagnosis Association.

National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2004). *Quick reference guide: Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in adults in primary and secondary care*. Retrieved August 7, 2007, from http://www.nice.org.uk/pdf/CG012quickrefguide.pdf.

National Kidney Foundation K/DOQI (2002). Clinical practice guidelines for chronic kidney disease: evaluation, classification and stratification. *American Journal of Kidney Disease, 39* (Suppl. 1), S1–266.

Novartis Foundation Symposium. (2001). *Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Pathogenesis to treatment.* Chichester, UK: John Wiley & Sons.

Newman, S. P. (2005). Inhaler treatment options in COPD. *European Respiratory Review, 14,* 102–108.

Oren, R. M. (2005). Hyponatremia in congestive heart failure. *American Journal of Cardiology, 95*(Suppl.), 2B–7B.

Oskvig, R. M. (1999). Special problems in the elderly. *Chest, 115*(5), 158–164.

Oster, J. R. Reston, R. A., & Materson, B. J. (1994). Fluid and electrolyte disorders in congestive heart failure. *Seminars in Nephrology, 14*(5), 485–505.

Perazella, M. A. (2000). Drug-induced hyperkalemia: Old culprits and new offenders. *American Journal of Medicine, 109*(9), 307–314.

Pereira, N., & Cooper, G. (2000). Systolic heart failure: Practical implementation of standard guidelines. *Clinical Cornerstone.* Retrieved July 16, 2001, from http://nurses.medscape.com/excerptaMed/clincornerstne/2000/v03.n02/clc03.02.pere.html

Perry, A. G., & Potter, P. A. (2002). *Clinical nursing skills and techniques* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Phillips, L. D. (2001). *Manual of I.V. therapeutics* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: F. A. Davis.

Popov, T. (2005). Review: Capillary refill time, abnormal skin turgor, and abdominal respiratory patterns are useful signs for detecting dehydration in children. *Evidence-based nursing*, *8*(2), 57.

Porth, C. M. (2002). *Pathophysiology: Concepts of altered health states* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

Powers, F. (1999). The role of chloride in acid-base balance. *Journal of Intravenous Nursing, 22*(5), 286–291.

Practice parameter: The management of acute gastroenteritis in young children. (1996). *Pediatrics, 97,* 424–436.

Rabe, K. F., Beghe, B., Luppi, F., & Fabbri, L. M. (2007). Update in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease 2006. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine, 175,* 1222–1234.

Ragland, G. (1990). Electrolyte abnormalities in the alcoholic patient. *Emergency Medicine Clinics of North America, 8*(4), 761–771.

R. C. (Eds.). (2002). *Nutritional support of cancer and transplant patients.* Austin, TX: Eurekah.com.

Redden, M., & Wotton, K. (2001). Clinical decision making by nursing when faced with third-spacing fluid shift: How well do they fare? *Gastroenterology Nursing, 24*(4), 182–191.

Riera, H. S., Rubio, T. M., Ruiz, F. O., Ramos, P. J., Otero, D. D. C., Hernandez, T. E., et al. (2001). Inspiratory muscle training in patients with COPD. *Chest, 120,* 748–757.

Robertson, J., & Shilkofski, N. (2005). *The Harriet Lane Handbook: A manual for pediatric house officers* (17th ed.). Philadelphia: Elsevier Mosby.

Rose, B. D. (1997). *Clinical physiology of acid-base and electrolyte disorders* (3rd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Rosenberger, K. (1998). Management of electrolyte abnormalities: Hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia, and hypokalemia. *Journal of American Academy of Nurse Practitioners, 10*(5), 209–217.

Sadovsky, R. (2002). Managing dyspnea in patients with advanced COPD. *American Family Physician, 65,* 935.

Samann, A., Muhlhauser, I., Bener, R., Hunger-Dathe, W., Kloos, C., & Muller, U. A. (2006). Flexible intensive insulin therapy in adults with type 1 diabetes and high risk for severe hypoglycemia and diabetic ketoacidosis. *Diabetes Care, 29,* 2196–2199.

Schuer, R. W. (1997). *Renal and electrolyte disorders* (3rd ed.). Boston: Little, Brown.

Selekman, J., Scofield, S., & Swenson-Brousell, C. (1999). Diabetes update in the pediatric population. *Pediatric Nursing, 25*(6), 666–669.

Shuey, K. M. (2004). Hypercalcemia of malignancy: part 1. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing, 8*(2), 209–210.

Simmons, P., & Simmons, M. (2004). Informed nursing practice: The administration of oxygen to patients with COPD. *MEDSURG Nursing, 13*, 82–86.

Singh, S., & Frances, S. (2004). Management of hypercalcemia. *Geriatric Medicine, 34*(5), 35–42.

Snow, V., Lascher, S., & Mottur-Pilson, C. (2001). The evidence base for management of acute exacerbations of COPD: Clinical practice guideline (Pt. 1). *Chest, 110,* 1185–1189.

Sommers, M. S., & Johnson, S. A. (Eds.). (2002). *Diseases and disorders* (pp. 176–181). Philadelphia: F. A. Davis.

Taccetta-Chapnick, M. (2002). Using Carvedilol to treat heart failure. *Critical Care Nurse, 22*(2), 36–58.

Terry, J. (1994). The major electrolytes. *Journal of Intravenous Nursing, 17*(5), 240–247.

The Merck manual. (2003). Acid-base balance (chap. 138). Available at http://www.merck.com/pubs/mmanual_home/sec 12/138.htm.

Truesdell, S. (2000). Helping patients with COPD manage episodes of acute shortness of breath. *MEDSURG Nursing, 9,* 178–182.

Ulrickson, M. (2005). Oral rehydration therapy in children with acute gastroenteritis. *JAAPA, 16*(1), 24–29.

Upadhyay, A., Jaber, B. L., and Madias, N. E. (2006). Incidence and prevalence of hyponatremia. *The American Journal of Medicine, 119*(7A), S30–S35.

Vriji, A., & Murr, M. (2006). Caring for patients after bariatric surgery. *American Family Physician, 73,* (1403–1408).

Votey, S. R., Peters, A. L., & Hoffman, J. R. (1989). Disorders of water metabolism: Hyponatremia and hypernatremia. *Emergency Medicine Clinics of North America, 7*(4), 749–765.

Wang, J., Williams, D. E., Narayan, K. M. V., & Geiss, L. S. (2006). Declining death rates from hyperglycemic crisis among adults with diabetes, U.S., 1985–2002. *Diabetes Care, 29,* 2018–2022.

Watkins, S. L. (1995). The basics of fluid and electrolyte therapy. *Pediatric Annals, 24*(1), 16–22.

Webster, M., Brady, W., and Morris, F. (2002). Recognizing signs of danger: ECG changes resulting from an abnormal serum potassium concentration. *Emergency Medicine, 19*(1), 74–77.

Whedon, M. B., & Wujcik, D. (1997). *Blood and marrow stem cell transplantation* (2nd ed.). Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett.

Wiebelhaus, P., & Hansen, S. L. (2001). Burn emergencies. *Nursing Management, 32*(7), 29–36.

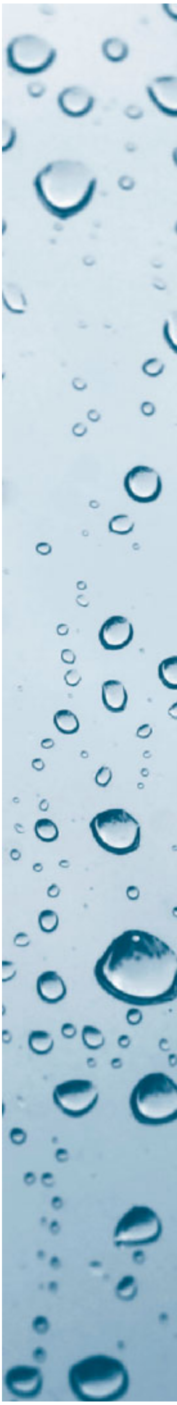
Wolfsdoft, J., Glaser, N., & Sperling, M. A. (2006). Diabetic ketoacidosis in infants, children, and adolescents. *Diabetes Care, 29,* 1150–1159.

Wouters, E. F. M., Creutzberg, E. C., & Schols, A. M. W. J. (2002). Systemic effects in COPD, *Chest, 121,* 127S–130S.

Wu, C., Lee, Y. Y., Bain, K., & Wichaikhum, O. (2001). Coping behaviors of individuals with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *MEDSURG Nursing, 10,* 315–321.

Yarbro, C. H., Frogge, M. H., & Goodman, M. (Eds.). (1999). *Cancer symptom management* (2nd ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.

Yarbro, C., Goodman, M., & Frogge, M. H. (2000). *Cancer nursing: Principles and practice* (5th ed.). Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett.



Glossary

abdomen the portion of the body lying between the chest and the pelvis.

accessory muscles respiratory muscles of inspiration and expiration that are activated when the diaphragm becomes depressed as in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

acid any substance that is sour in taste and that neutralizes a basic substance.

acid metabolites see metabolites.

ACTH abbreviation for adrenocorticotropic hormone. A hormone secreted by the hypophysis or pituitary gland. It stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete cortisone.

ADH abbreviation for antidiuretic hormone. A hormone to lessen urine secretion. Also known as vasopressin.

afterload arterial blood pressure which the ventricle must overcome when ejecting blood during systole; due largely to blood vessel resistance.

albumin the main protein in blood plasma; its major function is to maintain the osmotic pressure of blood.

alimentary pertaining to nutrition; the alimentary tract is a digestive tube from the mouth to the anus.

alkaline any substance that can neutralize an acid and that, when combined with an acid, forms a salt. Having the properties of a base.

alveolus air sac or cell of the lung.

amphoteric ability to bind or release excess H^+.

anasacra generalized body edema.

anastomosis a procedure that reconnects healthy sections of body tissue after surgical removal of a piece of body tissue (as in bariatric surgery).

anesthetic an agent causing an insensibility to pain or touch.

anion a negatively charged ion.

anorexia a loss of appetite.

anoxia oxygen deficiency.

antipyretic a medication that reduces body core temperature.

anuria a complete urinary suppression.

aortic arch the arch of the aorta soon after it leaves the heart.

aphasia a loss of the power of speech.

arrhythmia irregular heart rhythm.

arterioles minute arteries leading into a capillary.

arteriosclerosis pertaining to thickening, hardening, and loss of elasticity of the walls of the blood vessels.

artery a vessel carrying blood from the heart to the tissue.

ascites an accumulation of serous fluid in the peritoneal cavity.

atrium the upper chamber of each half of the heart.

atrophy decrease in size of structure.

autoregulation control of blood flow to tissue by a change in the tissue.

azotemia an excessive quantity of nitrogenous waste products in the blood, increased BUN and creatinine.

bariatrics the practice of medicine that deals with the causes, prevention, and treatment of obesity. The term *bariatrics* comes from the Greek root *baro* (“weight”) and *iatrics* (“treatment”).

baroreceptor sensory nerve ending in a blood vessel (e.g. aorta, carotid sinus) which is stimulated by blood vessel stretch (increase in blood pressure).

base any substance that can neutralize an acid and that, when combined with an acid, forms a salt.

base excess the amount of protons (H^+ ions) required to return the pH of blood to 7.35 if the partial pressure of carbon dioxide is adjusted to normal.

BE abbreviation for base excess.

biliary pertaining to or conveying bile.

body mass index (BMI) medical standard for measuring degree of obesity. Determined by dividing a person’s weight in kilograms by height in meters squared (kg/m^2).

blood intravascular fluid composed of red and white blood cells and platelets.

bradycardia pulse rate less than 50 beats per minute.

brain interstitium spaces between the brain tissues.

brain parenchyma functional tissue of the brain.

brain stem herniation protrusion of the medulla, pons, and midbrain into the spinal canal.

bronchiectasis dilatation of a bronchus.

BUN abbreviation for blood urea nitrogen. Urea is a by-product of protein metabolism.

butterfly (winged tip) an infusion device designed for short-term parenteral therapy. Each set consists of a wing-tip needle with a metal cannula, plastic or rubber wings, and plastic catheter or hub.

capillary a minute blood vessel connecting the smallest arteries (arterioles) with the smallest veins (venules).

capillary permeability diffusion of substances from capillary walls into tissue spaces.

carbonic anhydrase inhibitor an agent used as a diuretic that inhibits the enzyme carbonic anhydrase.

cardiac dysrhythmia an abnormal heart rhythm.

cardiac output amount of blood ejected by the heart each minute.

cardiac reserve capacity of the heart to respond to increased burden.

carotid sinus a dilated area at the bifurcation of the carotid artery that is richly supplied with sensory nerve endings of the sinus branch of the vagus nerve.

cation a positively charged ion.

cerebral hemorrhage bleeding into brain tissue from rupture in a blood vessel.

cerebral spinal fluid fluid contained within the ventricles of the brain and spinal cord.

cerebrospinal fluid fluid found and circulating through the brain and spinal cord.

cirrhosis a chronic disease of the liver characterized by degenerative changes in the liver cells.

colloid gelatinlike substance, e.g., protein.

colloid osmotic pressure pressure exerted by non-diffusible substances.

contraindication nonindicated form of therapy.

conversion table:

1 kilogram (kg) = 2.2 pounds (lb)

1 gram 5 = 1000 milligrams (mg) or 15 grains (gr)

1 liter (L) = 1 quart or 1000 milliliters (ml)

1 cubic centimeter (cc) = 1 milliliter (ml); 100 ml = 1dl

1 deciliter (dl) = 100 ml

1 drop (gtt) = 1 minim (m)

qh = every hour

x = times

COPD exacerbation an acute event in the disease, characterized by worsening symptoms, beyond the patient's baseline dyspnea, cough, and/or sputum, that may require alterations in medications and other treatment strategies.

cortisone a hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex.

crackle the sound heard in the chest due to the passage of air through the bronchi, which contain secretions of fluid.

creatinine end product of creatine (amino acid).

crystalloids diffusible substances dissolved in solution that pass through a selectively permeable membrane.

CVP abbreviation for central venous pressure. It is the venous pressure in the vena cava or the heart's right atrium.

cyanosis a bluish or grayish discoloration of the skin due to a lack of oxygen in the hemoglobin of the blood.

cytogenic originating within the cell.

decerebrate condition wherein the brain cells are affected, causing the extremities to be in rigid extension.

decompensation failure to compensate.

decorticate condition wherein the cortex of the brain is affected, causing the extremities to be in rigid flexion.

deficit lack of.

dehydration a state of extracellular fluid volume deficit commonly seen in infants and small children where sodium may be low, normal, or elevated.

dependent edema see edema.

dermis the true skin layer.

dextran colloid hyperosmolar solution.

dextrose a simple sugar, also known as glucose.

diabetes mellitus a disorder of carbohydrate metabolism due to an inadequate production or utilization of insulin.

diabetic acidosis an excessive production of ketone bodies (acid) due to a lack of insulin and inability to utilize carbohydrates, also called diabetic ketoacidosis.

dialysate an isotonic solution used in dialysis that has similar electrolyte content to plasma or Ringer's solution, with the exception of potassium.

diaphoresis excessive perspiration.

diaphragm a major inspiratory muscle that separates the abdominal and thoracic cavities.

diarrhea increased water in the stool, which results in increased stool frequency or loose consistency, yielding a stool output of greater than 10 g/kg/day in children and 200 g/day in adults.

diastolic dysfunction decreased compliance of the left ventricles leading to increased left ventricular end-diastolic pressure.

diffusion the movement of each molecule along its own pathway irrespective of all other molecules; going in various directions, mostly from greater to lesser concentration.

diplopia double vision.

disequilibrium syndrome rapid shift of fluids and electrolytes during hemodialysis which causes CNS disturbances.

dissociation a separation.

diuresis an abnormal increase in urine excretion.

diuretic a drug used to increase the secretion of urine.

- **potassium-sparing diuretic** retains potassium and excretes other electrolytes.
- **potassium-wasting diuretic** excretes potassium and other electrolytes.

diverticulum a sac or pouch in the wall of an organ.

dry weight normal body weight without excess water.

duodenal pertaining to the duodenum, which is the first part of the small intestine.

dyspnea a labored or difficult breathing.

edema an abnormal retention of fluid in the interstitial spaces.

- **dependent edema** fluid present in the interstitial spaces due to gravity (frequency found in extremities after being in standing or sitting position).
- **nondependent edema** fluid present in the interstitial spaces, but not necessarily due to gravity alone, e.g., cardiac, liver, or kidney dysfunction.
- **pitting edema** depression in the edematous tissue.
- **pulmonary edema** fluid throughout the lung tissue.
- **refractory edema** fluid in the interstitial spaces that does not respond to diuretics.

e.g. for example.

electrolyte a substance that, when in solution, conducts an electric current.

endothelium flat cells that line the blood and lymphatic vessels.

enzyme a catalyst, capable of inducting chemical changes in other substances.

epidermis an outer layer of the skin.

erythrocytes red blood cells.

erythropoietin factor secreted by the kidneys that stimulates bone marrow to produce red blood cells.

exacerbation increase in the severity of a disease or any of its symptoms.

excess too much.

excretion an elimination of waste products from the body.

excretory pertaining to excretion.

expectorate coughing up or spitting out sputum or mucus from the lungs and airways.

extracellular fluid volume shift (ECF shift) shift of fluid within the ECF compartment from intravascular to interstitial spaces or from interstitial to intravascular spaces.

extract outside of.

extravasation the accumulation of vesicant or an irritant in the subcutaneous tissue.

febrile pertaining to a fever.

fatus gas in the alimentary tract.

forced expiratory volume the maximum volume of gas that can be exhaled over a specific time period.

forced vital capacity the volume of gas that can be exhaled as forcefully and rapidly as possible after a maximal inspiration.

fremitus a vibration palpated through the chest wall when an individual is speaking.

gastroenteritis an acute inflammation of the stomach and intestines associated with diarrhea and vomiting that is common in children. It may be caused by viral, bacterial, or parasitic infections.

generic name reflects the chemical family to which a drug belongs. The name never changes.

globulin a group of simple proteins.

glomerulus a capillary loop enclosed within the Bowman's capsule of the kidney.

glucose formed from carbohydrates during digestion and frequently called dextrose.

glycogen a stored form of sugar in the liver or muscle that can be converted to glucose.

glycosuria sugar in the urine.

heart failure (HF) circulatory congestion related to pump failure.

hematocrit the volume of red blood cells or erythrocytes in a given volume of blood.

hemoconcentration increase in number of red blood cells and solutes and a decrease in plasma volume.

hemodilution an increase in the volume of blood plasma relative to red blood cells; decrease in red blood cell concentration in blood.

hemoglobin a protein conjugated with iron-containing pigment. It carries oxygen in red blood cells.

hemolysis destruction of red blood cells and causing release of hemoglobin into the serum.

heparin anticoagulant.

hepatic coma liver failure.

hernia a protrusion of an organ through the wall of a cavity.

inguinal protrusion of the intestine at the inguinal opening.

homeostasis uniformity or stability. State of equilibrium of the internal environment.

hormone a chemical substance originating in an organ or gland, which travels through the blood and is capable of increasing body activity or secretion.

ADH abbreviation for antidiuretic hormone; a hormone to lessen urine secretion.

hydrocephalus increased fluid retention in the ventricles of the brain.

hydrostatic pressure pressure of fluids at equilibrium.

hyperalimentation intravenous administration of a hyperosmolar solution of glucose, protein, vitamins, and electrolytes to promote tissue synthesis.

hyperbaric oxygenation oxygen under pressure carried in the plasma.

hypercalcemia a higher than normal calcium ion concentration in the blood.

hypercapnia a higher than normal carbon dioxide concentration in the blood.

hyperchloremia a higher than normal chloride ion concentration in the blood.

hyperglycemia a higher than normal glucose concentration in the blood.

hyperkalemia a higher than normal potassium ion concentration in the blood.

hypernatremia a higher than normal sodium ion concentration in the blood.

hyperosmotic increased number of osmols per solution. Increased solute concentration as compared to plasma, having a higher than normal osmolarity.

hyperplasia abnormal increase in the number of normal cells in tissue.

hyperresonance an exaggerated "empty barrel" sound heard over air-filled spaces when percussing the chest.

hypertension high blood pressure.

essential a high blood pressure that develops in the absence of kidney disease. It is also called primary hypertension.

hypertonic having a higher solute concentration than plasma, associated mainly with IV fluids.

hypertrophy increased thickening of a structure.

hyperventilation breathing at a rate greater than needed for body requirements.

hypervolemia a higher than normal blood volume.

hypocalcemia a lower than normal calcium ion concentration in the blood.

hypochloremia a lower than normal chloride ion concentration in the blood.

hypoglycemia a lower than normal glucose concentration in the blood.

hypokalemia a lower than normal potassium ion concentration in the blood.

hyponatremia a lower than normal sodium ion concentration in the blood.

hypo-osmolality condition where number for formed particles in the serum is decreased.

hypo-osmolar decreased number of osmols per solution. Decreased solute concentration as compared to plasma.

hypophysis the pituitary gland.

hypotension a low blood pressure.

hypotonic a lower solute concentration than plasma.

hypoventilation breathing at a rate lower than required to meet metabolic demands.

hypovolemia a lower than normal blood volume.

hypoxemia a lower than normal oxygen concentration in the blood. A decrease in PaO_2 which acts as a strong cerebral vasodilator.

hypoxia decreased oxygen content in body tissue.

i.e. that is.

incarcerated constricted, as an irreducible hernia.

infusion an injection of a solution directly into a vein.

insensible perspiration water loss by diffusion through the skin.

inside-needle catheter (INC) an infusion device designed for short-term parenteral therapy (opposite of the over-needle catheter—ONC) that is constructed exactly opposite the ONC.

insulin a hormone secreted by the beta cells of the islets of Langerhans found in the pancreas. It is important in the oxidation and utilization of blood sugar (glucose).

inter between.

interstitial edema accumulation of excess fluid between cells; this is extracellular fluid.

intervention action.

intra within.

intracerebral edema accumulation of excess fluid within the brain tissue and structures.

intracerebral hypertension increased pressure within the brain structures.

intracranial pressure pressure exerted by fluid within the brain structures.

intrapleural within the pleura, the serous membrane surrounding the lungs and lining the thoracic cavity.

ion a particle carrying either a positive or negative charge.

ionization separation into ions.

ionizing separating into ions.

iso-osmolar having the same osmolarity as plasma.

isotonic same solute concentration as plasma.

jugular venous distention visible, abnormal dilation of the jugular veins as a result of fluid overload.

ketone bodies oxidation of fatty acids.

ketonuria excess ketones in urine.

Kussmaul breathing hyperactive, abnormally vigorous breathing.

kyphosis increased convexity of the curvature of the spine, hunchback.

lassitude weariness.

lethary abnormally tired or drowsy, as in a stupor.

lidocaine also known as xylocaine. A drug used as a surface anesthetic. It also can be used to treat ventricular arrhythmias.

lymph interstitial fluid that has entered lymphatic vessels. Similar to plasma but with lower protein content; usually alkaline (pH = 7.4).

lymphatic system system of lymphatic vessels and lymph nodes that conveys interstitial fluid from the tissues to the veins.

malaise uneasiness, ill feeling.

medulla the central portion of an organ, e.g., adrenal gland; also, the medulla oblongata of the brain stem.

membrane a layer of tissue that covers a surface or organ or separates a space; also, the outer surface of a cell.

mercurial diuretic a drug that affects the proximal tubules of the kidneys by inhibiting reabsorption of sodium.

metabolism the physical and chemical changes involved in the utilization of particular substances.

metabolites the by-products of cellular metabolism or catabolism.

midbrain connects the pons and cerebellum with the cerebral hemispheres.

milliequivalent the chemical activity of elements.

milligram measures the weight of ions.

milliosmol 1/1000th of an osmol. It involves the osmotic activity of a solution.

molar 1 gram molecular weight of a substance.

mucociliary pertaining to mucus and to the cilia in the airways.

myocardium the muscle of the heart.

narcotic a drug that depresses the central nervous system, relieves pain, and can induce sleep.

necrosis death of cells or tissue.

nephritis inflammation of the kidney.

nephrosis degenerative changes in the kidney.

neuromuscular pertaining to the nerve and muscle.

neuromuscular junction the innervation of the nerve with a muscle.

non-dependent edema see edema.

non-volatile acid fixed acid resulting from metabolic processes, excreted by the kidneys.

older age of 65 years or older.

oliguria a diminished amount of urine.

oral rehydration fluid oral fluids designed to replace fluid and electrolyte losses in patient's (usually children) who are able to tolerate liquids. These fluids are made up of similar concentrations of glucose, sodium, potassium, chloride, and bicarbonate of soda. Examples include WHO, Hydra-lyte, Rehydralyte, Lytren, ReSol, and Infalyte.

orthopnea difficulty breathing, unless in an upright position.

osmol a unit for measuring the number of dissolved particles in a solution.

osmolality the number of dissolved particles (osmols or milliosmols) per kilogram of solvent.

osmolarity the number of dissolved particles (osmols or milliosmols) per liter of solution.

osmosis the movement of a solvent (usually water) across a barrier (a membrane) from a solution of lower osmolality to a solution of higher osmolality.

osmotic pressure the pressure on water that develops when two solutions of different osmolalities are separated by a semipermeable membrane.

otorrhea drainage from the ear.

overhydration a state in which there is a saline overload or an extracellular volume overload, often associated with poor fluid management in children, which may result in water intoxication.

over-needle catheter an infusion device designed for short-term parenteral therapy (opposite of the INC). The bevel of the needle extends beyond the catheter.

oxygenation the combination of oxygen in tissues and blood.

oxyhemoglobin hemoglobin carrying oxygen.

packed cells red blood cells (RBCs).

pallor or pallid pale.

PAP abbreviation for pulmonary artery pressure. It measures the pressure in the pulmonary artery.

paracentesis the surgical puncture of a cavity, e.g., abdomen.

parathyroid an endocrine gland secreting the hormone parathormone, which regulates calcium and phosphorus metabolism.

parenchyma functional tissue of an organ.

parenteral therapy introduction of fluids into the body by means other than the alimentary tract.

parietal lobe lobe on the side of the brain lying under the parietal bone.

patency the state of being opened.

PCWP abbreviation for pulmonary capillary wedge pressure. Its reading indicates the pumping ability of the left ventricle. Left ventricular end-diastolic pressure (LVEDP) is the best indicator of ventricular function. PCWP reflects LVEDP.

perfusion passing of fluid through body space.

pericardial sac fibroserous sac enclosing the heart.

pericarditis inflammation of the pericardium or the membrane that encloses the heart.

peristalsis wavelike movement occurring with hollow tubes such as the intestine for the movement of contents.

peritoneal cavity a lining covering the abdominal organs with the exclusion of the kidneys.

permeability capability of fluids and/or other substances, e.g., ions, to diffuse through a human membrane.

phlebitis inflammation of the vein.

physiologic pertaining to body function.

pitting edema see edema.

plasma intravascular fluid composed of water, ions, and colloid. Plasma is frequently referred to as serum.

plasmanate commercially prepared protein product used in place of plasma.

pleural cavity the space between the two pleuras.

pleurisy inflammation of the pleura or the membranes that enclose the lung.

polycythemia increase in red blood cell mass.

polyionic many ions or ionic changes.

polyuria an excessive amount or discharge of urine.

pons part of the brain stem, between the medulla oblongata and the midbrain.

porosity the state of being porous.

portal circulation vessels carrying blood from the intestines to the liver.

postoperative following an operation.

potassium-sparing diuretics see diuretics.

potassium-wasting diuretics see diuretics.

prednisone synthetic hormonal drug resembling cortisone.

preload pressure of the blood that fills the left ventricle during diastole.

pressoreceptor see baroreceptor.

pressure gradient the difference in pressure that makes the fluid flow.

proprioception awareness of one's movement and position in space.

protein nitrogenous compounds essential to all living organisms.

- **plasma** relates to albumin, globulin, and fibrinogen.

serum relates to albumin and globulin.

proteolytic splitting of proteins by hydrolysis of peptide bonds.

pruritis itching.

psychogenic polydipsia psychologic effect of drinking excessive amounts of water.

pulmonary artery pressure see PAP.

pulmonary capillary wedge pressure see PCWP.

pulmonary edema see edema.

pulse oximetry a device that measures oxygen saturation in the blood using a wave of infrared light and a sensor placed on an individual's finger, toe, nose, earlobe, or forehead.

pulse pressure the arithmetic difference between the systolic and diastolic blood pressure.

rationale the reason.

reabsorption the act of absorbing again an excreted substance.

refractory edema see edema.

retention retaining or holding back in the body.

reticular activating system alert awareness system of the brain formed from the thalamus, hypothalamus, and cortex.

rhinorrhea drainage from the nose.

sclerosis hardening of an organ or tissue.

selectively permeable membrane a membrane permeable to water and to some, but not all solutes. The cell membrane is a good example.

semi-Fowler's position 45° elevation.

semipermeable membrane a membrane permeable to water but relatively impermeable to other solutes.

sensible perspiration the loss of water on the skin due to sweat gland activity.

serous cavity a cavity lined by a serous membrane.

serum consists of plasma minus the fibrinogen. It is the same as plasma except that after coagulation of blood, the fibrinogen is removed. Serum is frequently referred to as plasma.

serum albumin albumin in blood plasma or serum (as opposed to albumin in the interstitial fluid).

sign an objective indication of disease.

solute a substance dissolved in a solution.

solvent a liquid with a substance in solution.

specific gravity the density of a substance, e.g., urine, relative to that of distilled water. Water has a specific gravity of 1.000; the specific gravity of urine is higher.

steroids a large family of organic compounds having four hydrocarbon rings. Examples include cortisone, cholesterol, estrogen, and testosterone.

stress effect of a harmful condition or disease(s) affecting the body.

stroke volume amount of blood ejected by the left ventricle with each contraction.

sympathetic nervous system a part of the autonomic nervous system. It can act in an emergency.

symptom subjective indication.

systolic dysfunction the inability of the left ventricle to pump enough blood to perfuse body tissues.

tachycardia a fast heart beat.

tachypnea rapid respirations.

TBSA abbreviation for total body surface area.

tenacious sticky, holding fast.

tetany a nervous affection characterized by tonic spasms of muscles.

thrombophlebitis inflammation of a vein with a thrombus or a blood clot.

tonicity effect of fluid on cellular volume, i.e., electrolytes, BUN, glucose.

total parenteral nutrition (TPN) also known as hyperalimentation.

trade name the name given to a drug by its manufacturer.

transudation the passage of fluid through the pores of a membrane.

trauma an injury.

urea the final product of protein metabolism that is normally excreted by the kidneys.

uremia a toxic condition due to the retention of nitrogenous substances (protein by-products), such as urea, which cannot be excreted by the kidneys.

Valsalva maneuver procedure in which individual takes deep breath and bears down to increase intrathoracic pressure for prevention of air injection. Forced exhalation closes the glottis.

vasoconstriction decrease in size of a blood vessel.

vasodilation increase in size of a blood vessel.

vasogenic originating within the blood vessels.

vasomotor pertaining to the nerves having a muscular contraction or relaxation control of the blood vessel walls.

vasopressors drugs given to contract muscles of the blood vessel walls to increase the blood pressure.

vein a vessel carrying unoxygenated blood to the heart.

ventilation the circulation of air.

- **pulmonary** the inspiration and expiration of air from the lungs.

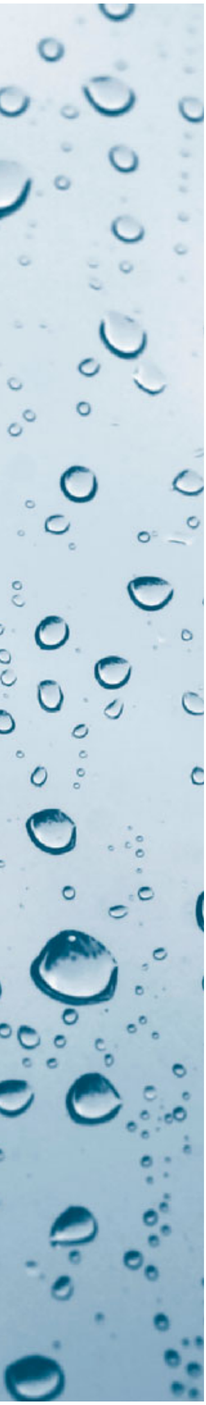
ventricles the lower chambers of the heart.

venules minute veins moving from capillaries.

vertigo dizziness.

volatile acid acid excreted as a gas by the lungs.

winged-tip infusion device see butterfly.



Index

A
- Abbreviations, 380–382
- ABGs, 374t
- Accupril, 68t
- ACE inhibitors
  - heart failure, 320, 322t
  - hyperkalemia, 53t
  - laboratory values, 361t
  - potassium imbalances, 68t
- Acetazolamide, 66t, 100t, 123t
- Acetone (ketone bodies), 359t, 371t
- Acid phosphatase (ACP), 359t
- Acid-base imbalances, 127–152
  - BE, 132, 134, 137
  - clinical considerations, 135–136
  - determination of, 132–136, 133t
  - metabolic acidosis/alkalosis, 131t, 137–144. *see also* Metabolic acidosis/alkalosis
  - $PaCO_2$, 131t, 132, 133t, 134–136
  - pH, 127, 128t, 134–135
  - pH control, 129
  - respiratory acidosis/alkalosis, 131t, 145–152. *see also* Respiratory acidosis/alkalosis
  - serum CO_2, 137
  - summary, 129–131
  - types of, 135t
- Acidosis, 127, 128f. *See also* Acid-base imbalances
- Acute respiratory acidosis (ARA), 146
- ADH. *See* Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)
- Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 294, 303t, 359t
- AFP, 360t
- Aging, 217–223t. *See also* Older adults
- AHF, 365t
- AIDS, 179t
- Air embolism, 173t, 184t
- Airway obstruction, 339t
- Alanine aminotransferase, 360t
- Albumin, 6t, 158, 360t
- Albuterol, 68t, 346t
- Aldosterone
  - lab tests and values, 360t, 371t
  - potassium imbalances, 57
  - regulator of fluid pressure, as, 7t
- Alkaline phosphatase (ALP), 360t
- Alkalosis, 127, 128f. *See also* Acid-base imbalances

Allopurinol, 304
ALP, 360t
ALP^1, 360t
ALP^2, 360t
$Alpha_1$-antitrypsin (AAT), 340t
Alpha-adrenergic blockers, 67t
Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), 360t
ALT, 360t
Altace, 68t
Aluminum antacids, 122, 122t
Aluminum/magnesium antacids, 122t
Alveolar damage, 350
Amikacin, 67t, 100t
Aminoglycosides, 100t
Aminosyn, 155t
Amitryptyline, 84t
Ammonia, 130t, 360t
Ammonia-ammonium, 130t
Amphetamines, 69t
Amphojel, 122t
Amphotericin B, 67t, 85t, 112t
Ampicillin, 67t
Amrinone lactase, 322t
Amylase, 361t, 371t
Anabolism, 54
Androgens, 100t, 123t
Angiotensin II receptor antagonists, 68t
Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors. *see* ACE inhibitors
Anion gap, 133t, 137–138, 361t
Anions, 49–51, 50t, 51t
Anorexia, 179t
Antibiotics, 67t, 85t, 112t, 123t, 347t
Anticancer drugs, 84t
Anticholinergics, 346t
Anticonvulsants, 100t
Antidiabetics, 84t
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)
  clinical oncology, 302, 303t
  GI surgical interventions, 279
  ICFVE, 40, 42
  laboratory values, 361t
  regulator of fluid pressure, as, 7t
  SIADH, 294
Antihemophilic factor (AHF), 356t
Antineoplastics, 84t
Antipsychotics, 84t
ARA. *See* Acute respiratory acidosis (ARA)
Arterial bicarbonate, 137
Arterial blood gases (ABGs), 132, 374t
Ascites, 14t
Aspartate aminotransferase, 361t
Aspirin, 100t
Azlocillin, 67t
Azlocillin Na, 85t

B
Balanced electrolyte solution (BES), 156–157
Barbiturates, 69t, 85t
Basaljel, 122t
Base excess (BE), 132, 133t, 134, 137, 374t
Basophils, 359t
Beclomethasone, 346t
$Beta_2$ agonists, 68t, 346t
Beta-adrenergic agonists, 320, 321–322t
Beta-adrenergic blockers, 68t
Beverages, 376t
Bicarbonate, 18t, 50t
Bicarbonate-carbonic acid, 130t
Bilirubin, 361t
Bilirubin and bile, 371t
Bleeding values, 355t
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN), 361t
Blood/blood components, 18t, 158–159
Body surface area (BSA) burned, 266
Body water
  functions of, 2–3, 2t
  percentage of body weight as, 1, 2f
BRAT diet, 202
Bread products and cereal, 376t
Breathing retraining, 347t
Bronchodilators, 346t
BSA burned, 266
Buffer systems, 129, 130t
BUN/creatine ratio, 362t
Burns/burn shock, 263–272
  assessment, 272
  BSA burned, 266, 268
  classification of, 266, 267t

- clinical management, 269–272
- deficient fluid volume, 273
- etiology, 266
- evaluation/outcomes, 274
- fluid imbalances, 273
- interventions, 273
- management of, 268–269
- nursing diagnoses, 272
- Parkland formula, 270t
- pathophysiology, 263
- patient management, 272–274
- physiologic changes, 264–265t
- rule of nines, 266, 268

C

Ca++ channel blockers, 320
Cachexia, 293, 302
Calcitonin, 83t, 90, 362t
Calcitriol, 94
Calcium, 50t, 89, 91t, 355t, 362t
Calcium antacids, 123t
Calcium carbonate, 123t
Calcium gluconate, 65t, 112t
Calcium imbalances, 89–104, 371t
- assessment, 101–102
- basic information, 90t
- clinical considerations, 101
- clinical management, 97–100
- clinical manifestations, 95, 96t
- drugs, 99, 100t
- ECG changes, 97f
- etiology, 92–95
- evaluation/outcomes, 103–104
- hypercalcemia, 89, 92t, 94t, 96t, 99t, 100t, 103
- hypocalcemia, 89, 92t, 93t, 96t, 98t, 100t, 102–103
- infants and children, 193–194t
- interventions, 102–103
- nursing diagnoses, 102
- pathophysiology, 91, 92t
- patient management, 101–104

Calcium preparations, 98t
Calcium salts, 100t
Calcium-rich goods, 376–378t
Cancer. *See* Clinical oncology
Capoten, 68t, 322t
Capreomycin, 112t
Captopril, 68t, 322t
Carbenicillin, 67t, 85t, 112t
Carbon dioxide combining power, 362t
Carbon monoxide, 362t
Carbonic acid, 145
Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors, 66t
Carboxyhemoglobin, 362t
Cardiogenic shock, 250t, 258t
Cardiovascular disease. *See* Heart failure (HF)
Catabolism, 54
Catapres, 85t
Cations, 49–51, 50t, 51t. *See also specific types*
Central nervous system, 138
Central venous catheters, 164–165, 166f
CeraLyte, 201t
Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP), 285–286
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 286, 374t
Chemical buffer systems, 130t
Chemical compounds, 49
Chemistry, laboratory values, 359–370t
Chest physiotherapy, 347t
Children. *See* Infants and children
Chloride, 50t, 74, 75t, 363t
Chloride functions, 76t
Chloride imbalances. *See* Sodium and chloride imbalances
Chloride-rich foods, 376–378t
Chlorothiazide, 66t
Chlorpropamide, 84t
Chlorthalidone, 100t
Cholesterol, 363t
Cholestyramine, 85t
Chronic diseases, 314–353
- COPD, 338–353
- diabetes mellitus/diabetic ketoacidosis, 325–337
- heart failure, 314–325

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), 146, 338–353
- assessment, 349–350
- clinical considerations, 348–349
- clinical management, 345–348

  - clinical manifestations, 340–345
  - diagnostic/laboratory studies, 344–345t
  - etiology, 338, 340
  - evaluation/outcomes, 352–353
  - interventions, 351–352
  - nursing diagnoses, 350–351
  - pathophysiologic changes, 339–340t
  - pathophysiology, 338
  - patient management, 349–353
  - risk factors, 342t
- Chvostek's sign, 95f
- Ciliary dysfunction, 339t
- Cisplatin, 67t, 84t, 112t
- Clinical oncology, 292–313
  - assessment, 305, 306–308t
  - cachexia, 295, 302
  - clinical management, 295, 302–304
  - clinical manifestations, 293–295
  - decreased cardiac output, 311–312
  - deficient fluid volume, 309
  - disturbed thought processes, 312
  - ectopic hormone production, 302–303
  - etiology, 293
  - evaluation/outcomes, 313
  - excess fluid volume, 310–311
  - hypercalcemia, 304
  - imbalanced nutrition, 309–310
  - interventions, 309–313
  - nursing diagnoses, 308
  - pathophysiology, 292–293
  - patient management, 305
  - risk for injury, 311
  - tumor lysis syndrome, 304
  - urinary elimination, 312–313
- Clinical situations, 189–353. *See also individual subject headings*
  - burns/burn shock, 263–272
  - clinical oncology, 292–313
  - COPD, 338–353
  - diabetes mellitus/diabetic ketoacidosis, 325–337
  - fluid/electrolyte disturbances, 296–301t
  - GI surgical interventions, 275–284
  - heart failure, 314–325
  - increased intracranial pressure, 285–291
  - infants and children, fluids problems in, 190–214
  - older adults, fluid imbalances in, 215–235
  - shock, 247–262
  - trauma, 236–247, 259–262
- Clonidine, 85t
- CNS agents, 69t
- CNS depressants, 85t
- Colchicine, 100t
- Colloid osmotic (oncotic) pressures, 4–6
- Colloid osmotic pressure gradient, 5
- Colloids, 157–158, 255, 256t
- Color-top tubes, 355–374t
- Constipation, 225t
- COPD. *See* Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- Cor pulmonale, 340t
- Corgard, 68t
- Corticosteroids, 67t, 85t, 100t, 112t, 123t
- Cortisol, 363t, 371t
- Cortisone, 67t, 85t, 100t, 112t, 123t
- Cough medicines, 85t
- Coughing techniques, 347t
- Cozaar, 68t
- Creatinine, 363t, 371t
- Creatinine phosphokinase (CPK), 363t
- Crystalloids, 153–187, 252, 255–256, 255t
- Cushing's triad, 288t
- Cyclophosphamide, 69t, 84t
- Cyclosporine, 69t
- Cytogenic edema, 286

D

- Dairy products, 377t
- Darvon, 85t
- Decreased vascular volume, 300t
- Dehydration, 11, 12, 15. *See also* Extracellular fluid volume deficit (ECFVD)
  - degrees of, 16t

- detection of, 15, 19
- DM, 327t
- infants and children, 192t, 195–196t, 202–203
- older adults, 224t, 230–232t, 234–235
- signs and symptoms, 19
- types of, 197–199t

Demeclocycline, 85t

Dependent edema, 30

Dextran, 157–158

Dextrose solutions, 18t, 156, 180

Diabenase, 84t

Diabetes mellitus/diabetic ketoacidosis, 325–337
- assessment, 335
- causes, 328t
- clinical considerations, 334–335
- clinical management, 331–334
- clinical manifestations, 328–331
- electrolyte correction, 333
- etiology, 326, 328
- evaluation/outcomes, 337
- fluid replacement, 331–332
- insulin replacement, 332
- interventions, 336–337
- nursing diagnoses, 336
- pathophysiologic changes, 327t
- pathophysiology, 326
- patient management, 335–337
- treatment modalities, 333–334t
- Type 1/2, 325–326

Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA). *See* Diabetes mellitus/diabetic ketoacidosis

Diaphoresis, 6

Diarrhea, 13

Diet, 31t

Diffusion, 4

Di-Gel, 122t

Digoxin, 31t, 68t, 112t, 318, 321t, 364t

Disorders. *See* Clinical situations

Disturbed thought processes, 312

Diuretics, 320, 321t
- ECFVE/edema, 31t
- heart failure, 321t
- loop, 66t, 100t, 123t, 321t
- magnesium imbalances, 112t
- phosphorus imbalances, 123t
- potassium-sparing, 66t, 69t
- potassium-wasting, 66t, 68t
- sodium imbalances, 84t

DKA. *See* Diabetes mellitus/diabetic ketoacidosis

DM. *See* Diabetes mellitus/diabetic ketoacidosis

"Do Not Use" abbreviation list, 380

Dobutamine, 321t

Dopamine, 321t

Doriden, 100t

Drug forms abbreviation list, 381

Drug measurements abbreviation list, 381

Drugs
- calcium imbalances, 99, 100t
- heart failure, 321–322t
- magnesium imbalances, 111, 112t
- phosphorus imbalances, 122–123t
- potassium imbalances, 65–66, 67–69t
- sodium imbalances, 84, 84–85t

D-xylose absorption, 364t

Dysphagia, 179t

E

ECFVD. *See* Extracellular fluid volume deficit (ECFVD)

ECFVE. *See* Extracellular fluid volume excess (ECFVE)

ECFVS, 35–39, 37t

ECG
- calcium imbalances, 97f
- magnesium imbalances, 110t
- potassium imbalances, 61f, 62t, 63f

Ectopic hormone production, 294, 295, 302–303

Edecrin, 112t

Edema, 23f. *See also* Extracellular fluid volume excess
- clinical manifestations, 266–272
- cytogenic, 286
- dependent, 30
- interstitial, 286
- management, 31t

- nondependent, 30
- older adults, 224t, 226–229t, 235
- peripheral, 22, 24
- physiologic factors leading to, 25–27t
- pulmonary, 22, 24, 28, 174t
- refractory, 30
- vasogenic, 286
- water intoxication, contrasted, 40–41

Elavil, 84t
Elderly. *See* Older adults
Electrolyte equivalents, 50t
Electrolyte imbalances, 19. *See also individual subject headings*
- calcium imbalances, 89–104
- clinical problems, 52–53t
- infants and children, 193–194t, 206–212t
- magnesium imbalances, 105–115
- older adults, 215–216
- phosphorus imbalances, 116–126
- potassium imbalances, 54–73
- sodium and chloride imbalances, 74–88
- TPN, 181–182

Electrolyte replacement, 333, 334t
Electrolyte solutions, 156–157, 157t
Electrolytes, 6t, 49–51, 276
Enalapril, 322t
Endotoxic (septic) shock, 251t, 258t
Enemas, 67t
Enfalute, 201t
Enzymes, 7t
Eosinophils, 359t
Epinephrine, 123t
Epsom salt, 112t
Erthrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), 355t
Estrogen, 68t, 100t, 364t
Ethacrynic acid, 112t
Euvolemic hyponatremia, 81t
Exercise, 347t
Extracellular fluid (ECF), 1, 2t, 4, 51t
Extracellular fluid volume deficit (ECFVD), 11–21
- causes, 13–14t
- clinical considerations, 19
- clinical management, 17–19
- clinical manifestations, 14–17
- degrees of dehydration, 16t
- etiology, 13–14, 15t
- evaluation/outcomes, 21
- interventions, 20–21
- nursing diagnoses, 20
- pathophysiology, 11–12, 15t
- patient management, 19–20
- solution replacement, 18t
- total fluid loss, 17t

Extracellular fluid volume excess (ECFVE), 22–34
- clinical considerations, 31–32
- clinical management, 30–31t
- clinical manifestations, 28–30t
- edema. *see* Edema
- etiology, 24–28
- evaluation/outcomes, 34
- infants and children, 192t
- interventions, 33
- nursing diagnoses, 33
- pathophysiology, 22–24
- patient management, 32–33

Extracellular fluid volume shift (ECFVS), 35–39, 37t

F

Factor assay, I-XIII, laboratory values, 355–356t
Fasting blood sugar (FBS), 364t
Ferritin, 364t
Fever, 14t, 287
Fibrin stabilizing factor (FSF), 356t
Fibrinase, 356t
Fibrinogen, 355t, 356t
Figoxin, 321t
First degree burn, 267t
Fish, 377t
Fleet sodium, 123t
Fluid balance, regulators, 6–7t
Fluid imbalances
- clinical problems, 9–10t
- ECFVD, 11–21. *see also* Extracellular fluid volume deficit
- ECFVE, 22–34. *see also* Extracellular fluid volume excess
- ECFVS, 35–39

  with hypo-osmolar hyponatremia, 81t
  ICFVE, 40–48
  infants and children, 190–214
  older adults, 215–216
Fluid intake/losses, 3t
Fluid loss, 17t
Fluid overload, 185t. *See also* Extracellular fluid volume excess (ECFVE)
Fluid pressures, 4–6
Fluid replacement, 18t
Fluid volume deficit (FVD), 35. *See also* Extracellular fluid volume deficit (ECFVD)
Fluid volume excess (FVE), 35. *See also* Extracellular fluid volume excess (ECFVE)
Folate (folic acid), 365t
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 365t, 371t
Fruit and fruit juices, 376t
FSF, 356t
FSH, 365t, 371t
Furosemide, 100t, 112t, 320, 321t

G

Gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT), 365t
Gas exchange abnormalities, 339t
Gastrin, 123t
Gastrointestinal fistula, 179t
Gastrointestinal (GI) surgical interventions, 275–284
  assessment, 282–283
  clinical considerations, 281–282
  clinical management, 277–281
  clinical manifestations, 278t
  electrolytes, 276, 276t
  evaluation/outcomes, 284
  interventions, 283–284
  nursing diagnoses, 283
  pathophysiologic changes, 278t
  pathophysiology/etiology, 276–277
  patient management, 282–284
  postoperative management, 278–281
  preoperative management, 277–278, 280–281t
Gelusil, 122t
Gentamicin, 67t, 100t, 112t
GGT, 365t
Glucagon, 123t
Glucocorticosteroids, 346t
Glucose, 65t, 123t
Glucose imbalances, TPN, 181–182
Glucose tolerance test (GTT), 365t
Glutethimide, 100t
Glycosuria, 327t
Groshong, 167t
GTT, 365t

H

Hageman factor, 356t
HCG, 366t, 371t
HCO_3, 374t
HCO_3^2, 133t
Hct, 356t
Health problems. *See* Clinical situations
Heart failure (HF), 314–325
  assessment, 323–324
  clinical considerations, 323
  clinical management, 318, 320–322
  clinical manifestations, 317, 319–320t
  etiology, 315, 318t
  evaluation/outcomes, 325
  interventions, 324–325
  medications, 321–322t
  nursing diagnoses, 324
  pathophysiology, 315
  patient management, 323–325
  physiologic and neurohormonal changes, 316–317t
Hematocrit, 159
Hematocrit (Hct), 356t
Hematology, laboratory values, 355–359t
Hematoma, 174t
Hemoconcentration, 159
Hemoglobin, 130t, 356t
Hemorrhage, 14t
Heparin, 68t
Heroin, 69t

HF. *see* Heart failure (HF)
HHS, 326, 328t
HIV, 366t
HLA, 366t
Holliday-Segar method, 203t
Hormones, 7t
Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG), 366t, 371t
Human immunosuppressive virus (HIV), 366t
Human leukocyte antigen (HLA), 366t
Hydration, 346t
Hydration therapy, 154t, 162t
Hydrocephalus, 286
Hydrochlorothiazide, 66t, 321t
HydroDiuril, 321t
Hydrogen ions, 127, 132, 327t
Hydrostatic pressure gradient, 5
Hydrostatic pressures, 4–6
Hydroxyl ions, 127
Hygroton, 100t
Hyperalimentation, 178. *See also* Total parenteral nutrition (TPN)
Hypercalcemia, 89, 92t, 94t, 96t, 99t, 100t, 103, 181, 194t, 294, 295, 296t, 304. *See also* Calcium imbalances
Hypercapnia, 286, 339t
Hyperchloremia, 74, 80–81t, 83t, 88. *See also* Sodium and chloride imbalances
Hyperglycemia, 182, 183, 184t
Hyperinflation, 339t
Hyperkalemia, 59–60t, 65t, 68–69t, 72, 181, 193t, 295, 299t. *See also* Potassium imbalances
Hypermagnesemia, 105, 107t, 110t, 112t, 115. *See also* Magnesium imbalances
Hypernatremia, 74, 75, 77t, 78–79t, 80–81t, 82t, 85t, 88, 193t. *See also* Sodium and chloride imbalances
Hypernatremic dehydration, 198t
Hyperosmolarity, 11, 327t
Hyperosmolar, 8, 12, 12t
Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS), 326, 328t
Hyperphosphatemia, 116, 120t, 123t, 126, 301t. *See also* Phosphorus imbalances
Hypertonic saline, 85t
Hypertonic saline solution, 9
Hyperuricemia, 294, 297t
Hyperventilation, 6, 147t, 286–287
Hypervolemia, 22, 30, 185t. *See also* Extracellular fluid volume excess
Hypervolemic hyponatremia, 81t
Hypnoatremia, 75, 77t
Hypoalbuminemia, 94
Hypocalcemia, 89, 92t, 93t, 96t, 98t, 100t, 102–103, 181, 193t, 301t. *See also* Calcium imbalances
Hypochloremia, 74, 78–79t, 83t, 88. *See also* Sodium and chloride imbalances
Hypoglycemia, 185t
Hypoglycemic reaction, 329, 331
Hypokalemia, 58t, 67–68t, 71–72, 181, 193t, 297–298t, 320. *See also* Potassium imbalances
Hypomagnesemia, 94, 105, 107t, 109t, 111t, 112t, 114, 181, 298t, 302. *See also* Magnesium imbalances
Hyponatremia, 74, 81t, 82t, 84–85t, 87–88, 181, 193t, 296t. *See also* Sodium and chloride imbalances
Hyponatremic dehydration, 199t
Hypo-osmolar, 8, 22, 24t
Hypo-osmolar fluid, 40
Hypo-osmolar hyponatremia, 81t
Hypophosphatemia, 116, 119–120t, 122–123t, 125–126, 181, 300t. *See also* Phosphorus imbalances
Hypotonic solutions, 9, 156
Hypovolemia, 19
Hypovolemic hyponatremia, 81t
Hypovolemic shock, 250t, 257t, 258t
Hypoxemia, 287, 339t

I

Ibuprofen, 69t, 85t
ICFVE. *See* Intracellular fluid volume excess
ICP. *See* Increased intracranial pressure

Immunoglobulins, 366t
Immunohematology, 359t
Immunosuppresive drugs, 69t
Implantable vascular access device (IVAD), 165, 167t
Increased intracranial pressure, 285–291
  assessment, 290
  clinical management, 289–290
  clinical manifestations, 288
  etiology, 287
  evaluation/outcomes, 291
  interventions, 291
  nursing diagnoses, 290–291
  pathophysiology, 285–287
  patient management, 290–291
  signs and symptoms, 288t
Inderal, 68t
Indomethacin, 69t
Infants and children, fluid problems in, 190–214
  assessment, 194–195, 195–196t, 204–205, 206–212t
  clinical management, 200–204
  clinical manifestations, 194–195
  deficient fluid volume, 205
  deficient knowledge (parents), 213
  dehydration, 192t, 194–195, 195–199t, 202–203
  etiology, 192–194
  evaluation/outcomes, 214
  excess fluid volume, 212
  imbalanced nutrition, 212–213
  interventions, 205
  nursing diagnoses, 205
  oral hydration solutions, 200, 201t
  overhydration, 192t, 200t, 212
  pathophysiology, 190–192
  patient management, 204–214
  physiological differences, 191t
  special considerations, 204
Infection, 184t
Infiltration, 172t
Inocor, 322t
Insensible perspiration, 3
Insulin, 31t, 294, 325, 366t
  glucose and, 65t
  magnesium imbalances, 112t
  phosphorus imbalances, 123t
  potassium balance and, 57, 65t, 67t
Insulin replacement, 333, 334t
Insulin shock, 329, 331
Interstitial edema, 286
Interstitial fluid, pressures in, 4–6, 5f
Intestinal obstruction, 14t
Intracellular fluid (ICF), 2t, 51t
Intracellular fluid volume excess (ICFVE), 40–48
  causes, 43t
  clinical considerations, 45–46
  clinical management, 44–45t
  clinical manifestations, 42
  etiology, 41–42
  evaluation/outcomes, 47
  nursing diagnoses, 47
  pathophysiology, 40–41
  patient management, 46–47
  signs and symptoms, 44t
Intravascular fluid, pressures in, 4–6, 5f
Intravenous (IV) solution, tonicity of, 8–9
Intravenous phosphates, 123t
Intravenous sets, 162t
Intravenous therapy. *See* IV therapy
Ionization, 49
Ionized calcium, 362t
Ionosol B, 157t
Ionosol MB, 157t
Ions, 4, 49
Ipratropium, 346t
Iron, 366t
Iron-binding capacity, 366t
Isolyte E, 157t
Isolyte M, 157t
Isolyte R, 157t
Isolyte S, 157t
Isonatremic dehydration, 197t
Iso-osmolar, 11, 12, 12t, 22, 24t
Isotonic solutions, 9
IV lipids, 100t
IV therapy, 153–187
  assessment factors, 165–171
  blood/blood components, 158–159

  central venous catheters, 164–165, 166f
  colloids, 157–158
  common solutions, 154–155t
  complications, 172–175
  crystalloids, 153–157
  flow rate/calculations, 161–163
  infusion devices (short-term therapy), 163–164
  long-term, 164–165
  patient management, 175–177
  purposes, 160–161
  TPN, 178–187. *See also* Total parenteral nutrition
  types of, 162t
IVAD, 165, 167t

K
K penicillin, 68t
Kayexalate, 65t, 67t, 100t
Ketone bodies (acetone), 371t
Ketosis, 327t
Kidneys, 7t
KPO_4 enema, 68t

L
Laboratory tests/values, 354–374t
  ABGs, 374t
  chemistry, 359–370t
  CSF, 374t
  hematology, 355–359t
  urine chemistry, 371–373t
  urobilinogen, 373t
Lactated Ringer's solution, 18t, 153, 156
Lactic acid, 327t
Lactic acidosis, 295, 298–299t, 367t
Lactulose, 85t
Lasix, 100t, 112t, 321t
Laxatives, 67t, 112t
Lead, 367t
Levodopa, 67t
LH, 367t
Licorice, 67t
Lipase, 367t
Lithium, 67t, 84t, 112t
Loop diuretics, 66t, 100t, 123t, 321t
Losartan potassium, 68t
Low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH), 69t
Lund and Browder chart, 268
Lungs, 7t
Luteinizing hormone (LH), 367t
Lymphatics, 7t
Lymphocytes, 359t
Lymphocytes (T & B) assay, 357t

M
Maalox, 122t
Maalox Plus, 122t
Mage, nursing diagnoses, 114
Magnesium, 50t, 105, 106t, 367t
Magnesium citrate, 112t
Magnesium gluconate, 111t
Magnesium hydroxide, 112t
Magnesium imbalances, 105–115
  assessment, 113–114
  basic information, 106t
  clinical considerations, 113
  clinical management, 108–112
  clinical manifestations, 108, 110t
  drugs, 111, 112t
  etiology, 107–108
  evaluation/outcomes, 115
  hypermagnesemia, 105, 107t, 110t, 112t, 115
  hypomagnesemia, 105, 107t, 109t, 111t, 112t, 114
  interventions, 114–115
  pathophysiology, 105–107, 107t
  patient management, 113–115
Magnesium salts, 112t
Magnesium sulfate, 100t, 111, 111t, 112t
Magnesium tolerance (load) test, 108
Magnesium-protein complex (Mg-PLUS), 111t
Magnesium-rich foods, 376–378t
Magonate, 111t
Maintenance therapy, 162t
Malabsorption syndrome, 179t
Malnutrition, 179t
Mannitol, 112t, 123t, 289
Mean arterial pressure (MAP), 285–286

Meat, 377t
Mellaril, 84t
Membrane, 3
Metabolic acidosis/alkalosis, 131t, 137–144
  assessment, 143
  clinical considerations, 142
  clinical management, 141–142
  clinical manifestations, 138–141, 140t
  etiology, 138, 139t, 140t
  evaluation/outcomes, 144
  interventions, 143–144
  nursing diagnoses, 143
  pathophysiology, 137–138
  patient management, 143–144
Metastatic cancer, 179t
Methicillin, 123t
Methlxanthines, 346t
Mezlocillin Na, 85t
Milliequivalents, 49
Milliosmol (mOsm), 4
Milrinone, 322t
Minipress, 322t
Mithracin, 100t
MOM, 112t
Monocytes, 359t
Monro-Kellie doctrine, 285
Morphine, 85t
Motrin, 85t
Mucus hypersecretion, 339t
Mylanta, 123t
Mylanta II, 123t
Myoglobin, 372t

N

Nadolol, 68t
Nafcillin, 67t
Narcotics, 69t
Navane, 84t
Neomycin, 67t, 100t, 112t
Neonates. *See* Infants and children, fluid problems in
Neurogenic shock, 251t, 258t
Neurotrauma. *See* Increased intracranial pressure
Neutra-Phos K, 123t
Neutrophils, 359t
Nicotine, 85t
Nitroglycerin, 322t
Nondependent edema, 30
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 69t
Nonvolatile acid, 132
Normosol M, 157t
Normosol R, 157t
NSAIDs, 69t
Nutritional support, 347t
Nuts, 377t

O

OAF, 296t, 303t
Old blood, 159
Older adults, 215–235
  age-related structural changes, 217–223t
  assessment, 234
  clinical considerations, 233
  clinical management, 216, 233t
  clinical manifestations, 216
  constipation, 225t
  deficient fluid volume, 224t, 230–232t, 234–235
  etiology, 216
  evaluation/outcomes, 235
  excess fluid volume, 224t, 226–229t, 235
  interventions, 234–235
  nursing diagnoses, 234
  pathophysiology, 215–216
  patient management, 234–235
Olsmolarity, 4
ONC, 169
Oncology. *See* Clinical oncology
Oral phosphates, 123t
Oral rehydration solutions (ORS), 200, 201t
Oral rehydration therapy (ORS), 202
Orinase, 84t
Oriwer factor, 356t
Osmol, 4
Osmolality, 8, 367t, 372t
Osmosis, 3–4
Osteoclast activating factor (OAF), 296, 303t

Overhydration, 22, 30, 192t, 200t, 212, 235. *See also* Extracellular fluid volume excess
Over-needle catheter, 169
Oxygen, 346t

P

Packed cells, 158–159
$PaCO_2$, 131t, 132, 133t, 134–136, 374t
PaO_2, 374t
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)
  calcium imbalances, 83t, 90, 92t
  clinical oncology, 294, 303t
  lab tests and values, 367t
  phosphorus imbalances, 116
Parkland formula, 270t
Parnate, 84t
Partial thromboplastin time (PTT), 357t
Pedialyte, 201t
Penicillin, 67t
Penicillin Na, 85t
Pepcid, 280
Peripheral edema, 22
Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC), 165, 167t
Permeability, 3
pH
  acid base balance/imbalance, 127–128, 128t, 133t, 134–135
  lab tests and values, 374t
pH control, 129
Phenylketonuria (PKU), 372t
Phlebitis, 172t
Phosphate, 50t, 130t, 333
Phosphate buffer system, 130t
Phosphate enema, 123t
Phosphate laxatives, 123t
Phosphodiesterase inhibitors, 320, 322t
Phosphorus, 89, 116, 118t, 122t, 368t
Phosphorus imbalances, 116–126
  assessment, 124–125
  basic information, 117t
  clinical considerations, 124
  clinical management, 121–123
  clinical manifestations, 118–121, 121t
  drugs, 122–123t
  etiology, 117–118
  evaluation/outcomes, 126
  hyperphosphatemia, 116, 120t, 126
  hypophosphatemia, 116, 119–120t, 125–126
  interventions, 125–126
  nursing diagnoses, 125
  pathophysiology, 117
  patient management, 124–126
Phospho-Soda, 123t
Phospohorus-rich foods, 376–378t
PICC, 165
Piperacillin, 67t
PKU, 372t
Plasma, 4, 158, 159
Plasma colloid osmotic pressure, 5–6, 50
Plasma expanders, 155t, 157–158
Plasma thomboplastin component, 356t
Plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA), 356t
Plasma-Lyte 148, 157t
Plasma-Lyte M, 157t
Plasma-Lyte R, 157t
Plasminogen, 357t
Platelet aggregation and adhesion, 357t
Platelet count (thrombocytes), 357t
Plicamycin, 100t
Polymyxin B, 67t, 112t
Postprandial blood sugar, 368t
Potassium, 50t, 54
  diabetes and, 333
  lab tests and values, 368t, 372t
  restriction, 65t
  sodium and, 57
Potassium chloride, 18t, 68t
Potassium imbalances, 54–73
  assessment, 70–71
  basic information, 55t
  clinical considerations, 66, 69–70
  clinical management, 63–65
  clinical manifestations, 60–62, 62t

- drugs, 65–66, 67–69t
- ECG changes, 63t
- etiology, 57, 58t, 59–60t
- evaluation/outcomes, 73
- hyperkalemia, 59–60t, 65t, 68–69t, 72
- hypokalemia, 58t, 67–68t, 71–72
- infants and children, 193t
- interventions, 71–72
- nursing diagnoses, 71
- pathophysiology, 54–57
- patient management, 70–71
- potassium loss, 56t
- potassium retention, 56t
- potassium supplements, 64t

Potassium phosphate, 100t, 123t
Potassium restriction, 65t
Potassium salt substitutes, 68t
Potassium supplements, 64t
Potassium-rich foods, 376–378t
Potassium-sparing diuretics, 66t, 69t
Potassium-wasting diuretics, 66t, 68t
Poultry, 377t
Prazosin HCL, 322t
Prednisone, 67t, 85t, 100t, 112t, 123t
Prenisolone, 346t
Pressure gradient, 5
Primacor, 322t
Proaccelerin labile factor, 355t
Proconvertin stable factor, 356t
Progesterone, 368t
Propacil, 100t
Propoxyphene, 85t
Propranolol, 68t
Propylthiouracil, 100t
Prostaglandins, 303t
Prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 369t
Protein, 6t, 31t, 369t, 373t
Protein electrophoresis, 369t
Protein solutions, 155t
Proteins, 130t
Prothrombin time (PT), 357t
PSA, 369t
PT, 357t
PTA, 356t
PTH. *See* Parathyroid hormone (PTH)
PTT, 357t
Pulmonary edema, 22, 28, 174t
Pulmonary embolism, 174t
Pulmonary hypertension, 340t
Pulmonary rehabilitation program, 348t

Q

Quinapril HCl, 68t

R

Ramipril, 68t
RBC indices, 358t
Red blood cells (RBC), 158–159
Refractory edema, 30
Rehydralyte, 201t
Renin, 7t, 369t
Replacement therapy, 154–155t, 162t
Respiratory acidosis/alkalosis, 131t, 145–152, 339t
- assessment, 150–151
- clinical considerations, 149–150
- clinical management, 149
- clinical manifestations, 148, 148t
- etiology, 146–148, 147t
- evaluation/outcomes, 152
- interventions, 151–152
- nursing diagnoses, 151
- pathophysiology, 145–146
- patient management, 150–152

Reticulocyte count, 358t
Routes of administration, 381–382
Rule of nines, 266, 268
"Runaway" IV fluids, 174t

S

Salicylate overdose, 123t
Saline solution, 18t, 153, 156
Second degree burn, 267t
Secondary polycythemia, 340t
Sedatives, 69t
Selectively permeable membrane, 3
Semipermeable membrane, 3
Septic shock, 251t, 258t
Serotonin, 369t
Serum, 4
Serum CO_2, 137
Serum osmolality, 8, 287

17-Ketosteroids, 372t
Shock, 247–262
  assessment, 260
  cardiogenic, 258t
  clinical considerations, 259–260
  clinical management, 252, 255–259, 258t
  clinical manifestations, 248, 252, 253–254t
  colloids, 255, 256t
  crystalloids, 252, 255t
  etiology, 248, 250–251t
  evaluation/outcomes, 262
  hypovolemic, 250t, 257t, 258t
  interventions, 261–262
  neurogenic, 258t
  nursing diagnoses, 260–261
  pathophysiology, 247–248
  patient management, 260–262
  physiologic changes, 249t
  septic, 251t, 258t
  types, 248
  types of, 250–251t
  vasopressors, 257–259
SIADH. *See* Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretions
Sickle cell screening, 358t
Skin, 7t
Smoking cessation, 345, 346t
Sodium, 6t, 8, 11–12, 50t, 74, 75t
  functions, 76t
  lab tests and values, 369t, 373t
  potassium and, 57
Sodium and chloride imbalances, 74–88
  assessment, 87
  basic information, 75t
  clinical considerations, 85–87
  clinical management, 83–84
  clinical manifestations, 82–83, 82t, 83t
  crystalloids, 255–256
  drugs, 84–85t
  etiology, 77–81
  evaluation/outcomes, 88
  hyperchloremia, 80–81t, 83t, 88
  hypernatremia, 75, 77t, 78–79t, 80–81t, 82t, 85t, 88
  hypnonatremia, 75, 77t
  hypochloremia, 78–79t, 83t, 88
  hyponatremia, 82t, 84–85t, 87–88
  infants and children, 193t
  interventions, 87–88
  nursing diagnoses, 87
  pathophysiology, 75–77, 77t
  patient management, 87–88
Sodium bicarbonate, 65t, 85t
Sodium biphosphate, 123t
Sodium citrate, 100t
Sodium nitroprusside, 322t
Sodium phosphate, 85t, 100t, 123t
Sodium polystryrene, 65t
Sodium salicylate, 85t
Sodium-rich foods, 376–378t
Solu-Medrol, 346t
Solute, 3
Solvent, 3
Speed shock, 173t
Starling's law, 4–6
Stuart factor, 356t
Succinylcholine, 69t
Sucralfate, 122t
Surgical trauma, 179t
Sympathomimetics, 321–322t
Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretions (SIADH), 42, 181, 294, 297t, 302, 303
Systemic infection, 173t

T
T_3, 369t
Tacrolimus, 69t
Tagamet, 280
Terbutaline, 68t, 346t
Tetracycline, 67t, 123t
Theophylline, 346t
Thiazides, 66t, 100t, 123t, 321t
Thioridazine, 84t
Thiothixene, 84t
Third degree burn, 267t
Third-space fluid, 35
Thirst, 6, 6t, 14
Thromboplastin, 355t
Thyroxine, 370t
Ticarcillin, 67t
Ticarcillin disodium, 85t

Times of administration, 382
Tobramycin, 67t, 100t, 112t
Tolbutamide, 84t
Tonicity, 4, 8–9
Total parenteral nutrition (TPN), 178–187
  assessment, 186
  complications, 183–185
  electrolyte/glucose imbalances, 181–182
  etiology, 178–179
  evaluation/outcomes, 187
  indications, 179t
  interventions, 186–187
  nursing diagnoses, 186
  patient management, 186–187
  solutions, 180–181
Tranylcypromine, 84t
Trauma, 236–247
  assessment, 241–246t, 260
  clinical considerations, 259–260
  clinical management, 239, 246–247
  clinical manifestations, 239, 240t
  etiology, 239
  evaluation/outcomes, 262
  interventions, 261–262
  nursing diagnoses, 260–261
  pathophysiology, 236–237
  patient management, 260–262
  physiologica changes, 237–238t
Triglycerides, 370t
Trousseau's sign, 95f
Tumor lysis syndrome, 294, 295, 304
Type 1 DM, 325–326
Type 2 DM, 325–326

U
Ulcerative colitis, 179t
Uric acid, 294, 370t, 373t
Urinalysis, 373t
Urine chemistry, laboratory values, 371–373t
Urobilinogen, 373t

V
Vaccinations, 347t
Valsalva maneuver, 183
Vascular leak syndrome, 295
Vasoconstructors, 287t
Vasodilators, 287t, 320, 322t, 354
Vasogenic edema, 286
Vasopressors, 257–259
Vasotec, 322t
Vegetables, 377t
Venous access devices, 167t
Ventricular dysrhythmias, 320
Vincristine, 84t
Vitamin D, 100t, 123t
Volatile acid, 132
Volume expanders, 157–158
Vomiting, 13

W
Wasting syndrome, 179t
Water intoxication, 40. *See also* Intracellular fluid volume excess
Weight loss, 179t
White blood cell differential, 359t
White blood cells (WBC), 358t
WHO, 201t
Whole blood, 158–159

Z
Zantac, 280
Zinc, 370t